

ifornia  
onal  
ity



THE LIBRARY  
OF  
THE UNIVERSITY  
OF CALIFORNIA  
LOS ANGELES



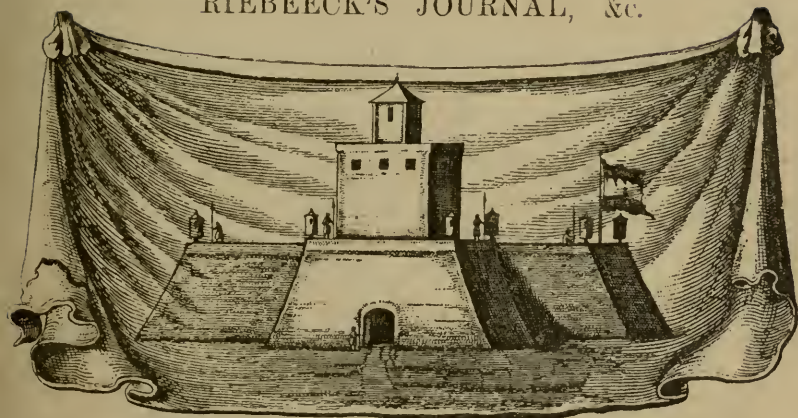




PRECIS  
OF THE  
ARCHIVES  
OF THE  
CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

DECEMBER, 1651—DECEMBER, 1653.

RIEBEECK'S JOURNAL, &c.



RIEBEECK'S FORT.

BY  
H. C. V. LEIBRANDT,

KEEPER OF THE ARCHIVES.

---

PART I.

---

CAPE TOWN:  
W. A. RICHARDS & SONS, GOVERNMENT PRINTERS,  
1897.





JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK, ANTHONY'S SON,

FOUNDER OF THE COLONY OF THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE,  
AND ITS FIRST COMMANDER,

BORN IN 1618.

DIED ON THE 18TH JANUARY, 1677.



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007



MARIA DE QUERELLERI, OR QUERELLERIUS,

WIFE OF JOHAN ANTHONISZ VAN RIEBEECK,

BORN 28TH OCTOBER, 1629.

DIED 2ND NOVEMBER, 1664.





DT  
843  
C17p  
v. 5

## PREFACE.

*To the First Edition, (1651—1653).*

## THE ARCHIVES.

---

JOHAN, VAN RIEBEECK, ANTONIUS' SON.

Before submitting to the reader the Journal of Commander Johan van Riebeeck, and the different papers connected with it, it will be interesting to communicate what little is known of the founder of the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope. For that information we have to thank the Historical Society of Utrecht, which in 1884 published, through Messrs. Kemink and Son, of the same city, the Journal of Johan van Riebeeck from 1652 to 1655, edited by the Venerable Professor Brill of Utrecht, his portrait and a short biography. The family portraits, his own included, were found in the family mansion of Baron van Lynden van Lunenburg at Utrecht, and were afterwards in the possession of the Hon. J. H. F. K. van Swinderen, who made a present of them to the Kingdom.

Johan van Riebeeck Antonius' son was born in 1618. His father Antonius, Johannes' son, died in the Brazils in 1639 and was buried at Olinda de Pharnambuco, in the Church of San Paolo. Judging from his dress and other evidence derived from his portrait, it appears that he was a sea captain. His wife—Johan van Riebeeck's mother—was Elizabeth, Govert's daughter, van Gaasbeeck, who died and was buried in Schiedam in 1629. In March, 1649, Johan van Riebeeck married at Schiedam, Maria la Quellerie or Querellerius, born in 1629. Her father was minister of Rotterdam. She followed her husband to the Cape, where, besides other children she presented him in 1653 with a son, named Abraham, who in the year 1709, when 56 years old, rose to the high position of Governor-General of the Dutch East Indies. Johan van Riebeeck being the son of a seaman temporarily occupied in the Brazils, soon accompanied his father on his voyages. From his Journal it is evident that he visited Formosa; and also from a communication of Mr P. A. Leupe (Chron. of the Society IX, 1853, p. 400) that he had visited China, Japan, the West Indies and Greenland. It is therefore not unlikely that a portion of a certain despatch written by him from the Cape to Amsterdam was

In the short sketch given by me in my first introduction of what is known of the life of Van Riebeeck, I mentioned that his first wife died in October, 1665, and that two years later—in 1667—he married his second one, named Maria Scipio, widow of the Merchant and Commissioner Jacob Gruys, who was killed by the people of the village Pauw, on the island Tsinko, on the West coast of Sumatra.

In connection with this the following facts may be of interest:—In May, 1667, the return ship *Polsbroek* arrived here from Batavia bringing with her three prisoners described as Malays of the West coast of Sumatra, who were to be carefully watched as they were ‘*orangh cayen*’—noble or rich men—who might one day or another do the Hon. Company some mischief. They were kept in chains here; two were sent to work in the forest, on the slopes of the Devil’s Hill, and one was confined on Robben Island. What their names were, or what their crimes, we are not told; but Valentyn, the historian of the East Indies, states in his fifth volume, 1st part, pp. 34 and 35 (description of Sumatra), that “in 1665 the Dutch East India Company decided to establish a permanent factory or office on the West Coast of Sumatra, about the island Tsinko, or not far from Padang, having already during that year taken fully 300 lbs. weight of gold from the mines there; that Mr. Gruis was sent thither as Commissioner, but that by his imprudent conduct he made matters so bad round about the village of Pauw, that a great number of men were killed there, and that accordingly the Governor-General and Council at Batavia, feeling offended, sent thither Mr. Abraham Verspreet as Commissioner and Commander, with orders to take as severe a revenge as possible.” And further on, “that the island Tsinko had already been taken possession of in 1664, and though naturally strong and very rocky, a fortress had been built, which, however, did not prevent the people of Pauw from killing many of the Europeans the year following during the administration of the Merchant and Commissioner Jacob Gruis; for, as a result of his own imprudence, he, Mr. Van Iperen, Captains Bega and Pig, three lieutenants and one hundred and thirty soldiers were massacred near the village Pauw. In the following year, however (1666), five ships disembarked there three hundred Europeans, two hundred men from Amboina, and some from Boni, under command of Mr. Verspreet and the gallant Captain Poleman, which force completely routed that of Pauw, notwithstanding the latter had many forts from ten to sixteen feet high, with walls fifteen feet thick.”

It is, therefore, more than probable that these three men were leaders of the party that massacred Mr. Gruis and his escort, and, having been captured, were sent to the Cape, where they would find no opportunity for committing a similar offence. They were the first of their class exiled hither, but there is nothing to show that,

as some believe, they were sent at the suggestion of Van Riebeeck, who, in 1671, as already said, married the widow of Mr. Gruis.

In his introduction to the second volume of Van Riebeeck's Journal, the late Professor Brill writes ;—

“One more particular regarding Van Riebeeck we may communicate here. We are indebted for it to an account found by us in the “Navorscher,” 1887, part 7, pp. 395 and 396. It mentions that the tombstone of Johan van Riebeeck, which, after the Groote Kerk (the large church) at Batavia had been broken down under the administration of (Willem Herman) Daendels, who in 1807 had been sent to Batavia as Governor-General of Netherlands India, had been removed (opgeruimd) and deposited on an unworthy spot, had lately been recovered. It bore the following inscription:—‘Hieronder ligt Begraven den E. Hr. Johan van Riebeeck Eerste stichter der Colonie Aen Cabo de Bona Esperance, ende Oudt Praesident van Malacca, jongst Secretaris van de Hooge RegeRinge van India. Obiit 18en Januarij Ao 1677, Oudt 58 jaeren.’”

(Hereunder lies buried the Hon. Mr. Johan van Riebeeck, first founder of the Colony at Cabo de Bona Esperance, and ex-President of Malacca; lately Secretary to the High Government of India. Died the 18th January, 1677, 58 years old.)

When I appeared before the Select Committee on Colonial Archives appointed by the Hon. the Legislative Council in 1896, I replied to a question of the Hon. Chairman that a very considerable portion of my *Precis* had been done at home out of office hours, this the Committee mentioned in its report and submitted that the Government take into favourable consideration the subject of an increase to my salary. I may now state that the whole of this *Precis* was done at home and is but a portion of the work thus done.

It has by no means been plain sailing always to gather the meaning of the journalist, his sentences being so complicated, and in a few cases made almost unintelligible through clerical errors; but I have done my best to interpret him truly, and trust that I have succeeded, and that, as all its predecessors, this *precis* will also find a hearty welcome.

H. C. V. LEIBBRANDT.

Joint Library of Parliament,  
Cape of Good Hope,  
16th April, 1898.





PRECIS OF THE ARCHIVES  
OF THE  
CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

---

LETTERS AND DOCUMENTS RECEIVED.

No. 1.—A SHORT EXPOSITION OF THE ADVANTAGES TO BE  
DERIVED BY THE COMPANY FROM A FORT AND GARDEN  
AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

1649.

26th July.

Though some who have visited the Cape, but without paying attention to its resources, will say that the place is altogether unfit and will not repay the expenses incurred, as nothing is to be had save water and wild sorrel; and others that the Company have forts and stations in sufficient number to take care of, and therefore ought to make no more; we will endeavour to show according to our understanding, and with brevity and humility, how serviceable and necessary such a fort and garden will be for the convenience and preservation of the Company's ships and men; and also that they can be established with profit and no cost.

By making a fort and a garden adequate to the requirements of the crews of the Company's passing vessels, in the Table Valley, protecting the whole with a garrison of 60 or 70 soldiers and sailors, and likewise providing the establishment with a proper staff of experienced gardeners, a great deal of produce can be raised, as will be shown further on.

The soil is very good in the valley, and during the dry season the water can be used for irrigation as required. Everything will grow there as well as in any other part of the world, especially pumpkin, watermelon, cabbage, carrot, radish, turnip, onion, garlic, and all kinds of vegetables, as those who were wrecked in the *Haerlem* can testify.

It is also beyond doubt that all kinds of fruit trees will thrive there, as orange, lime, apple, citron, shaddock, pear, plum, cherry,

1649

26th July.

gooseberry and currant, which can be kept on board for a long time.

Daily experience teaches us what the little sorrel and sometimes 2 or 3 cattle obtained by the crews proceeding to India have done for the sick and healthy on board.

Please therefore to consider when all the fruit mentioned can be procured there in abundance, how many sick will be restored to health by God's goodness; especially when a large number of cattle and sheep have been bartered from the natives for supplies, and which could be procured for a small amount. From the cattle butter cheese and milk could also be obtained for refreshment.

All ships could, whilst taking in water, be daily supplied with 3 or 4 cattle and sheep and all kinds of greens, and when leaving, also supplied with living cattle and sheep, cabbages, carrots, turnips, onions, garlic, watermelons and pumpkins, which when ripe would keep for 7 or 8 months and remain good. Also oranges, apples, limes and shaddocks, so that there would always be refreshments on board for the sick to the place of their destination, which would be a great comfort for all during the long voyage.

Pigs could also be successfully reared there and fattened on cabbages, carrots and turnips, and if once in abundance, each ship might take on board one or two sows which have littered or are near the time of doing so, and which, if fed on board one or two months, would be no small refreshment.

The water which is taken in there with great difficulty—the men however cold it may be, being obliged to go into the sea up to their necks—causing loss of time and great sickness, might then be carried along in wooden pipes, or drawn from a jetty and with half the number of men and half of the trouble now necessary.

It cannot be denied that St. Helena has hitherto been a very convenient place of call for the return ships, but in consequence of the negligence of the skippers and the boats' crews (who are more inclined to ruin everything with which they come in contact than to plant or leave anything for their posterity) it has been so damaged that henceforth neither pigs nor goats will be obtainable.

Ere this, ships returning home when leaving St Helena, besides the pigs used during their stay, caught 70, 80, yea more than 100 alive to take with them. Last year the fleet under the flag of the Hon. Wollibrant Geleynsen (consisting of 12 ships) could hardly obtain 200 pigs, in spite of all the trouble taken; and it will be seen that every year the number will decrease, and in a short time nothing will be left. From the expected return fleet it will be gathered that less than last year have been caught. The cause has been mentioned above, viz.: The negligence of the officers and the bad disposition of the sailors, who are composed of all nations and have taken good care of themselves, but do not think of those who come after them, as you have often heard them say, "Why should



I care? A hundred chances to one that I will never again in my life come here." Therefore they spoil everything which they approach.

1649.  
—  
26th July.

For this reason they would take no trouble, after having obtained the required number of pigs, to take on board again or destroy the dogs with which they had hunted—a matter which the officers of the various ships and the commanders ought to have seen to. The consequence has been that some dogs and bitches have been left on the Island, and are multiplying to such an extent that in a short time, having nothing else to live on, all the cattle will be devoured by them.

Henceforth, therefore, nothing save some vegetables and sometimes a few apples and oranges will be obtainable which will often be unripe, and, as was the case last year, plucked by the English who arrive before we do.

From all this it is plain how necessary the said fort or garden has become, as it is well known how difficult it will be for the sailors to reach home without intermediate refreshment; and the Company's ships would be liable to great peril from severe sickness. The Cape would be most convenient for all ships going to and coming from India, especially if the officers were ordered, whenever practicable, not to pass but to touch at the Cape for refreshments.

For that purpose the premium promised to those who reach Batavia within six months, might be altered in such a way that the half or a third, as you may think proper, shall be paid to those who arrive at the Cape within a certain time, and the rest thence to Batavia.

The officers of the outgoing ships, generally well provided in the cabin with everything, and more anxious to secure the premium (the good ones excepted) than to benefit the service, when not able to reach the Cape with ease, immediately resolve to push on straight for Batavia, and the crew in consequence of an inadequate supply of water, receiving no more than four or five glasses per diem, whilst the cook can provide nothing save salt meat and pork, must become sick, so that the hospital at Batavia is filled with patients, causing great expense and loss to the Company; said patients remaining there often for months without doing any work, and nevertheless drawing pay.

All this can be prevented by having a fort and a garden at the Cape. For the crews would be well refreshed there and provided with cattle, sheep and greens, and abundance of water, so that the cook would be able to provide the proper food, and the men obtain their indispensable rations, which would keep them strong and healthy on the voyage home or to Batavia, and always fit for service, and the Company would have no useless expense and loss.

In case any are sick or unable to go to sea they might remain at the Cape without any expense until they are restored to health, when they may be sent on with the following ships.

1649.

26th July.

If it be asked by whom the garden is to be cultivated, we reply that if three or four gardeners from Holland are stationed there, enough men will be found among the sailors and soldiers to dig and delve; whilst from Batavia some Chinese, who are an industrious people, may be introduced who are well versed in gardening, and of whom there is always a sufficient number in irons.

Or it might happen which (God forbid) that again a ship (as lately happened twice) was wrecked there, and in that case I would leave it for you to consider of what service and advantage a garrison at that place would be. In order with the help of God to prevent all accidents and inconveniences two or three sloops may be stationed there to pilot the ships to a safe anchorage during darkness or calms, as many skippers and mates, because they come there so seldom, are ill-acquainted with the place.

Having shown what advantages the Company would derive from a fort and garden at the Cape, we now proceed to consider the expenses to be incurred on the one hand and the profits to be derived on the other.

The fort provided with 60 or 70 men, the monthly payments would annually reach the sum of f.10,000—provisions we shall reckon at f.3,500, and for ammunition f.500—total f.14,000. The guns required for the fort may be obtained from the wreck of the *Haerlem*, so that in this respect no expense will be required, except for the necessary appliances.

Let us now look at the profits.

Every ship on leaving Batavia receives 200 Reals of 8 to buy refreshments at that place, an order of long standing. This sum might be reduced to 50 or 100, so that for 10 ships the saving would be f.2,500.

At the Cape the crews will be able to refresh themselves in 7 or 8 days whilst taking in water, much better than they would do at St. Helena in  $\frac{1}{2}$  a month, for the pigs which have to be caught there with much trouble and labour are so to say the sweat of the sailors. On the other hand everything would be obtained in abundance and easily at the Cape, and the ships could be so well provided that they would carry with them fresh food for 8 or 10 days at sea, besides other refreshments long preservable for the sick.

Refreshed at the Cape the ships would not be required to touch at St. Helena, to remain there, as has been done before this, for a long time—so that the Company would be greatly benefitted as regards the wages of the crews and the earlier arrival of the valuable return fleets.

The fort having been established a year, the garrison would require no other supplies than bread or rice, oil and vinegar (abundance of salt can be had there). This we calculate at f.1,000, so that the expenses would be f.2,500 less, whilst the profits would be multiplied.



Everything could be procured there in sufficient quantity. There is fish in abundance, which if dried might be distributed among the ships. Further there are elands and steenbucks in numbers, whose skins would in course of time also bring in something. All kinds of birds are there by thousands, and may be caught or shot; and with which the garrison may be fed, an ox being killed now and then.

Annually a large quantity of train oil might be boiled, for at certain seasons Table Bay is full of whales, whilst the Robben and other islands are always swarming with seals, so that a boiler could be kept continually going.

But some inexperienced will say that no fuel is obtainable at the Cape for boiling oil, so that the carriage of the wood will be more than the profits derivable from the oil. We however reply that such people could not have been further than Salt River, paying more attention to their fishing than the resources of the country; for behind, and on the ascent of Table Mountain sufficient wood is to be had, but at first to be fetched with some trouble.

Others will say that the natives are brutal and cannibals, from whom no good can be expected, and that we will have to be continually on our guard, but this is a vulgar error, as will be shown further on. We do not deny that they live without laws or police, like many Indians, nor that some boatmen and soldiers have been killed by them, but the cause is generally not stated by our people, in order to excuse themselves. We are quite convinced that the peasants of this country, in case their cattle are shot down or taken away without payment, would not be a hair better than these natives if they had not to fear the law.

We of the *Haerlem* testify otherwise, as the natives came with all friendliness to trade with us at the fort which we had thrown up during our five months' stay, bringing cattle and sheep in numbers—for when the *Princesse Royale* arrived with 80 or 90 sick we could provide it with so much cattle and sheep which we had at hand and so many birds shot daily, that nearly all the sick were restored to health, so that this refreshment was next to God the salvation of that ship.

Once the chief mate, carpenter and corporal of the *Haerlem* went as far as the location of the natives, who received and treated them kindly, whilst they might easily have killed them if they had been inclined to cannibalism. The killing of our people is undoubtedly caused by revenge being taken by the natives when their cattle is seized, and not because they are cannibals.

The uncivil and ungrateful conduct of our people is therefore the cause; for last year when the fleet commanded by the Hon. E. Wolllebrant Geleynsen was lying in Table Bay, instead of recompensing the natives somewhat for their good treatment of those wrecked in the *Haerlem*, they shot down 8 or 9 of their cattle and took them away without payment; which may cost the life of

1649.

26th July.

some of ours, if the natives find an opportunity; and your Honours may consider whether the latter would not have cause for such a proceeding.

The fort being commanded by a chief treating the natives kindly and gratefully, paying for whatever is obtained for them, also filling some of the natives' stomachs with peas or beans, which they are very partial to, nothing need be feared, and in course of time the aborigines would learn the Dutch language, and those of Saldanha and the interior might through them be induced to trade, of whom, however, nothing certain can be said.

The refreshments to be obtained at the Cape would materially benefit the Company in economizing the provisions of the ships.

It is plain that the natives will learn Dutch, for when the chief mate Jacob Claesz: Hack remained 6 or 8 weeks on shore there with sick people, they daily came to carry wood, and knew how to say, "first carry wood, then eat." Those of the *Haerlem* they could nearly all call by their names, and likewise speak other words, besides proving that they were able to learn our language.

Living on good terms with them, some of their children may afterwards be employed as servants, and educated in the Christian religion, by which means, if Almighty God blesses the work, as he has done at Tayouan and Formosa, many souls will be brought to the Christian Reformed Religion and to God.

The proposed fort and garden will therefore not only tend to the advantage and profit of the Company, but to the salvation also of many lives, certainly the most excellent deed to magnify the name of the Most Holy God and the spreading of His Holy Gospel. By such means your work in India will be blessed more and more.

It is very surprising that our ordinary enemy, the Spaniards or Portuguese, have never attacked our return ships, as they could have found no better situated spot for that purpose than at the Cape, as the ships often leave Batavia, in two or three divisions, and though they remain in company like last year, such does not last longer than the moment when they have passed the Princes Island, when every one does his best to be the first at the Cape, so that the one arrives there to-day, the other to-morrow (all at different times). Our enemies lying in wait there with 8 or 10 ships and well prepared for battle, would easily capture our vessels, hampered and unprepared as they would be, one after the other, even if two or three were to arrive at the same time, which rarely happens. The same thing might also be done by the Turks.

We therefore suggest that you should command that all the return ships shall leave Batavia at the same time, in order to reach the Cape in company, and so be prepared for an enemy.

This is briefly what we had to say in the interests of the Company. If we have in any way offended, we beg that such may not be taken amiss, but that you may be convinced that it arises from our earnest wish to serve you. May God grant you wisdom.



and understanding not only in this matter but in all others, that God's Holy Name may be magnified, the Church of Christ be built up, and likewise the private honour and reputation of yourselves.

1649.  
—  
26th July.

(Signed) LEENDERT JANZ,  
N. PROOT.

Amsterdam, 26th July, 1649.

NO. 2.—REPORT OF VAN RIEBEECK ON THE ABOVE "REMONSTRANCE," ADDRESSED TO THE DIRECTORS OF THE GENERAL COMPANY.

1651.  
—  
June (?).

I have read with great attention the matters brought forward by Jansen and Proot, and can but add little more, they having sojourned at the Cape a whole season and thoroughly observed its agricultural resources and the character of the natives. As you have referred them to me your servant, who, in 1648, when returning home in the return fleet of the Hon. Wollebrandt Geleynsen, likewise remained three weeks on shore at the Cape to ship the goods saved from the wrecked ship *Haerlem* (and brought in carts to the Salt River), I will subjoin a few additional points regarding the fortress and plantation in order to establish them on the most suitable spot; and to do so not in the form of advice, as you possess better information than I can give, but to communicate the results of my reflections and what service I might do the Company at that place.

The projected fort, whatever its size, could be erected at the Fresh River in order that its water might be led into or around it, but as in that case its situation would be rather low and in course of time become damp, and its prospect interfered with by the growth of the trees to be planted, and as the ascent on the back of the Lion's Hill (which, if any memory serves me well, is very near the said river) would entirely command the fort, it would be more prudent to build the fort on the said ascent, where there is, as far as I remember, a convenient eminence and a hard foundation, and whence the command over the river and the whole neighbourhood would be secured, for the fort would not be further than a pistol shot from the river, and if properly managed, one of its points might abut on the stream, at the same time retaining a good view of the sea, and over all the plantations and trees which may be made to grow there in time, however high they might become, and which would also add to the strength and appearance of the fort, with very little cost indeed. The proper spot for the fort, however, can only be determined by local inspection, for which purpose I beg to offer my services to the Company.

1651.

June (?).

Though "Sieur" Leendert does not seem to have any fear of the natives, I beg to state as my opinion that they are not to be trusted, being a brutal gang, living without any conscience. The fort must therefore be strongly defensive—as I have heard from many who have been there and who are trustworthy, that our people have been killed without any cause whatever—and prudence is consequently necessary in our intercourse with them; also as regards the English, French, Danes and especially the Portuguese, who are jealous of the enlargement and prosperity of the Company, and let no opportunity pass to hinder it as much as possible.

In order to strengthen our position there the more, close hedges of hawthorn might with little cost be planted around the establishment, as I observed, when at the Caribbee Islands, those of Barbadoes doing, and which are their best protection: broad passages exist between them so that the garrison can see everything approaching, and those coming on cannot reach them in consequence of the thickets. No one can land, for those of the fort can easily keep them away from the shore with their muskets, a very good plan which may easily be carried out at the Cape.

The plan of Sr. Leendert regarding the shipment of water could easily be carried out, and pilot boats for the vessels arriving would not be unserviceable, if a signal be adopted by means of which the garrison would be able to know whether the incoming ship belongs to the Company or not, lest the pilots fall into the hands of strange ships, hypocritical friends or enemies.

I fear the guns expected to be saved from the *Haerlem* and to be mounted on the fort are by this time so buried in sand that they will not be recovered. One or two long metal pieces or culverins which reach far and would command the Salt River would be serviceable, as they would protect the roads and the sloops at anchor.

I am also of opinion that all sorts of trees and other fruit would thrive well in the valleys, to the great benefit of the passing ships, the more so as I think that the Cape climate is very similar to that of Japan, and the northern portions of China, which places have abundance of all kinds of fruit and cattle, as you yourselves know and I have experienced. It would therefore not be unserviceable to send thither some people having a good knowledge of gardening and farm work.

Regarding pigs, also mentioned by Sr. Leendert, if it could be managed to make arrack there, those animals could easily be fed on the wash, as is done at Batavia. It is true what he says about the diminution of hogs and other refreshments at St. Helena; besides the water on that island, in consequence of its sulphurous elements, cannot be compared with that at the Cape, where, if the cocoanut be made to grow, arrack could be made, and from the arrack itself enough vinegar could be obtained. The cocoanuts would likewise be very refreshing, and oil could be drawn from them also. It is probable that, if a friendly intercourse with the



natives be established, enough cattle would be obtained from them at a cheaper rate than if we had our own breeding stock; those animals excepted which would only be kept for milking. In all these matters experiments might easily and without expense be made.

If, as Leendert proposes, you order your ships to touch at the Cape, I believe that a great deal of preserved provisions would be economized on the outward voyage, and likewise wine; for if they pass without touching, they do so only for the sake of the premium; the consequence is that the crews are put on short water allowance, and the meat and pork are boiled in salt water. Very little fresh water is given to the crew to drink, but 1 or 2 glasses of wine are distributed to make up for it, and though the wine is a cordial and strengthening, the sailors remain not the less subject to scurvy and similar diseases in consequence of the staleness of the food. But refreshed at the Cape, the voyage can with God's blessing be safely made to Batavia with the ordinary provisions and wine allowance, and sufficient fresh water, by which the Company would be greatly benefited; the health of the men secured and a great deal of preserved provisions saved, which are everywhere required in India, whilst now they are consumed by the crews with the least benefit to themselves.

It will also be easily seen that a great deal of wages will be saved by a speedy voyage of the homeward bound ships, besides salted provisions and wine, if the vessels are ordered not to touch at St. Helena.

Some profit might also be derived from the clothing sold to the garrison there on account.

I have also read in the statement that besides cattle and sheep at the Cape, a multitude of elands, steenbucks and other wild animals are to be had. If this be true, and a satisfactory intercourse established with the natives; in addition to the refreshments obtained, much profit might be derived from the skins of the beasts mentioned, which dried in quantity, and packed closely together, as is done in Siam, might be shipped into the outward bound vessels, which, having consumed part of their provisions and fuel, would have sufficient storage room, and by them taken to Batavia whence they could be sent on to Japan, where especially the steenbuck skins, which certainly would make the smallest parcels, are in good demand and will produce a good deal. In my time they were sold at 18 to 20 tail per hundred; eland hides from 56 to 58 tail and ox hides above 130 tail in Japan silver. The hides would therefore be serviceable in Japan, and if to be procured in such quantity as Sr. Leendert states, they might in time be easily bought from the natives to defray the costs of the residency there.

Rock rabbits and other small animals with soft skins are also to be had, and which are serviceable as furs. It might be investigated what profit the Company might derive from this source also, and whatever there might further be found on the spot.

1651.  
—  
June (2).

1651.  
June (?).

Train oil would also yield a profit, as I have before this been in Greenland and seen how the industry is carried on there. The difficulty in the matter of fuel is of little weight, for if one kettle has been boiled, the greaves are used for fuel, and sufficient is at hand for that purpose.

The statement, that the natives or their children are able to learn the Dutch language is important, and a very good thing, but of greater moment is the furtherance of our Reformed Christian Religion about which he appears to be sanguine. In this a good minister would do good service, if you could submit to the expense whilst he would also benefit the garrison stationed there; but whatever you may do, if I receive the appointment, I will most zealously endeavour to carry out your instructions, praying that God may grant me the necessary prudence and intelligence to serve you well, that in course of time you may be inclined to our further advancement; especially when having completed the work mentioned, that I may be removed to India, where I hope to give further proofs of faithful service in order to be employed in such a manner as you or your Council there may deem fit. You may be confident that with God's blessing I will not fail in my zeal for the benefit of the Company, and the personal honour of your servant.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

Amsterdam, June, 1651.

---

NO. 3.—INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE OFFICERS OF THE EXPEDITION  
FITTED OUT FOR THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE TO FOUND A  
FORT AND GARDEN THERE.

25th March.

As by Resolution of the Council of Seventeen, representing the General Company, it has been deemed good to establish a rendezvous on the shores of the Cape, in order that the passing ships may safely touch there and obtain meat vegetables water and other necessaries, and the sick be restored to health, you shall when arrived at the said Cape, go on shore with a portion of your men, taking with you as much material as you may require for a temporary defence against the natives, who are a very rough lot, viz., a serviceable wooden building in which to lodge the people and likewise all the tools.

As a permanent residency is intended to be made of the Cape, as a refreshment station, a defensive fort shall be erected at the Fresh River, adjoining or near to it.

The wooden house being completed and placed in a proper state of defence, you shall inspect the locality of the Fresh River and decide on what spot the fort is to be erected in accordance with the accompanying plan—with this understanding, that in order always to have fresh water, the said river shall be led through or around the fort, as the plan shows—the fort to bear the name of *the Good Hope*.

1651.  
—  
25th March.

Accommodation shall be provided for 70 or 80 men within the fort in order that the whole garrison may be lodged within it.

As soon as you are in a proper state of defence you shall search for the best place for gardens, the best and fattest ground in which everything planted or sown will thrive well, which gardens shall be properly enclosed; but on this point we give no precise instructions.

You shall also look out for the best pastures around the fort for depasturing and breeding cattle; for which purpose a good understanding with the natives will be necessary in order to make them in course of time accustomed to intercourse with you, and so attract them. In this great prudence is necessary, and you shall have to take especial care not to injure their cattle which they are herding or bringing on, as this would repel them from us, as has often been shown.

The cattle being in danger when left outside, shall during the night be temporarily driven into the fort, so that proper accommodation must be provided in it for that purpose, until in course of time the natives may be trusted, unless you have other means of keeping the cattle safely outside of the fort, a matter recommended to your especial vigilance.

As this fort will be principally established for all ships going to and returning from the East Indies, and in order that they may pass by St. Helena, you shall pay careful attention to all sorts of fruit which may grow there agreeably to the climate, and at what time of the year each kind is to be sown or planted; all which experience will teach you.

In order that good discipline may be maintained among the people, they have been sworn on the General "Articul brief" of the Company, according to which they shall have to conduct themselves, and do whatever their officers may command them, every one to be daily employed according to his capacity, and no one to be left idle.

You shall keep a correct journal of all occurrences and from time to time examine whatever else can be taken in hand to defray the costs of the establishment, and to guide you, a copy of the "Remonstrance" forwarded to the Chamber of Seventeen is annexed.

The fort having been placed in a proper state of defence and provided with its necessary furniture, the ship *Drommedaris* shall with 40 men on board be despatched to Batavia—you retaining 70 men, and the sloops sent out in pieces on board, which are to be



1651.  
—  
25th March.

put together at the Cape for your service at all times, especially for discovering the going and coming ships and bringing them towards the best anchorage; for which purpose you shall have a wooden light-house or something of the kind on shore to warn and guide them.

To be well prepared for all enemies every wing of the fort shall be armed with 4 pieces of ordnance, which you shall land with everything required for it.

As we cannot enter into all particulars which we are unacquainted with, and which will mainly depend upon your experience and zeal, we cannot give you instructions in full, so that what we have stated must suffice for the present to carry out the intentions of the Company. You are likewise ordered to correspond with the Company on all matters; and we wish you good fortune and prosperity on your voyage and the fulfilment of your trust, looking forward to the proper time when we shall be informed of your good success.

Resolved in the Council of 17 at Amsterdam, the 25th March, 1651.

Agrees with the original.—D. Pruys, Advocate of the Company

---

No. 4.—FURTHER INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE OFFICERS PROCEEDING TO THE CAPE IN THE SERVICE OF THE EAST INDIA COMPANY ON BOARD OF THE “DROMMEDARIS,” “REIJGER” AND “GOEDE HOOP.”

12th Dec.

As it is not stated in the general instructions how the officers commanding at the Cape are to conduct themselves towards foreign nations whose ships might touch there for supplies, the said officers are continually to be on their guard and in an offensive and defensive position, that they may not be attacked unawares; with this proviso, that the said officers shall not hinder any nation living in friendship with or allied to, or holding a position of neutrality towards the States-General in their desire to supply themselves; the Portuguese excepted, whom the Company has declared to be its enemies, and with whom it is at war in the regions falling within the limits granted by charter to the Company, in accordance with the Resolution of the 17.

If any nation in alliance with, or holding a position of neutrality towards the States-General should establish a station at the Cape, you shall take no notice of it as long as they select a spot beyond the limits selected by you for your safety, and such other places as you may take possession of, and defend for rearing the various kinds of cattle and produce.

For this purpose you shall after landing inspect the most convenient spots for lands and pastures, and erect signs of having taken possession.

As the *Drommedaris* and *Reijger* have been ordered to remain at the Cape until they have landed their cargoes for the garrison. and brought the fort into a proper state of defence, you shall despatch the *Reijger* as soon as possible before the *Drommedaris* to Batavia, to be employed there in the Company's service, retaining the *Drommedaris* as long as you deem necessary, but no longer.

1651.  
—  
12th Dec.

From the accompanying extract you will see what strange rumours are about regarding the designs of Prince Robert, and though we do not credit them, it is necessary to be prepared for everything, and therefore you shall warn the ships coming from India to be on their guard and prepared for battle; also not to separate from each other from the Cape to St. Helena, and finding other ships there to keep to windward in order not to be surprised, on which subject we have communicated with the Governor-General and Council of India. Amsterdam, 12th Dec., 1651.

---

NO. 5. —NOMINATION OF RIEBEECK'S SUCCESSOR IN CASE OF DEATH, &c.

Whereas J. van Riebeeck has been appointed Commander of the expedition fitted out for the Cape in *Drommedaris*, *Reijger* and *Goede Hoop*, the Company trusting that he will conduct himself to its satisfaction, but whereas he is likewise liable to sickness and death on the voyage, the Hon. David de Coninck, Skipper of the *Drommedaris*, is appointed to take Riebeeck's place and carry out the instructions and works as mentioned above, all being ordered to obey the said Coninck.

15th Dec.

(Signed) Z. D. CARPENTIER.  
HENDRIK VOET.  
HANS VAN LOON.

Amsterdam, 15th Dec., 1651.

---

NO. 6.—EXTRACT FROM RESOLUTION TAKEN BY THE DIRECTORS OF THE CHAMBER AMSTERDAM, THIS DAY, 4TH DEC., 1651, MONDAY.

The Company wills that Riebeeck shall hoist his flag as Commander of the fleet about to leave, as far as the Cape, and that he shall be the Convener and also President of the Combined Council. The skippers to obey this order.

4th Dec.

## No. 7.—PEACE MADE WITH SPAIN

1651.

13th Dec.

As peace has been made with Spain, and the Company is at present on friendly terms with all, excepting Portugal, within the district of the East India Charter, all the commanders and officers of the Company are ordered not to molest any ships of the friendly nations sailing to or from the East Indies, unless they molest us first, in which case our officers are to defend themselves as they ought; excepting the subjects of the King of Portugal, who are to be attacked as enemies by land and sea within the East India district commencing at the East of the Cape. This order is to be carried out rigidly.—All offenders are to be punished as the case may require.

(Signed) ZACHARIAS ROODE.  
JAN MUNTER.

Amsterdam, 13th Dec., 1651.

NO. 8.—EXTRACT FROM THE LETTER OF THE EAST INDIA  
CHAMBER AT MIDDELBURG, TO THAT OF AMSTERDAM,  
DATED 5TH DEC., 1651.

5th Dec.

Captain Aldert has arrived at Flushing from the coast of Portugal, where he has been cruising. Heard from him that he had often met Prince Robert, who with 8 large ships was sailing about in that neighbourhood, and had prevented him from capturing a Portuguese with 4 or 500 cases of sugar. Had seen that Prince capture a Castilian ship from which he took a large amount of money by means of which he had obtained provisions for his crews, a large quantity of bread being baked on the Flemish Islands, and much cattle slaughtered. It is reported there that the Prince intends to proceed to St. Helena to intercept the English East India return ships. We could not withhold this publicly told story from you, as the said Aldert is an honest and respectable man. It is very unlikely that the Prince has such intentions, as he would, in our opinion, if he had, make more careful arrangements; however, we leave it for you to consider whether it would not be advisable to write with the vessel going to the Cape, in order to give information to the return ships.

## JOURNAL OF COMMANDER JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

14th Dec.

1651. December 14.—Leaves Amsterdam at 2 o'clock in the afternoon; weather rainy.

16.—Takes command of the expedition and hoists his flag on board the *Drommedaris*, according to the Resolution of the Chamber of the 4th Dec.

17.—Riebeeck informed the Commissioners Rogh and de Lange on board the *Walvis*, that the gardener Hendrik Boom had by mistake, come on board his ship, and that they were provided with



neither beer nor water. Ordered that a cabin be made for the said gardener and family.

18.—Receives his provisions and fuel; an anker of brandy is missing.

19.—Receives his papers and the muster roll.

20.—Crew mustered and found correct; one boy, not on the list, is sent on shore. Mr. Rogh comes on board with extract from a Resolution appointing Riebeeck Commander; his flag is to be hoisted on board the *Drommedaris*, and the Master Mariner Davit de Coninck is to be his substitute. Left the Balg about noon for the Texel, where the *Drommedaris*, and *Reijger* safely arrived in the evening.

22.—Arrival at the Texel of the *Goede Hoop*, third ship of the expedition, whose Commander receives 50 Reals of eight in coin, for necessary refreshments.

23.—Departure of some of the fleet from Texel. Orders received in the afternoon from Messrs Rogh and de Lange that the *Drommedaris*, *Reijger* and *Hoop* were to leave without waiting for the *Walvis* and *Olipphant*, which were prevented by the slackness of the water from leaving the Balg. Additional provisions received.

24. (Sunday).—Left in the afternoon in company with a large fleet of merchant vessels.

25.—Lay to the whole night, to avoid the Flemish shoals.

26.—Fleet much scattered, loses sight of his consorts. About noon sighted Calais; receives information of the position of the two vessels, and passes the points during the dog watch.

27.—Is rejoined by the *Reijger* and *Goede Hoop*, and passes, during the first night watch, the Isle of White.

28.—Communicates the private signals to the *Reijger* and *Goede Hoop*.

29.—Tacks towards the English coast.

30.—Finds the *Drommedaris* so light that she cannot carry heavy sail. Council held with the Commanders. Decided to sail to an English port for ballast; prevented by change of wind; resolved to trust to Providence, and when once beyond the reach of enemies, to ballast the ship with some cannon.

31.—Wind increased; sails shortened. The *Drommedaris* on her beams' ends; great danger. Vessel under storm sails.

1652. January 1.—Weather still boisterous.

2.—Fine weather.

3.—Still sailing under shortened sails, in consequence of the lightness of the vessel. The stowers of the cargo are to be blamed, who endanger the property of the Company, and the lives of all on board. The ship is heeling over with every gust of wind. Saw a sail and supposed it to be a Turkish or other pirate.

4.—Supposed to be off Cape Finisterre.

7.—Death of Symon Jansz; of Amsterdam, a carpenter, from dropsy.

8.—Off Cape Vincent.

10.—Off Madeira.

1651.

December.

1652.

January.

1652.

January.

11.—Parts company with the Guinea and Brazil ships; no notice given by the latter, notwithstanding the arrangement that they would take letters to be forwarded *viâ* Brazil, hence the only opportunity is by the Guinea ship *viâ* the Canaries.

12.—Letters for Amsterdam entrusted to the merchant and captain of the Guinea ship.

13.—Sights the Canaries and parts from the *Lieffde* with a salute, the latter ship taking the letters.

14.—Passes the Canaries.

20.—Expects to be off Cape Verde to-morrow—consults with the other captains—all well on board—consequently decides to pass on without calling.

21.—Sights Ilha de Sal.

22.—Sights Ilha de Mayo.

February.

February 13.—Passed the line this morning.

18.—Variation of the compasses— $3^{\circ} 9' N. E.$

20.—Lowered 9 cannons into the hold to steady the vessel, and kept nine above, as Prince Robert might be at the Cape, looking out for English ships, which it is supposed he is doing at St. Helena. He may make no distinction between Dutch and English ships, as we are at war with Portugal in India, and he may plausibly appeal to his Portuguese Commission. Prudence is therefore necessary.

March.

March 12.—Death of a child of the chief surgeon from scurvy—buried in the evening—all the rest are well—water supply getting low. Men placed on allowance.

18.—Wind very strong—the yacht propelled along—its sails consequently shortened to enable us to keep up with it.

20.—Captain Turver coming on board, reports that there is no more than one month's supply of water and beer on board his ship. Ordered to put his crew on short allowance, as we had been doing for some time already.

29.—Consultation with the Captains of the *Reijger* and the *Hoop* to compare bearings. This was done, and then it was resolved to reach the latitude  $34^{\circ} 20'$  and so the Cape. Likewise to sail eastward until to-morrow, and discover whether the *Drommedaris* can succeed in taking the altitude, which we have not been able to do since the 26th.

April.

April 4.—Man fell overboard, but was rescued.

5.—Signalled to consorts to keep close together, to be able to arrive at the Cape together, and be properly prepared for all hypocritical friends and open enemies. About 5 glasses of the afternoon watch, Table Mountain was sighted by the Chief Officer, 15 or 16 Dutch miles away. He received 4 Spanish reals in specie. The flag was hoisted and a shot fired for the information of the *Reijger* and *Hoop*. We approached very near the shore during the night, the consorts being very near us.

6.—The sloop was sent on shore below the Lion's Rump with the bookkeeper, Adam Hulster, and the second officer, Arent van

Jeveren, to discover what and how many ships there were in the Bay, in order to be prepared for defence or attack. Two hours before dark the sloop returned, and reported that there were no ships; we consequently stood in, and with the *Goede Hoop* anchored before the "Versse Rivier" in five fathoms sand bottom, trusting that with God's blessing Captain Hooghsaet of the *Reijger*, who had kept further off, would likewise safely come to port. Skipper Davit Coninck is ordered to proceed to shore on the morrow with one of the sloops, and 6 armed soldiers—besides the oarsmen—to search for letters, obtain vegetables and draw the net for some fish for the crew.

1652.

—  
April.

N.B.—The diary of the voyage further contains full particulars about the progress of the vessel every day, the state of the atmosphere, the changes of the wind, the course pursued, and whatever a ship's log of that time would give regarding the distance sailed each day, &c.

7. (Sunday).—Skipper Coninck goes ashore with the sloop; at daybreak the *Reijger* anchors alongside of us. Coninck returns with some fish and a packet of letters of the 25th Feb. ult., left by Commander Jan van Teylingen of the return fleet—two for the Governor-General and Council of India and one for the Commanders of the ships *Prins Willem*, &c., then expected but not arrived. They probably passed on towards St. Helena. Teylingen having obtained one cow and one sheep had left on the 26th February with his fleet, after a stay of 11 days. Riebeeck gathering from the letter to the Commanders, that Teylingen had on board some horses for the Cape, which he had left with the English-speaking Ottento, and that some necessary information would be gained by doing so (stating fully the reasons for so doing), opens one, a copy of which is annexed. Contents: Short account of the voyage—arrival at the Cape—found no ships: not even a little fort on land; obtained only a cow and calf from the savages; saw no signs of obtaining any cattle or other kind of refreshment, though many cows were seen: decided to proceed to St. Helena to wait for the other ships that had been prevented by stormy weather from touching at the Cape. Eight men had died. Skipper Aert Pleune complained of the youth and inexperience of his surgeons: the sub-surgeon of the *Diamant*, an experienced young man, accordingly transferred to the *Louise* with the title of full surgeon. Said skipper also complained of the bad ballasting of his vessel, which prevented it from carrying the necessary canvas; and of the damaged stage of the cargo. The overseers of the carpenters are to be blamed, as they allow no sufficient time for good work. Fears the worst as regards the *Vrede*, whose condition is described. Sail reported off Robben Island. If it does not put in an appearance to-morrow then we proceed on the voyage. On the 4th of last month the galley was on fire, which was fortunately extinguished. The great God be praised. With well wishes.

(Signed) J. VAN TEYLINGEN.



1652.

—  
April.

On Board the *Diamant*,  
25th February, 1652, Table Bay.

Copy of a letter from J. v. Teylingen to the Commander of the *Prins Willem* and consorts. His safe arrival in Table Bay. The *New Rotterdam* and *H. Louise* had anchored two days previously. Had waited 11 days, "but as none of you have put in an appearance (op dondert), and in consequence of the storms some if not all may have passed the Cape and steered for St. Helena, we leave tomorrow early for that Island, where we will await you until the 1st April, and in case you are behind us, do not delay, but come on after taking in fresh water; that together we may proceed to the dear Fatherland. We only obtained one cow and sheep—may you have better luck.—With greeting, &c.,

(Signed) J. VAN TEYLINGEN.

On board the *Diamant*,  
25th February, 1652, Table Bay.

The horses you are to land and give in charge to the English-speaking Ottento, who will deliver them to those who are to occupy the fort. The Ottento is to be well rewarded."

Went ashore this evening to consider about the site of the fort. The English-speaking Ottento and another came on board and were royally feasted. They declare that they have no cattle, being only fishermen; and that cattle are only obtainable from those of Saldania; an information agreeing with the statements of the survivors of the *Haerlem*.

8.—Heavy S.S.-East wind in the morning. It appears to be the dry season now, the ground being cracked and the rivulets dry. Meeting of Council concerning the site of the fort; resolved, after inspection, to erect the same near the principal fresh river, which could easily be led round the canals of the fort. Hundred men sent on shore from the three ships to labour, and 81 left on board.

9.—Riebeeck goes on shore to mark the site of the fort—full particulars given of its size and shape (see despatch). Will communicate more particulars when the works are further advanced, and also send a proper drawing. The men of the *Drommedaris* and *Reijger* busy the whole day discharging materials.

10.—The men commenced to work early in the morning with picks, spades, &c.; the ground is soft, and the making of embankments difficult; the ground is mixed with underwood. He fears that heavy rains will destroy the works, unless serviceable sods are found, and is busy marking off the canals, which at one point join the river; so that we trust to be able to lead the latter into them. Men very badly acquainted with their duties.

Arrival of 9 or 10 Saldanhars; defensive attitude assumed by the beach rangers (who daily with wives and children sit with us before our tents). We had enough to do to check their courage and fury, and despatched a body of Europeans between the parties

We succeeded in establishing an armistice ; keeping the combatants the whole day in peaceful conduct towards each other. The Saldanhars, making use of signs and many broken Dutch and English words (no doubt learned from the shipwrecked crew of the *Haerlem*), wished to explain that for copper and tobacco they would soon bring some cattle and sheep ; which we urged them to do, by kind treatment. Skipper Davit Coninck, with two assistants and 2 soldiers, being on a fishing excursion at the Salt River, meets the 9 Saldanhars, who take him round the neck and promise cattle and sheep in exchange for copper and tobacco. These natives are described as fine fellows, dressed in prepared oxhide, and stepping like any dandy in the Fatherland who carries his mantle on his shoulder or arm, but their private parts were exposed ; a little skin barely covering them. Skipper Coninck returned with four bags of mustard leaves, sorrel, 750 beautiful braems and four other delicate fishes of more delicate flavour than any fish in the Fatherland ; one looking like a haddock and as good and fat.

11.— Heavy South-Easter — the laden boat of the *Reijger* proceeding towards the shore, is compelled to lie at anchor midway the whole day ; succeeded in the evening in reaching the ship, by the blessing of God.

12.— Wind the same ; without yesterday's showers. Determined to go on shore, as no one was at work, notwithstanding the superintendence of three second officers. Landed below Lion's Rump among the rocks with great danger, and found 4 beams washed ashore and thrown overboard by the boat of the *Reijger* ; 8 men carried them to the tents. Works continued at the leeside, to avoid the dust flying into the faces of the men—no communication with the ships.

13.— Better weather. Materials and cannon landed. Found good sods for the ramparts, but the ground is too dry to cut them. Exchanged 3 plates of copper and 3 pieces of  $\frac{1}{2}$  fathom copper wire for a cow and a young calf—fairly divided both among the ships.

14. (Sunday).— Fine weather. After service fresh meat and vegetables were given to the men — caught about 1,000 beautiful steenbraesems (braems) at the Salt River, each about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  foot in length.

15. Slow progress of the works, in consequence of the small number of labourers and the number of sick. Safe arrival of the *Salamander*, Capt. Dirk Snoeck and Skipper Jan Ysbrantszen. Had left Batavia 25th Jan. with the *Grangien*, Coninck Davit, *Lastdrager* and *Breda* — parted company on the 13th February in the Straits of Sunda. The vice-Commander is Dirk Egel. Snoeck reports that Indian seeds, plants and horses had been shipped for the Cape, but of which we are still destitute.

16.— Meeting of Council to inform Snoeck and Ysbrantszen of the reports concerning Prince Robert and the orders of the Masters in consequence. Likewise the prohibition of war with any European nation except Portugal. Not much progress with the works.

1651.  
...  
April.

17.—Misty weather—works prosecuted—ships discharged and filled with ballast.

18.—Our Skipper and that of the *Salamander* went out fishing; we took over from them three young fellows who had been hiding on board. They were Frederick Verburgh, assistant, Jan Willemsz Bobbel, of Delft, and Cornelis Cornelisz, of Rotterdam—they are at present to assist at the works. Information sent to the Masters per *Salamander* of our arrival and progress with the works.

19.—Letters entrusted to the chiefs of the *Salamander* for Amsterdam. *Salamander* weighed one anchor, and on the

20th at daybreak departed. Works continued and ships discharged. Five cannons provisionally placed on the ramparts—positions stated. Temporary wooden quarters erected for Van Riebeeck.

21. (Sunday).—Cannons discharged and reloaded with ball. Proceeded up the kloof of Table Mountain about 2 Dutch miles—ground there as good and fruitful as anywhere in the world, but not a hundredth part can be cultivated in consequence of the scarcity of hands—a few Chinese would be welcome as gardeners—better results expected than Ilha Formosa can produce, as the ground is much richer, and there are many marshy spots.

22.—Three more cannons landed and placed on the ramparts.

23.—Fine weather, enabling us to land a good many things.

24.—Riebeeck lands with his family and occupies the wooden shed to superintend the works. The men shoot a hippopotamus—description of the animal—good eating.

25.—Skipper Hooghsaet lands to urge on his men, as usual.

26.—The work done at the fort and the zeal of Hooghsaet are described. Carpenters busy erecting dwellings and stores.

27.—Is disappointed in consequence of the hardness of the ground, in getting both points of the fort finished in the evening. Takes a walk round Lion's Rump; is pleased with the beautiful soil and the grazing qualities of those parts. Goes round the kloof—found it rather stony, but lower down the finest soil watered by various rivulets in the rainy season, but now dry and barren. Some Chinese or Mardyeckers or Netherlanders might be allowed on certain conditions to occupy some plots of land. Saw whales in the bay—too much work and too much exposed to hunt them, and no boats excepting two Biscayan sloops, which are unfit for the purpose; would like to be provided from Batavia with an additional couple made of light teakwood planks.

28. (Sunday).—After service and in company of Hooghsaet, Turver, and some armed soldiers, walked over the ridge to the South of Table Mountain—found everywhere fine garden ground—viewed the country all round—about 10 Dutch miles broad and long—watered by the finest fresh rivers—thousands of Chinese or other agriculturists would not be able to cultivate a tenth part of the country, which is so rich that neither Formosa nor New Netherland can be compared with it.



29.—Progress of the fort—excavation of the cellar for the dwelling house and store. The gardener prepares some ground for sowing seeds brought from the Fatherland, by way of experiment. When in a fair state of defence and the moist season has arrived, this work will be taken in hand with more zeal, though but little of the immense tracts can be cultivated because of the smallness of our numbers. The consequent necessity of importing Chinamen or other industrious people, who would in time make a sufficient living. Observed no Saldanhars; only saw 4 or 5 of the beach-rangers having lean bodies and hungry stomachs filled by us with barley and bread and sometimes wine; a large supply of rice therefore necessary, likewise arrack, to treat those who may off and on visit us, to gain their good will.

31.—Progress of the cellar and the fort.

May 1.—Mayday—fine weather—North-Westerly soft breeze. Busy with the fortifications. Gardener and assistant employed in sowing garden seeds by way of experiment, so as gradually to bring under cultivation some good land near the canals about the fort; for which purpose more hands will be allowed him as soon as the works permit it.

2.—Misty weather—more than ordinary sea on the beach.

3.—Commenced with putting up the woodwork of the dwelling and store.

4.—Fine weather.

5. (Sunday).—Bookkeepers of *Drommedaris* and *Reijger* with the assistants v.d. Helm and Verburgh left with four guns and returned on the

6th at 8 o'clock a.m. having walked over the kloof about 6 miles inland, where they found a fine large forest with large, high and straight trees; likewise a number of harts, steenbucks and other game; also 3 civet cats, which seem to be abounding here. Some of the beach-rangers were seen wearing their pouches round their necks. It is therefore certain that they are here. We may get some from the Saldanhars when they arrive. If persons are found versed in taking the civet from the cats, the animals may be kept for the benefit of the Company. The natives say that they catch them in snares, so that we may buy them from them likewise in a friendly way.

7.—Arrival of the *Walvis* and *Oliphant*, which had left the Texel on the 3rd Jan., and called at St. Vincent because of sickness. The *Walvis* had lost 45 and the *Oliphant* 85 men. Many still sick on board. The *Walvis* leaky—had parted from the *Provincie van Zeeland* at the Canaries, which would call at Teneriffe to transfer some women to other ships, who in consequence of the hurried departure of the vessel had been left on board. It had likewise many sick, and therefore decided to touch at Sierra Leone.

8.—The Commanders of the ships came on shore to inspect the works and obtain refreshments. No cattle obtained up to date, the beach-rangers have nothing but hungry stomachs, often filled

1652.

—  
April.

May.



1652.

—  
May.

by us to gain their good will for the future benefit of the Company.

9.—Tent rigged for the sick of the *Oliphant*—two more have died.

10.—Nothing particular.

11.—Meeting of Council on board the *Drommedaris*. Slow progress of the works. Resolved to retain 50 sick of both vessels, who, when restored to health, may assist at the works and afterwards be sent on to Batavia. A Hottentoo was brought to our barber, badly wounded. We gathered from his friends that they had had a skirmish with those of Saldania and that two had been killed.

12. (Sunday).—First sermon preached by Rev. Backerius of the *Walvis*, in the still unroofed house within the square of the unfinished fort. The Holy Sacrament was likewise celebrated.

13.—Misty and hazy weather.

14.—*Reijger* commences to discharge its provisions for the Cape, which are stowed in the unfinished house temporarily roofed with planks. Many whales in the Bay, apparently tame and easily caught if we only had time.

15.—Death of Jochum Andriesz, of the *Oliphant*. Gave this afternoon the name of Good Hope to the fort—the points were named after the ships lying at anchor: the South point the *Drommedaris*, the East point the *Walvis*, the West point the *Oliphant* and the North point the *Reijger*. The whole bearing the name of the yacht the *Good Hope*. *Walvis* and *Oliphant* leave with our letters for Batavia.

16.—The *Walvis* goes under sail; likewise the *Oliphant* after taking on board another boat load of water. The *Reijger* leaves with them.

17.—Departure of the *Oliphant* and *Reijger*. The bread barrels are placed on the loft, which is almost too weak to bear the weight in consequence of the lightness of the wood. Room, however, is made below for the heavy goods of the *Drommedaris*, which are to be discharged to-morrow.

18.—Same weather as yesterday.

19. (Pentecost).—Hazy weather.

20.—Visited the wreck of the *Haerlem*, buried deeply in the sand—not possible to get the cannon out of it. Some fine beams and two masts had been washed ashore, but it is impossible to move them—carts are required. They will be made especially to procure salt and so avoid the necessity of getting any from Batavia or Holland. Two more deaths among the *Oliphant's* men, viz., Siven Erasmus and Jacob Martensz.

21 and 22.—Dirty weather. The *Drommedaris* discharging.

23.—Had enough to do to keep our things dry in the erected dwellings—the covering of planks and sails being insufficient to keep our bread stuffs dry. No progress in the works.

24.—Landing of the powder.

25.—Letters ready for India. *Drommedaris* discharged and ready for the voyage—letters entrusted to skipper Davits Coninek. Dysentery and other diseases among the men—also fever—results of cold and discomfort. Had before all to find cover for our provisions, as the pork and meat are still lying in the open air under loose planks. Death of the sailor Tjereck Claenx of the *Drommedaris* from dysentery. Arrival of the *Hoff van Zeelandt*, Skipper Jan Overstraten. It had left Zealand the last of Jan. and touched nowhere—37 had died on board, amongst them the sub-merchant Sagharius Nancius and two others, who in despair had jumped overboard. The rest all well.

1652.

—

May-

26. (Sunday).—*Drommedaris* delayed by the weather.

27.—The same.

28.—The *Drommedaris* towed outside. Death of the chief house carpenter, Hendrick Jansz: (of Utrecht) from dysentery. The chief barber is likewise attacked. The disease is spreading in an alarming manner. Death also of a soldier of the *Hoff van Zeelandt*.

29.—Crew of the *Hoff van Zeelandt* busy taking in water; sickness of the under barber and constable. Departure of the *Hoff van Zeelandt* with despatches for India. Caught a young sea cow; the meat and its taste being that of a calf, we allowed the people to eat it.

30.—The *Hoff van Zeelandt* delayed by adverse wind.

31.—The same.

N.B.—The state of the weather daily carefully observed and noted down.

June 1.—North-West breeze. The *Hoff van Zeelandt* forced to re-anchor. Death from fever of the gunner Albert Hendricksz: both fever and dysentery are very prevalent, and delaying our work.

June-

2.—Unsuccessful attempt to leave made by the *Hoff van Zeelandt*.

3.—Safe departure of the above ship. Sickness increasing; of 116 there are now no more than 60 sufficiently well to work.

4.—Jan Hendricksz: Backer of the *Olipfant*, died during the night.

5.—Heere Hiddes died during the night.

6.—Weather too severe to do much to the fortifications and dwellings, which latter we could not so cover in with planks and tarpaulins that the bread and other dry stores could be made safe from the rain. This evening the wife of the Catechist gave birth to a son, the first child born within the fort. The Catechist is as yet the only occupant, since the day before yesterday, of the fort; all of us are still dwelling in tents but hope to occupy the fort next week, which will be better quarters.

7.—Cut reeds in the downs behind Lion's Rump to thatch our dwellings; hope that this will be a success, as planks and tarpaulins cannot keep the wet from our heads, &c. More cases of sickness, some on the point of death. Yesterday and to-day the under-gardener, his wife and eldest son have been laid up, and

1652.  
—  
June.

now almost all are ill, which stops the works almost completely. We hope for a change by the mercy of God.

8.—Death of Marten Pulusy: a sailor of the *Oliphant*. More attacked with dysentery; likewise Riebeeck's wife and the Catechist.

9. (Sunday).—Riebeeck still well—goes behind Table Mountain about six leagues from this to a very large forest with numbers of trees quite sufficient for the greatest works, but so difficult to be conveyed that it will be cheaper to obtain wood from Holland or Batavia.

10.—About 50 men at work—the rest all ill; nourished them with wine and some greens grown from our Dutch seeds. Since our arrival not more than one cow and calf have been obtained—life is growing a misery, one after another falls ill, and many die—poor prospect for the works. We trust in God's mercy.

11.—No progress in the works—reeds sufficient for thatching, but nobody at hand who understands how to do it—the part finished is to be taken off again. In the meantime we sit in leaky tents suffering severe discomfort, which causes a continuance and further spread of the disease.

12.—No progress in the works. Very bad weather—a hurricane which threatened to blow down everything and destroyed all our vegetables.

13.—Less rain—could do a little. During the last two days eight or ten more were attacked with dysentery—this makes us weaker every day. Found a more serviceable thatcher, though he works slowly—reeds more serviceable than tarpaulins and planks. Both *Drommedaris* and *Reijger* are short in their cargo of wood.

14.—Heavy storms—feared that all would be blown away and that the yacht would go on shore. Glad of the departure of the *Drommedaris*, which never would have held to her anchors in this weather. Our plantations destroyed—works at a standstill—sickness severer and improvement only possible when milder weather sets in. Biscayan or whale boats had enough to do to keep afloat.

15.—Same bad weather. Provided the skipper of the yacht with one of our best men, who brought the boats high and dry on land, whilst the yacht had enough to do to hold on.

16.—In the evening the storm seemed to abate.

17.—Fairly quiet, wet and drizzling weather.

18.—Death of the carpenter Andries Janz: van Emckoppen.

19.—Dry weather and heavy South-Easter. While digging, the gardeners found fine specimens of asparagus, growing wild everywhere and of the same shape as that in *Patria*; had them transplanted. Besides the clover sorrel, we found another kind likewise, similar to the Dutch and better than the clover sorrel. Many herbs spring forth with the rain, and we expect much success from our Dutch seeds during the prosperous season. We are now busy with 5 or 6 men to prepare some ground for divers seeds, though the present crop is daily destroyed by hail and wind.



We have, however, so far successfully cultivated Dutch greens that daily for our table and the sick we have radish, lettuce and cress; add to this the asparagus and Dutch sorrel and we are fairly able to make a mess of Dutch vegetables. We require, however, cattle and sheep. The Saldanhars have not yet arrived, whilst the beach-rangers living under our protection have nothing to eat but mussels, and run away as soon as the Saldanhars come, except one speaking broken English, who has promised to remain as interpreter. What he may prove to be, time will show.

20.—Strong S.-East—boat from yacht unable to land—fair progress with the works. Death of the Cadet Bartel Jansz: Oyert.

21.—Blowing a hurricane since the evening.

22. A wonder that everything was not blown away—great danger of the yacht—no ships ought at this season to touch here. This afternoon the yacht signalized for assistance—impossible to render any. In the evening weather milder—skipper of yacht came on shore and stated that he had signalled merely to have fish caught by him taken on shore—told him not to cause needless peril to the people on shore.

23. (Sunday).—Fine weather.

24.—Fine weather, with gentle breeze S.E.

25.—4 or 5 whales sporting near the yacht.

26.—Capt. Turver says that during the present month especially he had daily observed many fish in the bay and so near the ship that one could jump on them from the ship. After dinner drew the seine for harders, seine broken in consequence of the large draught of fish—about 10,000 caught—gave about 2,000 to the Ottentoos—would have caught 20,000 if the seine had held together—always the case that we catch more fish than we require. It would be desirable if the cattle and sheep were as abundant for the heavily worked labourers and sick, who have to be satisfied with old food and sometimes a little fish.

27.—Bay full of whales—must delay hunting them in consequence of too much necessary work, besides we have nothing in which to preserve the oil—have an idea though of making train-oil troughs under ground as in the Fatherland. Six or eight more attacked with violent fever, amongst them the butler, master mason and a carpenter, which retards the works. Heavy thunder, &c.

28.—The same weather—could do little.

29.—Fine weather.

30. (Sunday).—The same—gentle W. breeze.

N.B. Wind and weather, &c., carefully noted every day.

July 1.—Riebeeck proceeds in a Biscayan sloop to Robben Island, accompanied by the skipper of the yacht, to inspect the place and arrange for catching seals. Surf too heavy to land—resolves to return—is caught in a South-Easter and is in great danger of being swamped or driven to sea. By God's goodness the wind ceased and we arrived home safely.

1652.

June.

July.



1652.

July.

3.—Fair progress with the works—some whales in the Bay—sow some wheat and barley as an experiment.

4.—Fine weather continues—whales in the Bay.

5.—The same.

6.—Same.

7.—Cloudy weather and gentle N.W. breeze.

8.—Fine sunshine—wind the same—sow some carrot seeds. The 7 or 8 days' drought have made the earth's crust so hard that picks and hoes can hardly enter it, which checks our works at the canals and the walls. Jan Planx, arquebusier on board the *Goede Hoop*, condemned for the crime of insubordination to fall from the yard arm and receive 50 cuts, which is more extensively described in the record of "Sentences."

9.—Many whales in the bay. Above sentence carried out. Gerrit Dirksz: van Elssen, Cadet, for molesting the skipper, is condemned to receive 100 cuts and to stand sentry the whole day with 6 muskets. Last night Nicolas Pietersz: Venlo, Cadet, died without a will and was buried this evening.

10.—Yesterday's sentence carried out.

11.—Many whales in the bay.

12.—Windy weather, westerly.

13. (Sunday).—The wheat sown on the 3rd already appearing—hopes for a good crop—transplanted two fine beds of cabbage, which seem to grow favourably.

14. Many whales in the bay. Went to the Salt River and beyond it, where we observed many harts and elands—resolved to set traps as they cannot be reached with guns in consequence of their wildness.

16.—Sowed a bed with white peas and some cauliflower, salad and other herbs; also radishes, which latter answer admirably; likewise asparagus found wild and transplanted, and now abundantly on the table; our chervil seed is spoilt, likewise the parsley, which grows indifferently. Expect much from the richness of the soil. Hard at work on the fortress, to place it in a state of defence, and on the dwellings. We are still living in tents of old sails.

17.—Heavy sea on—many whales in the bay—very cold during the night—ice on the water. Set the traps at the Fresh River on the slope of the Table Mountain, about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  Dutch mile from this—sixteen in number and over holes dug for the purpose, which the game cannot avoid if they come to drink.

18.—Found the traps broken and one altogether carried off—supposed that the lines are not strong enough.

19.—Made snares of 12 string lines, but

20.—This morning 4 were broken and the rest had been submerged by the rain which had fallen during the night. Sowed some wheat, barley and peas, and likewise other seeds. It is delightful to see how beautifully the peas, large beans, radishes, beet, spinach and other garden produce spring up, also the wheat

and turnips sown near the fort, and the cabbages which at the distance of a musket shot we have planted in very fat soil between the two fresh rivers. More ground is being prepared, and we trust to have abundant supplies of refreshments for the return ships from India.

21. (Sunday).—Gardens prospering well with the wet weather.

22.—North-Westerly storm—danger to the *Reijger*—glad that the *Dromedaris* had left so early in the season, as no anchors or chains could have withstood the sea where the big ships usually anchor—our boats washed ashore, and we had enough to do to beach them safely—ships cannot touch here without danger at this season. The water was so high that it washed against some of the tents and ran into the kitchen, which, however, stands high on the beach on the green field. Death of the wife of the chief surgeon, who had just recovered from severe illness—one of his daughters is still very ill, and so are many soldiers and sailors—some are commencing to improve. We hope that God will henceforth keep them in health. Heavy weather during the night.

23.—Gardens flooded with all the crops spoilt—a miserable sight, as we had sown various beds with wheat, peas, cabbages, &c. some of which looked beautiful—very heavy rains indeed—every thing inundated—too much water for the rivers—half a foot of water in the store—canals full—a clay wall intended for a kitchen 2½ feet broad and 8 feet high collapsed—but the walls of the fortifications made of sods remain uninjured—did our best to make them strong—damp weather, wind and rain continuing—in the evening South-West wind with hail and rain, destroying whatever had been left of our garden produce.

24.—Rain and heavy cold—little to be done to the works—yacht in danger of parting and running on shore. Burial of the surgeon's wife. Saw many baboons at the foot of Table Mountain—could not catch any—they were too quick.

25 and 26.—Weather so bad that a dog would not be sent outside.

27.—Fine weather but cold nights—saw many baboons at the foot of the Lion mountain, big and horrible to look at. Death last night of the soldier Hendrik Ertman, who was buried to-day. Mountains covered with snow.

28 and 29.—Fine weather—snow melting fast; prepared some ground and sowed peas, turnips, carrots and other herbs near the fort in dry, sandy soil—the turnips and carrots sown at the commencement of the month are showing well—we hope that God Almighty will in course of time grant good fruit and henceforth protect it from all harm—Amen. Eight or ten more fell sick in consequence of the bad weather; they were nourished with warm wine, as we have not procured a single head of cattle or a sheep. We expect next month the arrival of the Saldanhars, from whom some cattle may be bartered to refresh our men and those of the expected ships, whom we will be able to provide with greens. We have secured a good supply, notwithstanding the bad weather.

1652.

July.

1652.

F—

July.

30.—Commenced to drain the inundated garden with a canal and dyke on the upper side—the rivers too small to carry off the high water—our plan likely to succeed. Many whales in the bay.

N.B.—The ordinary careful registration of the weather each day.

August.

August 1.—Bay full of whales; fine weather for the gardens—highly delighted with the extraordinary fatness of the soil of the gardens, which are being restored—the seeds in it supposed to have been drowned are springing up everywhere, and the remnants on the beds, viz., cabbages and peas, are shooting forth afresh. We hope for the best as regards the turnips and carrots. Death of the soldier Albert Elders.

2.—Went on the Lion's Rump; saw plainly the North-West wind blowing out of the sea against the South-East in the Bay—the one as strong as the other—consequently it is evident that our notes regarding the winds in the bay do not agree with the winds blowing outside, as we have often presumed from the heavy waves rolling into the Bay from the North-West at this time of the year.

3.—Whales made a great noise near the shore during the night. Took up our abode in the fort to-day, whose Northern point is in a perfectly defensible condition—busy now with the Southern angle. Death of the soldier Daniel Lepla.

4.—Cold weather.

5, 6 and 7.—Fine weather; many whales in the bay; snares again set at the Fresh River below Table Mountain for harts and elands, and a little guardhouse erected for the person ordered to attend to them.

8.—Wet, stormy weather.

9.—Ground under water—hence no game could be caught.

10.—Sowed barley and carrots in the new gardens; will enclose the seeds which have been washed away and are springing up in other places.

11.—Stormy weather—unsafe berth of the yacht, which might be relieved by a pilot or dogger boat if we were sure that we did not require it for important work. Country under water. The men return from the guard-house as there is no chance, before drier weather, to catch game.

12.—Saw many elands and harts beyond cannon distance from the fort, but too wild to be approached. This makes us very miserable, as up to date we have obtained nothing from the natives excepting the lean cow and calf already mentioned. Must still live on the old food, varied with Cape greens and a little Dutch radish, until better times.

13.—Many whales in the bay. Meeting of Council; resolved to draft from the expected fleet as many men as can be spared to finish the fortress, &c.; likewise provisions and other necessaries as mentioned in the resolution of this day's date.

14.—Heavy South-Easter—yacht in danger of being driven to sea.



15.—Sowed some turnips and wheat in the new garden, in which we diligently work to be ready with refreshments when the ships arrive from India.

1652.

—  
July.

16.—Heavy Westerly wind.

17.—Worse weather accompanied with hail—little progress with our works—labour impossible in this weather.

19 and 20.—Peas sown last month commencing to blossom and show young pods—the blossoms of the large beans falling off in consequence of the cold weather. Will continue planting every month to find out the exact season for each plant.

21.—Fine weather—many whales. Death of a soldier Jan Janz: of Swartsluys. Some are still laid up with dysentery, and others are daily attacked in consequence seemingly of the greens used as refreshments instead of fresh meat, which we have not yet been able to obtain.

22, 23 and 24.—Fine weather. Sowed peas, Turkish beans, aniseed, fennel and wormwood, also medlars and quince-pips on the banks of the canals, and we intend when it is a little warmer also to plant Spanish orange and apple seeds. We had some time before sown on different spots skirret and mustard seed, which have not yet sprouted out. It is supposed that the seeds were spoilt, as was observed before in the case of the chervil and onions. Stock-fish supply exhausted—resolved henceforth to catch fresh fish, to be supplied 3 times a day as long as the heavy work lasts. Went out fishing yesterday; caught more than 400 breams and about 2,000 haddes, which we salted. Would that fresh meat were as abundant. We expect the Saldanhars in summer, and hope that they will be inclined to trade. The wheat and barley sown on the 10th are sprouting forth.

25. (Sunday). Fine weather—many whales in the bay—20 turnips gathered for the third time from a little seed sown on our arrival—found them very delicate and as good as in the Fatherland. We hope to be well provided for the fleet. Caught a young hart with the dog, still a suckling and tasting like a young lamb.

26 and 27.—Fine weather—many whales.

28.—Dirty weather—South-East.

29.—Wind veering towards the North; heavy rain and hail; the whole country under water like a sea; our dyke has saved the garden.

30.—Dirty weather.

31.—Pretty fair weather—heavy wind in the evening, rain and hail.

September 1.—Heavy weather—yacht again in danger.

September.

2.—The same.

3.—Weather subsiding—more sick.

4.—Fine weather. Plucked the first peas, and ate good carrots about the thickness of the little finger and sown after arrival—all the rest sown later are growing famously. The soldier Joost van der Laack, being drunk, used foul words towards the Commander and insulted him. He was apprehended.



1652.  
—  
September.

5 and 6.—Fine weather—many whales. Sowed some carrots, turnips, beans and cabbage lettuce, which give as fine heads as at home; the beans appear to be spoilt, but the endives are a treat to look at, likewise the Roman or large beans. The heavy rains have destroyed the Turkish beans. We shall try again when the weather is milder.

7.—Wet. Van der Laack suspended from office because of his insolence, as the minutes will show more fully.

8.—Wind and weather as before.

9 and 10.—Many whales. Sent the yacht to Robben Island to inspect it. It returned in consequence of bad weather threatening.

11.—Yacht left again, and found good anchorage at the island about half-a-mile from land. The beet sown thrives well.

12.—Mild weather.

13.—Yacht returns from Robben Island with about a hundred black birds called duykers, and of good taste; it also brought some penguins and 3,000 eggs, which we distributed among the people—a timely refreshment, as the stockfish is used up, and the seine has lately not been very successful. Skipper Turver also brought a live young seal, reporting that there were a great many, but that they had no blubber to melt down—that there was no fresh water; and only penguins and black duykers. The young seal bears out the statement of Turver, but Riebeeck determines to go and see for himself.

14.—Left for the Island with both boats and some tubs in which to place the eggs, penguins and other birds, as barley and peas are running low and there is no sign yet of the Saldanhars. Anchored at Robben Island in the afternoon and found all the eggs at the North point destroyed by the sea mews—found many at the South point. Took about 5 or 600 and 25 birds, and left six men on shore

(15th) to gather eggs early in the morning, but found that the mews had destroyed them. Getting also no eggs where we had landed we drove about 600 penguins like sheep towards our vessels. Six seals were killed and skinned, having a fair quantity of blubber and fine thick skins, apparently to the great advantage of the Company. We carefully examined the Island in all directions, and found it saltish in many places and covered with small bushes and grass at various spots, with sweet smelling herbs and flowers. There were some streamlets of fresh water also. If wells were dug a large quantity would no doubt be found. Heavy South-Easter. Riebeeck remains on shore and sends the skipper with some men on board the yacht for the night.

16.—Wind quiet. Went on board with all the penguins and arrived at the fort at sunset, where it had been blowing very hard the whole night, proving that generally there may be fine weather elsewhere though it blows great guns here.

17.—Calm in the morning—blowing very hard at noon—rain from South-West—in the evening quiet.

1652.  
—  
September.

18.—Rainy weather. Riebeeck and the carpenter proceed to the back of Table Mountain to examine whether there be any other forests there than those already mentioned. As the timber from home has been much spoilt and is too light for dwellings, in consequence of the heavy winds from the mountains, we dare not leave our heaviest houses without supports. We found about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles away from the fort, in the kloofs of the mountain, fine, thick and fairly long trees somewhat like the beech or ash, heavy and difficult to be transported, but to be had when wanted; carried two fine pieces home, about 2 feet in circumference, to be made into pins on which to erect the sentry boxes. A  $\frac{1}{4}$  of an hour further on, but higher up the mountain, we found hundreds of such trees fit for masts for ships, but difficult to remove. In the first named forests we found on some trees the dates 1604, 1620 and 1622, but did not know who carved them. Astonished that so many East India voyagers have maintained that there is no wood to be found here, as besides the large forests, a number of smaller patches near the watering place or the fort, are found of crooked trees, fit for firewood and coals, and as good as at home; they are to be had at about  $\frac{1}{2}$  of a Dutch mile away on the side of the mountain. Found also fine soil and well situated, intersected by countless rivulets, the biggest about half as broad as the Amstel, and running into the Salt River, which, if as deep as the former, would enable a flat-bottomed boat at spring tides to go high up. There is too much sand and stone, however, in the bed, although bounded by fine arable land everywhere. But there is no labour. Chinamen might cultivate it and so earn a living. Harts, hinds, rheebucks, elands, hares and other game are seen every day in numbers, but are so timid that they can neither be approached by dogs nor be brought within range. Likewise geese, ducks, partridges, snipes and other large and small birds—all very wild. Experienced persons might, however, be able to catch them.

19, 20 & 21.—Rather cold and bleak. Two persons punished for fighting.

22 (Sunday).—Amsterdam Fair (kermis). Bleak N.W. wind.

23.—The same weather. The cadet Bartholomeus Claesz: died of dropsy—some still sick of fever and dysentery.

24.—Wind and weather as above. The yacht to proceed to St. Helena and Saldanha Bays, and the islands about them, to examine the coast and see whether there is anything to be done in the way of trade—see Resolution of Council of this date. Sent men to cut lathes to cover the barracks.

25.—Four men absconded during the night; Jan. Blanx of Malines, boatswain of the yacht; Willem Huytjens of Maestricht, sailor; Gert Dirksx: van Eltsen of Maestricht and Jan Jansz; of Leyden, soldiers stationed on shore—do not know where they are, or what their plans may be. A Council held—discovered that Pieter Jansz: Brackenier, boatman, had said, “the anchor is gone, the cable shall follow shortly;” are they gone others will follow.

1652.

September.

Had also said in the tents, "I wish I was with them,"—denied this when examined, but imprisoned in the meantime. Published a proclamation warning against desertion, and stating the punishment—informers to receive 50 guldens—should they likewise be guilty they are to be pardoned—but if not guilty they are to receive a double reward and be promoted to the first vacancy, as may be seen in the placeaat book.

26.—Stormy weather. Little progress in the works. Men grumbling at the continued heavy labour and the food—stockfish used up. Fresh fish scarce, and only twice a day, barley in the morning and peas in the evening can be provided; and necessarily so, as no ships have arrived; that we may save our provisions, as there is not enough to last us until the arrival of the fleet from India. Only two months' supply of peas and barley—bread reduced to 3 lbs. per week. Informed the men of this and quieted them for a time—also reminded them of their articles binding them to submit to the decisions of their superiors and do their work as required. Offered the informer 2 cans of wine to discover the ringleader. Hope for speedy relief by the India fleet or by cattle from the natives, the garden produce being too young—not always successful with the seine. Caught yesterday some breams and harders—food for two days—caught nothing to-day; will have to add wages to the ordinary pay if food is diminished in quantity. Afraid that more will run away, have doubled the guards and made strict enquiries to prevent conspiracies. The cadet Eems Harmen Vogelaar of Lubeck, is charged with being the ringleader—we took careful evidence.

27.—Rainy weather.

28.—Dry—strong South-Easter. Continued our inquiries respecting the deserters and the mutiny. Said Brackenier confessed that he had jokingly said that he wished that he had been with the deserters, but denied that he had said more. Harmen Vogelaar acknowledged to have said, "if meat and pork are continually economized for fish I wish that there were no longer any fish in the river," &c., and he was condemned to receive 100 cuts. The case of de Brackenier is to stand over, and both in the meanwhile are to remain imprisoned.

29 (Sunday).—Fine day. Our assistants and 9 others ascended Table Mountain with the Ottento who speaks a little English—saw the fire lit by them—ascent difficult—top of mountain flat, as broad and 3 times as long as the Dam of Amsterdam, with some pools of fresh water.

30.—Fine weather. Men told Commander that they would go out fishing if their meat and pork were not withheld for fish. Were told that they would be sent to fish if there were time and the Commander thought fit, and that their food would be distributed as times and circumstances allowed. Caught 1,400 harders below the fort and 1,000 in the river. Ordered that to-morrow afternoon and evening, instead of meat and pork, each man shall have at



each meal 3 harders about a foot long, to save our Dutch food and to show that we will not submit to orders from the herd. Pieter de Brackenier denies the charge, and the case is again postponed.

N.B.—The weather carefully noted each day.

October 1.—Fine weather, but variable—where the yacht lies the wind is N.W.; a gunshot further there is a strong South-Easter—on land it is quiet—cannot therefore judge of the wind outside from what it is on shore. Sow peas—those sown a fortnight ago springing up, and the first sown getting ripe—drumhead salad beautiful. Resolve to examine the bay behind the Table Mountain, discovered by the assistants where fine forests abound—suppose that the Portuguese Mozambique traders must have a harbour somewhere behind the mountain for refreshments—expedition consists of assistants Van der Helm and Verburg, and some armed men and the Hottentoo Herry as guide.

2.—Expedition returns and reports on the bay—almost landlocked, well sheltered and lying to the south of Table Mountain—had been visited, as Herry says, by a large English vessel, which had brought him thence to Table Bay and from which he received two bags of rice. Found fine wood there about 5,000 yards from the beach, and a river of fresh water on which the wood may perhaps be floated down to the sea. Pieter Brackenier refuses to confess, and as the witnesses state that they heard the words but did not see him when uttering them, he was discharged, but likewise condemned to fall three times from the yard arm, to receive 100 lashes, and, to prevent him from causing more dissatisfaction among the people, to serve on board the yacht—sentenced thus because he had said that he wished he was with the deserters. The oil boilers are to be placed at Salt River (to be free from the stench here) and are to be protected with a small redoubt for workmen, which will likewise serve for the better security of the Bay, the protection of the boats, and as a good place for observing whales and ships—so that all approaches can be commanded by our guns.

3.—Brackenier undergoes his punishment. The men sent to Salt River to cut reeds return in trepidation to the fort stating that they had seen many natives—that two had been left behind with the sloop who could not swim—soldiers sent to rescue them—discovered that there were only 7 or 8 native women digging for food, who had recognized the party and in their joy had dauncingly approached and asked for tobacco. Return of the deserters, who all declare that they hoped to reach the Fatherland overland, but in consequence of the high mountains could not proceed further than 24 miles eastward, therefore resolved to return and beg for pardon. Jan Blanx declares that he and Jan van Leyen had formed the plan, and that the others had joined them, that some time ago he had dreamt in the yacht of a mountain of gold and such like frivolous things. All four put in irons apart from each other.

1652—  
September

October



1652.  
—  
October.

4.—Fugitives voluntarily state that they intended to proceed to Mozambique and thence home, that Jan van Leyen had advised them, likewise Jan Blanx, who understood navigation, and that after proceeding 24 miles across the mountains and forced by hunger they had decided to return. Found a journal written with red chalk kept by Jan Blanx as follows;—"In the name of the Lord Jesus Christ. 24th (September).—Left the Cape for Mozambique—the four of us—with 4 biscuits and fish—likewise 4 swords, 2 pistols and the dog. 25th.—Marched 7 miles—saw 2 rhinoceroses, which threatened to attack us. Jan Verdonck had to leave his hat and sword behind. A porcupine wounded the dog. Slept at a rivulet—saw two ostriches—had to avoid two rhinoceroses and took to the beach and slept on the downs. 26th.—Followed the beach towards Cape Agulhas—advanced about 7 miles—fed on 4 young birds found in a nest and three eggs—at night slept on the beach, where we obtained some 'clipconten' (? klipkous) 27th.—Proceeded along shore 7 miles—arrived at a very high mountain, where we rested. 28th.—Provided ourselves with clipconten, which we roasted and strung together, and with calabashes for water. 29th.—Commenced to ascend the mountain, thinking to cross in that direction, but not succeeding, Jan Verdonck began to repent, and likewise Willem Huytjens. 30th.—Proceeded until the following afternoon, when Gerritt also grew tired. Alone I could not proceed, so we decided to return, trusting to mercy in God's name." In the evening it commenced to blow hard from S. East, tearing the tents in rags, also on the

5th even harder. Had to secure the dwellings with stays—the crops all blown down.

6 (Sunday).—Fine weather. Caught at night about 2,000 harders and 200 flat fish.

7.—Deserters again examined. Jan van Leyen states that Jan Blanx had said that he had received nothing but trouble from the Hon. Company, and would injure it as much as possible; that Mr. Adriaen and Mr. Cornelis had drunk success to Jan Blanx and Jan van Leyen, spending 7 or 8 glasses of wine. Mr. Cornelis had also given Blanx some arsenic to poison the natives who might catch them, also an old razor, and had also wished to desert but had been dissuaded by Blanx, as he received good pay and was not obliged to labour. This Huytjens corroborated, who, however, had not been aware that Cornelis had wished to join the party. Gert Dirksz : declares that Cornelis had wished to go but had been dissuaded by Blanx. The latter confirms these statements but denies that he had drunk with Cornelis or Adriaen, or that he had declared that he would injure the Company. Both Adriaen and Cornelis deny this *in toto*.

8.—Went to the Salt-pan for salt—nothing found—too cold yet for the formation of the crust—in summer there will be sufficient to provide a number of ships. The salt could be removed by boats at times, but generally wagons would be required to carry it from

the pan to the Salt River, it being  $1\frac{1}{2}$  hours walk from that spot, whilst the sand on the beach is hard.

9.—10 or 12 men laid up with dysentery during the last 3 or 4 days. Deserters again separately examined—all adhere to their statements, likewise the Meesters—resolved in God's name to pronounce sentence to-morrow in the Council. Herry brings two Saldanhars in the evening, whom we treated with wine and tobacco, and who promised to return soon with much cattle if we only have copper (called by them brass) in sufficient quantity. They were better built men than the beach rangers, but of the same dress and language, with rings of ivory on their arms and with little horns-plaited in their hair even as *cauris de maldiba*, also copper armlets and plates around the neck, having nothing with them but some ostrich eggs and leeks or young onions and garlic, which we found growing wild here, and whose seeds we mean to gather for planting.

10.—Herry arrives with 12 or 14 Saldanhars, who receive some wine and tobacco and promise to return shortly and inform their people of our presence, likewise that they will bring much cattle, ivory, musk or civet to be exchanged for tobacco and copper. They were most kindly treated. We are doing our best in the meanwhile at the fortifications, but labour is much retarded by sickness; we trust that when cattle is obtained everything will improve. Amen. Jan van Leyen, condemned by the Council, having been reprieved from death, is to be bound to a post and have a bullet fired over his head. Jan Blanx is to be keelhauled and receive 150 lashes; both are to work as slaves two years in irons. Huytjens and Dirksz: van Eltsen likewise, and Adriaen and Cornelis discharged for want of evidence.

11.—Execution of the sentence.

12.—About 20 Saldanhars tell us that they are going to tell their mates about us, and to return together with their cattle and ivory, begging at the same time for tobacco, which we gave them with some wine, urging them to return soon—promises made—hope for success at last. Could give them no bread, as we are going on short allowance and expect no supplies for another 4 months to come. Gave them some tobacco. More bread, rice, and arrack should be at hand, as they draw the natives towards us, who continually say that the English gave them whole bags of bread, much tobacco, and whole cans filled with arrack and wine—we ought, therefore, to be better provided to outdo the English if we wish to draw the natives towards us, otherwise not an animal will be had, which may, if natives are humoured, cost so little that we could afford to add to the price some bread, tobacco, wine or arrack.

13.—Farewell dinner to the officers of the yacht. Everything on the table reared at the Cape—fowls, peas, spinach, chervil, asparagus (a finger's thickness) and cabbage lettuce as hard as cabbages and weighing each  $1\frac{1}{4}$  lbs. Greens all growing nicely—turnips destroyed by the hair roots—grow well on the sandy soil.

1652.  
—  
October.

some as big as small tennis balls; expect good success with the gardens; barley and wheat very fine.

14.—Cold.

15.—Not much progress with the works. Weather too unfavourable to take soundings in the Bay for the benefit of the ships arriving—Skippers neglected this duty when the weather was fair—and though we did not intend to do so before this work had been done, we have decided—having little hopes that the May ships will call, to communicate the results to Batavia—to send the yacht to the bay behind Table Mountain discovered by Helm and Verburgh, and considered by the mate of the yacht a better one than this and well supplied with good timber. The yacht is consequently despatched to make an attempt to trade in the bays of St. Helena and Saldanha, according to its instructions as they appear in our copy-book of the 14th.

16.—Bad weather. Yacht delayed and in great danger from the N.W. wind—more reason why the bay mentioned should be examined to see whether the vessel would be safer there in stormy weather, the distance being only 6 or 7 hours, whilst the men, instead of idling away their time on board, might be usefully employed in procuring timber.

17.—Yacht left in the afternoon.

18.—Yacht still to leeward of the island.

19.—Yacht left Robben Island, but had to anchor again. Went along Table Mountain  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles from this to see how the mustard grew—found it blossoming abundantly—intend to sow it about the fort for the refreshment of the crews—also the sorrel and leek or small onion, of as good taste and quality as those in Holland. Came home at night and had prayers—the gate not yet in perfect order—Saldanhars arrive and ask for an interview with the Commander—twelve of them—they brought 3 cows and 4 sheep, also showed some young ostriches and three tusks, which on the morrow they wished to exchange for copper and tobacco, asking in the meanwhile for some tobacco, and stating that within 4 or 5 days all the Saldanhars, with wives and children and thousands of cattle, ivory, and musk, would arrive. Gave them, by way of encouragement, a glass of wine, when they left to sleep.

20. (Sunday).—Saldanhars before the fort with three cows and 4 sheep, 2 old and 2 young, which we bartered from them—the 3 cows for 9 plates of copper, each of 1 lb. weight, and 1 lb. tobacco—the animals costing 31 stivers and 12 penningen—the 2 old sheep for 2 do. copper plates and  $\frac{1}{8}$  lb. tobacco—each sheep costing 10 stivers and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  penningen—for the two fine delicate lambs we paid  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. copper wire and  $\frac{1}{8}$  lb. tobacco, together 11 stivers and 4 penningen. Believe that we will in course of time get the animals cheaper, likewise tusks, having bought 3 for about  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. tobacco, equal to 2 stivers and 13 penningen—likewise 2 young ostriches for  $\frac{1}{8}$  lb. tobacco, to try whether they can be reared. Return of the yacht, reporting that it could not pass the point, and had nearly



stranded on Robben Island—ordered to proceed to St. Helena and Saldanha Bays.

1652.  
—  
October.

21.—Departure of the yacht and the Saldanhars, the latter with about  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. tobacco,—promised to return in 2 or 3 days' time with more cattle and tusks—urged them to do so by the kindest possible treatment. Another Saldanhar appears, stating that many were approaching with wives, children, and much cattle—got some tobacco for the news. Herry in the meanwhile, priding himself on having originated the incipient trade, proceeds to the Saldanhars, no good expected from it, as he proposes to have as brokerage a copper plate of 1 lb. for every animal bartered—will humour him to find him out. Hope he will do his best—can hardly believe that the Saldanhars will listen to him, as they have been so kindly treated, and will prefer to deal without him. Not knowing anything for certain, prudence is necessary—guards doubled—all who can handle a spade set to work to make the walls higher, and bring for a fortnight longer 20 additional loads of earth for the purpose, above the 130 required daily. Men paid in tobacco—bartered cattle slaughtered and everyone given a glass of wine—work pleasantly begun—two carpenters busy with repairing the wheelbarrows—commenced the kraal by digging a trench round it to contain the cattle at night, and sent for some manure found  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles away for the gardens, mostly for the turnips.

22.—Heavy rains.

23.—Herry and some of the Ottentoes living here return from inland and present us with two eland heads with fine horns—killed by the Saldanhars, who had eaten the meat.

24.—Sowed some Turkish beans.

25.—Caught 500 harders.

26.—Hit a sea cow with a cannon ball on the beach, from the point Reijger; it had time to escape.

27.—Had turnips and lamb for the first time for dinner; had beetroot in the evening, which seems to thrive well.

28.—Planted pumpkin seeds. Some Saldanhars arrive to say that they had some sheep at the Salt River for barter, and asking some tobacco for the news.

29.—Caught about 1,600 fish. Preparing a kraal for the cattle we hope to get, and strengthening the fortifications—ground hard as stone, and breaking the tools. Not easy to mend the wheelbarrows for want of material. Bartered for some copper wire and tobacco a sheep and 2 small tusks.

30.—South-Easter—work impossible, men would blow from the walls. Gardener sowing cucumber and pumpkin seeds in manured ground.

31.—Same weather—great damage to the vegetable garden—fear high growing shrubs will suffer severely from these heavy South-Easters. Saldanhars left, receiving some tobacco, as usual begging for it. Hope that they will soon reappear with much cattle, as our Dutch food is becoming exhausted.



1652.

N.B.—The usual careful notation of the weather.

November 1.—South-Easter.

November.

2.—The same. Men placed on short allowance of bread, calculate that we will hardly get along in this way for four months—gave each  $\frac{1}{2}$  fathom tobacco for extra work—sent the men for cow dung  $1\frac{1}{2}$  mile distant.

3.—South-Easter—feared the house would go, though strongly supported with beams.

4.—Fine weather—much of the vegetables destroyed, also the new corps du garde very seriously damaged.

5.—Caught about 800 fish, about 2 days' food.

6.—Same wind.

7.—Same—pumpkins near the fort growing beautifully.

8.—Rush of wind down Table Mountain resembling sound of thunder.

9.—Quieter.

10. (Sunday).—Gale again increasing—works delayed.

11.—Quieter. 24 in hospital complaining of pains through their joints, which feel as if broken—no wonder—as labour is hard, food is old and so scarce that no one gets what he absolutely requires—no fish when weather is bad—the seine very old and bad—enough to do to repair it. If no supplies in cattle or from ships quickly come, the people will grow too weak to work, as peas, barley, meat and pork are running out—the fish caught have saved provisions, otherwise we would have nothing now. Pray earnestly for arrival of natives with cattle—see their fires across the bay.

12.—Dirty misty weather.

13.—Mists seem to prognosticate fine weather. Herry dining at our table to gain his good will—by signs and in broken English told us that 3 kinds of people of the same customs and manners of life yearly arrived in Table Bay, viz., the beach-rangers, not numbering above 40 or 50, and called in their broken English Watermen, because living on mussels and roots—not always having cattle. The second were those of Saldanha or Saldanjamen, who yearly came hither with countless cows and sheep. The third were Fishermen, who after the departure of the Saldanhars also came with cattle but no sheep, catching fish from the rocks with lines—about 500 in number. Continual war between Fishermen on one side and Water and Saldanha men on the other, endeavouring to do as much mischief to each other as possible. Herry suggests that the lasting friendship of Watermen and Saldanhars would be secured by treacherously seizing and killing the Fishermen. Did not communicate our intentions, stating that we would judge for ourselves when that people arrived—in the meanwhile drawing him out with the semblance of being impressed with his proposals. Fishermen stated to be hiding before the Saldanhars; lighting no fires because afraid of being attacked; living beyond the mountains eastward of the Cape towards the Baya de Sambras. The Saldanhars dwelling towards the west and north in the direction of

Saldanha and St. Helena Bays, where the yacht is for trading purposes. The Watermen live in this Table Valley and behind the Lion and Table Mountains. Herry remains with us with wife and children to serve as interpreter—his people subsisting behind said mountains on mussels and roots, the latter tasted like skirret and resembling the Japanese *nisi* but not tasting at all like it; otherwise we would collect a quantity for Batavia, where the *nisi* is in great demand and fetches good prices.

14.—Return of the yacht with 2,700 seal skins found on an inland in Saldanha Bay, finely packed on each other—apparently left behind by a small French vessel that had met the fleet of Mr. Van der Lyn at St. Helena, when Skipper Symon Turver was present, and had boasted that its cargo was worth a ton of gold. Skins beautifully prepared, and if the heavy winds had not scattered and the rains not damaged them double the number would have been brought; enough seals left, however, on Ilha Elizabeth or Dassen Island, but serviceable men required to kill them, hence return of yacht for clubs easily obtained in the woods and to be strengthened with iron rings at the ends. Knives to be made of hoops or staves, as we best can, until better ones are obtained, that we may be prepared for the return fleet for transmission of skins to the Fatherland, where they will fetch good prices. Apparently much profit to be derived from seal hunting—skins valued at a rixdollar or 3 gulden a piece—oil also valuable. Officers expect that a trade with the natives will gradually be established there; at present had only bartered 2 sheep and 3 harts, also a few ostrich feathers, from the natives, who in broken French and English stated that they would advise their people of the presence of the ship, some of whom had gone to the Cape, having heard of the settlement at which copper could be obtained abundantly. Plate copper preferred by them.

Saldanha Bay is situated N.N.W. 16 miles from this, stretching about 5 miles inland; finely sheltered; has no good fresh water; land dry and poor and not to be compared with the Cape in any sense; do not know how it may be further inland. St. Helena Bay very dangerous, rocky, and hardly a bay; more like a creek; landing almost impossible in consequence of the surf, even in fine weather, hence will confine ourselves to Saldanha and the seal hunting there.

*Journal of the Voyage of the Yacht, kept by Symon Pieterz : Turver.*

October 21.—Left this morning—anchored at night under Ilha Elizabeth, named so by Joris Spilbergen in 1601, and also called Dassen Island. Saw many rock rabbits—killed about 20—also seals and black birds and penguins. Were prevented from gathering eggs by the mews, which swallowed them as fast as the birds flew from the nests. Island situated about 8 miles from Table Bay and very low and dirty on the western side—reefs lying out

1652.  
—  
November.

October.

1652.

October.

far into the sea. In clear weather can easily see the point of the Cape and Table Bay.

22.—Wind N.N.W. Stiff topsail breeze—sea hollow. Boat sent on shore in the morning for some eggs. Returned at noon half full. It brought about 12,000. The men greatly delighted: We ate of the rabbits, and never tasted nicer meat before. They are as big as sucking pigs of six weeks old, have ruddy hair and short legs. We also had the leg of a lamb which we had bartered at the Cape, but it was not half as nice as the meat of the rock rabbits. At night the wind turned towards the W.S.W.

23.—Arrived about 2 in the afternoon at Saldanha Bay, situated 16 miles northwards of Table Bay—finely sheltered—white sandy beach on the north side—rocky and hilly on the south—at the entrance a submerged rock towards the west of the Island—on both sides safe sailing. Having passed the Island the distance of a cannon shot, you luff eastward, and may then sail as far as you like. It seems as if a river is running from the Bay eastwardly 4 or 5 miles, which gives it the appearance of a lake a mile broad and 2 miles long. Three islands in the bay are with difficulty seen when entering, but when once in, the two lie eastward before the mouth of the seeming river—the other is situated on the western side near the shore.

24.—Caught some fish and took some blackbirds from the nests—nice eating. Saw smoke but no people.

25.—Fired two guns to inform the natives of our presence. Caught about 400 harders. Land dry, covered with sharp rushes and sandy, as if no people could live there.

26.—Saw 20 natives. Went on shore with copper and tobacco—natives only had ostrich eggshells and tortoises—took two of them on board, leaving two hostages—the two brought on shore again—promise to return to-morrow.

27.—Natives return—expected to get gold, amber or tusks, but found nothing but eggshells and tortoises—caught 300 harders.

28.—Sailed up the bay well armed—saw only one black.

29.—Return of the boat, which had been four miles up the bay right to the end without seeing anybody; had seen places where cattle had stood, and found fresh water on the South side of the bay, not very good, merely a hole to which the game resort—eastward of the bay large sandflats—many breams and harders—natives calling out for us to come on shore—did so. Again found nothing but eggshells and tortoises with them—observed three fires to the South—found three men there, gave them some tobacco and two pipes—advised us to sail higher up, which we considered not advisable—told them to bring cattle and other things—promised to do so to-morrow.

30.—Heavy storm from the South.

31.—Again asked by the natives to land—found the same articles with them—had shot a young rheeback with their arrows, which we bartered for copper wire and some tobacco.



Nov. 1.—Natives had set traps for game—we crossed to the other side of the bay, where we had seen the three men—found nobody. Ascended a high mountain—country all around barren—saw Table Mountain and Bay.

2.—Blacks invited us on shore—sent a party which bartered from them two young rheebacks for wire—saw smoke on the South side—believe that they were the same three men seen by us on the 29th.

3.—Boat sent across—heavy sea—found eight or nine men, having two sheep, some egg shells and feathers, which we bought for some tobacco. Left the sheep, their price being too high—returned on board.

4.—Bought the two sheep for two pieces of flat copper and a little tobacco—decided to leave the sheep on one of the islands to breed—found on the island a large quantity of seal skins well prepared and stacked—some destroyed by wind and rain but others quite good—decided to ship them for the Cape. In 1651 when at St. Helena with General Cornelis van der Lyn a French ship arrived there, which had been at Dassen Island and Saldanha Bay, having a cargo of seal skins on board. Believe that this vessel had left the skins behind—also found some tools, casks and a grave with a cross and some bottles—all apparently French.

5 & 6.—Found the skins to be 2,700 in number—about 6 or 700 spoilt.

7.—Examined the coast in all directions for fuel and water—found nothing—saw no people since the 4th. Caught 4 or 500 harders and returned on board.

8.—Could not, in consequence of the rough sea, land on the island at the entrance on which we had seen many seals, and steered for St. Helena Bay, where we arrived at sunset a gunshot from the shore. Dangerous rocks between Saldanha and this—saw various fires about two miles off. South of St. Helena point a reef runs into the sea about a mile long, so that in dark weather the land should be avoided.

9.—Tacking in the bay and sounding—found mostly bad bottom at 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6 fathoms—anchored at night where we wished to be. Bay very open and exposed to the sea—hope to return as quickly as possible to Saldanha to commence seal catching—saw a whale.

10.—Rocky coast—boat unable to land on the South side—tried the other direction—not much better—boat caught about 100 strange fish—not nice.

11.—Council held—decided to leave in consequence of our dangerous position and want of cable. Left in the afternoon, having seen no people—anchored in the evening under the northern point.

12.—Misty weather—weighed anchor—at noon found ourselves before Saldanha Bay. Saw multitudes of seals, in shoals like porpoises—saw two whales—anchored at the little island, on which

1652.

November

we found an incredible number of seals and penguins—had many young ones—made a noise as if they were sheep and lambs—could kill as many as we wished—killed 15 or 16 and returned on board—hope the enterprise will be successful.

13.—Decided to return to the Cape and report. At noon arrived at Ilha Elizabeth, where we caught 27 rock rabbits and searched for eggs. Examined the island, found three or four tents of the French, also four or five tons of ashes used no doubt to sprinkle over the skins—also a wooden thing like that used by the curriers

14.—Arrived at the Cape about the evening—landed and reported myself, bringing some rock rabbits, dead and alive, which were very welcome.

*Extract of Journal kept by bookkeeper Frederick Verburgh during his voyage to Saldanha Bay.*

October.

October 21.—Prevented by adverse winds from visiting the little Salt Bay behind Table Mountain, we left and arrived at Dassen Island at sunset; heard a noise as of sheep, calves, &c., on the Island; found multitudes of seals walking about and sleeping; a pleasant sight—rock rabbits also abundant—killed about 20—and returned on board—to-morrow will gather eggs.

22.—Windy weather. Landed and gathered eggs as many as the boat could hold—too late and tired after that to kill rock rabbits—took a stroll over the island—discovered huts made of whale ribs and covered with seal skins—now useless—and made no doubt by the French; also broken tin cans, cups and three or four casks of ashes, used by that nation to clean linen in large tubs—the use here I could not guess; walked along the beach—rather stony, here and there small sandy creeks full of seals; on one spot observed 10 or 12 together, remarkably large and old, almost white and as heavy as a cow. No doubt that so many will be obtained as to defray the Company's costs—strong men to be employed.

23.—Arrived at 3 p.m. at Saldanha Bay, seven miles distant from the Island. Having passed a small island about a gunshot from the entrance and full of seals, we decided to examine the whole and make a good chart. Tried the rock rabbits—delicate flavour—no hare or rabbit to be compared to it. Went towards the shore to fish—surf frightful, impossible to return to the ship—wind too strong—tried to anchor—no use—decided to land—succeeded—passed the night wet and uncomfortable. Next day ascended a mountain to see whether there were any people or fires—saw nothing—returned on board.

24.—Cold and wet on our arrival, the skipper gave us some brandy, which was necessary—men sent to fish, caught some sweetly tasting fish—touched at one of the islets mentioned, where we caught about 60 cormorants, which were welcome.

25.—Strong South wind. Fired two shots to give notice of our presence to the natives, whom we suppose have gone to the Cape—the country here being too dry for any cattle. Verburgh and the Skipper land on the islet visited yesterday by the mate, which was very stony and covered with asparagus of a bitter kind and other reeds and thorns, on which herons and other birds had made their nests—took with us five or six cormorants—saw also some snakes and an ordinary tortoise, which we carried to the boat—caught about 500 harders and two small soles—filled some holes in the rocks with salt water to have some salt for salting fish for the voyage.

26.—Went on shore well armed to meet some natives, who are little to be trusted, took some copper and tobacco to trade with them—believed them to be beach-rangers, having neither cattle nor tusks—told us to look for cattle higher up among the Saldanhars, which we intend doing—brought two of them on board, who, having eaten and drunk and tobaccoed well, desired to be carried to the island at the mouth of the bay to kill seals to fill their empty stomachs with, being all very lean. Promised when on shore again to shoot some game for us.

27 (Sunday).—After service the beach-rangers again approached—had nothing to sell save egg shells and tortoises—caught some fish (name unknown) and 200 harders, and then proceeded on board again.

28.—Verburgh proposes to examine the bay and discover whether there were any Saldanhars in the mountains, and if found to trade with them. The Skipper fears the danger, and refers to Riebeeck's orders not to lead the men into danger, but is finally persuaded to give permission—boat prepared, and armed with two swivel guns, muskets, sabres, &c., to be well guarded against attack or surprise—went up, seven of us, as high as we could—navigation difficult in consequence of the sandbanks—passed the night under the mountains.

29.—Returned towards the ship, having seen nothing. Coasted along shore to look for water, finding some about half-a-mile from the yacht, where a large number of cattle and sheep had been, as shown by the fresh dung—believed the people could not be far off. Verburgh and a soldier proceed inland, finding a sort of a kraal with older dung in it, showing that the people had left in consequence of the want of pasture, most likely for the Cape—another gun fired, which brought down three sleek fellows who were more easily understood than the beach-rangers—treated them with tobacco, showed them our copper—told us they would fetch sheep, &c., but that the yacht was to come higher up near the water—left us.

30.—Prevented by South wind from moving.

31.—Could not go as high as we wished—managed to get on shore—Hottentots had killed a young rheebeck, which the Skipper bought for a span of copper wire, called by them saraqna—nothing



1652.

November.

more to be had, gathered some salt from the rocks and went on board.

Nov. 1.—Arrived at the spot where Verburgh had been—could find nobody—ascended a high mountain, steep and full of under-wood, difficult to ascend—from the summit Table Mountain and Dassen Island could be seen—returned on board, having met no natives, with about 60 harders and other fish.

2.—Beach-rangers calling to us again—had a young rheeback and a small steenbuck to exchange—bought them for two spans of copper wire—paid two inches of tobacco for a sea cow tooth—saw fires on the other side, supposed to be of the Saldanhars—caught no fish.

3.—Feared the Saldanhars would leave if we delayed any longer—went on shore—saw some Saldanhars towards the South—rowed to them—had two sheep, some feathers, tortoise and ostrich egg shells—bartered the feathers—sheep too dear—asked them whether they had any boebas or oxen—made us understand that the cattle and sheep had been driven towards the Cape until the country here was fine again—if we could winter here with the yacht we would do better than now in the interests of the Company.

4.—Went on shore with the Skipper and bought the two sheep for two small plates, also two sea cow teeth and five or six white points (ostrich feather tips)—passed and touched at the most southerly island, on which we placed the sheep, as there was some grass—found a number of seal skins packed on heaps left by the French—the uppermost spoilt—will take them on board. Frenchman will swear when he sees the signs of the Company having taken possession and that his skins are gone—will also have to keep away and no doubt revenge himself on some innocent mortal. Caught 103 steenbrassemes, some weighing from 10 to 18 lbs., also 1,000 harders on the sandbanks, and about 50 sharks, which appear to be numerous. Told the Skipper that Riebeeck liked to have shark skins, as they are profitably sold in Japan—was answered that it was a different kind.

5 & 6.—Took the seal skins on board—altogether 2,733—among them some imperfect ones taken for the fur—all the skins beautifully prepared and just opportune to send to patria.

7.—Caught 500 harders and two steenbrassemes—found no serviceable water or firewood.

8.—Forced by state of the sea to proceed to St. Helena Bay, having seen no natives for five days. Coast rocky, one reef extending about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  mile into the the sea—navigation in truth hazardous—our cables bad, will stand no strain when forced to anchor on a lee shore.

9.—Arrived at night at St. Helena Bay—will have a drawing made of it, from which it will be seen that it is very dangerous hereabouts.

10. (Sunday).—Bookkeeper and mate sent on shore to fish—shore rocky—found a spot very rocky, the best we could discover—

caught a hundred to us unknown fish, five flatfish and two herrings, which had an antiquated head, a sharp spear on the back and a tail like that of a shark, some had small legs which they could draw under the stomach—very strange—as may be seen from accompanying sketch. Returned on board.

1652.  
—  
November.

11.—Resolved in consequence of this dangerous locality to return to Saldanha Bay to do the work there for which we had been sent, trusting that the Commander may favourably report our zeal for the benefit of the Company, which we have already displayed with Cape righteousness (Caapse gerechtigheyd).

12.—Arrived at 3 p.m. under the island before Saldanha Bay—found a great number of seals on it—but were in want of clubs to kill them, having broken all our sticks in the attempt. They were horribly large beasts, with much blubber.

13.—Arrived in the afternoon at Dassen Island—killed above 40 rock rabbits and took a quantity of eggs on board. Of the seals I say nothing, they are in great numbers and easily obtainable, especially as instead of running away from us, we had to take to our heels—altogether a most desirable condition of affairs.

14.—Arrived in Table Bay in the evening and reported ourselves and our cargo, likewise our adventures.

*Riebeeck's Journal continued.*

14.—The yacht brought five dead and five living rabbits of as good a flavour as the best capon at home—no hare or rabbit to be compared to it—bartered three or four sea cow tusks and a handful of ostrich feathers for a little tobacco—gave a little tobacco to some Saldanhars for informing us of the approach of a large number with their cattle—showed them some copper plates, which surprised them, and made us hope to obtain so much cattle that we would fall short of copper and tobacco.

15.—Landed 1,895 dried seal skins from the yacht—which we stored in the loft above the house. Four other Saldanhars advised us of the approach of many nations with all their cattle for sale—received some tobacco for the news.

16.—Landed 821 skins from the yacht—also stowed on the loft—gardeners busy sowing carrots.

17. (Sunday).—Six or seven Saldanhars leave, promising not to return without their people and their cattle—have so often told us that we are becoming doubtful—fresh meat urgently necessary for the sick.

18.—Varying weather.

19.—Sent crew of yacht to the pans for salt, who returned in the evening each with a good load of fine white salt, saying that there was much more—also that they had met 40 or 50 Saldanhars with about 1,000 cattle and sheep, who would be here tomorrow to trade for copper—had treated our men very kindly and smoked a pipe with them.

1652.

November.

20.—Van der Helm and Verburgh sent with the men for salt, who brought a very large quantity and reported that there was enough annually for many ships' cargoes—had also seen Saldanhars approaching with cows, some of whom had visited us with four cows, but the price was so high that we could not trade—treated them kindly. Heavy wind in the night—feared that house and everything would blow away.

21.—Wind less. Sent men for manure, who returned with a Saldanha Captain and reported that they had observed a large number of cows, sheep, &c., at the Fresh River and been kindly treated by the Saldanhars in their huts—receiving cows' milk in abundance. The Saldanha Chief, who had been in the fort yesterday, sent us a fine sheep for the tobacco and food he received yesterday—to day he and wife with Herry were treated in like manner—the wife receiving beads and copper wire for the sheep—wish to make them by our good treatment well disposed towards us. They brought their own food, and milk in large leathern bags, which they took by means of a small brush or swab made of a kind of hemp and curious to behold.

22.—Arrival of some Saldanhars with three sheep—bartered two, each for as much thin copper wire as the sheep was long, and weighing about  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb., adding  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb., tobacco—the value of the lot for each sheep eight stivers—would not buy the third as they charged for it double price because it was somewhat larger—should not be taught bad habits. Helm and Verburgh, provided with tobacco and some pipes, and holding in their hands each a piece of thick copper wire to do duty for a walking cane, they visit the Saldanha Captain without showing any inclination to barter, but only to find out to what extent their desire for copper went. Found them  $1\frac{1}{2}$  mile from this, and were most civilly welcomed—were taken about to look at his 15 houses, his cattle and sheep (about 15 or 1,600 in number), after that they were invited into his house, nicely made of mats and of fair dimensions, and treated with milk—the two spending their tobacco freely. Had taken with them a cup from which to drink the milk, from which the Chief and his wives also desired to drink, which they considered a great honour. Took a great fancy to the wire, for one of which, weighing  $\frac{3}{4}$  lb., they offered a fat calf, and for three pieces of the same kind a cow. The two pretended that they did not wish to barter, but told the Captain that the Dutch Commander had a great deal of copper and they might treat with him. Promised to visit the fort with cattle—the Captain feared and honoured by his men—comported himself admirably—altogether there were about 250. The children drank from the udders of the sheep, being placed by the mothers between the legs of the animal—an interesting sight. The huts were situated in a circle in which the cattle were kept—intended to remain on that spot until all the grass was consumed, when they would move to the fort to pasture their flocks there as long as they could find enough to eat. They



1652.

November.

showed the two many fires inland of people approaching the fort with their herds, who would also be inclined to trade. Saw at night across the bay and on the mountains many fires—Herry told us they were of the Saldanhars, who had so much cattle that we would soon run out of copper—which God grant—Amen. To-day got the Skipper at last so far that he has sounded the bay, found that it was altogether without danger, as will be seen from the drawing—and declared that no ship on entering could be lost except by carelessness or stupidity.

23.—Some Saldanhars brought a sheep—bartered it for a copper plate and  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. tobacco—also a fine bull for the value of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  gulden in copper and tobacco from the Captain, who had come according to promise—he was kindly treated and left in the evening. Yacht's crew report that much salt had been formed.

24. (Sunday).--Van der Helm, Verburgh and 16 armed men sent to the Saldanhars with pipes and tobacco to treat them and so coax them to come to the fort to trade, as up to date only 11 or 12 cattle and sheep had been obtained—necessary to provide more for the sick, as the natives have abundance of cattle. Well received by the Captain and regaled on milk—the jars very dirty, the offer consequently politely declined—presented them with pipes and tobacco to return their courtesy and coax them towards the fort. Gave us to understand that they had not that intention but were going to the large wood about 7 miles from this, discovered by the two bookkeepers—did not show any desire for copper—disinclined to trade. Did not know what to make of it—afraid that Herry, formerly an enemy of the Saldanhars, but now very intimate with them, is brewing mischief, which, if discovered, will secure him quarters with wife, children and all the Watermen on Robben Island, to enable us to trade successfully with the Saldanhars and win their favour.

25.—Crew of yacht proceed to the woods to obtain clubs for seal killing—returned at night with the information that the Saldanhars were already moving towards the back of Table Mountain.

26.—Bartered an old and young sheep from some Saldanhars for wire, and a lamb for some tobacco. Whilst trading we saw them communicating with Herry, who seemed to urge them to ask more copper, thus greatly hindering us, as we offered pretty much for the sheep, having before this bartered the animals for tobacco according to the length of such sheep—reserving the copper for cattle. Mate of yacht and Corporal had been here before, and traded with the Saldanhars, with whom Herry had never been seen, and who were consequently very manageable. Evident that Herry instead of good, is doing us harm, and observing his bare-faced treachery, we communicated to them our displeasure, and told them that Herry was the cause of our not doing any business, and that they should behave differently if we were to continue our kindness to him, &c. Tried Herry by proposing that he should

1652.

November.

join our people going to the Saldanhars, believing that he would be afraid to do so. Did not refuse, as we believe that he knew that they had left, though a few days ago he did not dare to do so. Saw in the meanwhile some fires on the side of the mountain, and went further inland—met no one. Herry did not dare to go with them, but returned and waited at the Salt River. Evident that to curry favour with them he has been trying to urge them to increase the price of their cattle—preventing trade, and no doubt doing more mischief. The yacht to proceed to Saldanha Bay for more skins, in order to have a supply for the return fleet.

27.—Officers of yacht receive instructions to sail. Saldanhars arrive with 27 sheep—traded 19 for wire and tobacco, each costing about six or seven stivers. Barter went on smoothly until Herry came, showing that he is in our way and that some course must be pursued with him.

28.—Arrival of Saldanhars. Instigated by Herry we could not trade with them—managed finally to secure nine sheep as cheaply as yesterday—made them understand that we keep the plates for cattle and the wire for sheep.

29.—Weather prevents departure of yacht. Visited by the Saldanha Captain, who promises to bring cattle to-morrow—treated him well—bartered four sheep for  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. wire and 1 lb. tobacco—unwilling to part with their cattle apparently.

30.—Yacht still prevented from leaving. Some Saldanhars squatted about three miles away on the other side of the bay arrive with some sheep—bartered 17 for 7 lbs. wire and 6 lbs. tobacco and some pipes—value 6 gulden—promised to bring cows to-morrow, to be paid for with plates, which they are very fond of. Had enough to do to explain that the plates are kept for cattle, and that we set as high a value on our plates as they do on their cattle—otherwise they would bring nothing but sheep.

N.B.—The state of wind and weather, &c., as usual, carefully noted.

December.

December 1. (Sunday).—Yacht still detained by the weather from proceeding to Saldanha Bay for seal skins, blubber, and oil—some other Saldanhars arrived with 7 or 8 cows—barter 4 old and 3 young ones for  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. wire, 6 lbs. copper plate, and 2 lbs. tobacco and pipes, value  $4\frac{1}{2}$  gulden—also 6 sheep for 2 lbs. wire and 2 lbs. tobacco with pipes—each sheep costing hardly 6 stivers—bought also 2 tusks for  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. tobacco.

2.—Yacht leaves. Saldanhars arrive in the afternoon with 6 or 7 cows and a troop of fine sheep, of which we bought 24 sheep for 6 or 8 stivers value in wire and tobacco, and 4 head of cattle for the value of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  gulden in copper plates, tobacco and pipes. Commence to trade now in reality, though they part with their cattle with reluctance. In the evening saw many fires—told by Herry that there were thousands of natives in the neighbourhood—had watch kept vigilantly, though our intercourse is friendly. Bought 12 ducks and 42 other birds for about 1 lb. tobacco—could not rear or tame them, had them prepared for the people—taste good.

3.—Bought 8 cows and 12 sheep from the Saldanhars for about 30 lbs. copper plate and wire and 8 lbs. tobacco, also some pipes—sheep at  $6\frac{1}{2}$  stivers and cows at 6 skillings the head.

4.—Saldanhars leave hurriedly after selling us 1 heifer, 1 calf and 9 sheep.

5.—Bought a cow and 11 sheep. Saldanhars approaching gradually nearer with their houses—teaching us to be on our guard. Our men not only asleep when on guard, but also stealing each other's and the Company's property—consequently found it necessary to appoint a Provost Marshal named Michiel Gleve of Stralsund (a very fit person) with the salary of 15 gulden per month, and the emoluments connected with the office as in India.

6.—Bartered 9 cows and 22 sheep for copper and tobacco. If we had no tobacco no trade would result, hence 1,000 lbs. of tobacco required annually, as often a cow has been withheld because of a finger's length of tobacco. Will not take rotten tobacco—call it stinking tobacco. Among these Saldanhars were two new captains who wished to see our house, in which they were treated with three or four drinks and some tobacco. Saw in the meanwhile along the hill beside Table Mountain the country covered with cattle and sheep as with grass, the property of said chiefs, who intend to pitch their tents near to us and desire to see our mode of living and our wives, to which we agreed, though we would like to see them further off, as our number is small and our means of defence slight. Saldanhars friendly—if a cow runs away they immediately fetch it for an inch length of tobacco and return the copper plate to us until they have brought the animal back to our pasture grounds—they only wish to be kindly treated, which costs nothing. Last night Martinus de Hase left his post as sentry and stole about 70 turnips from the garden below the fort—caught by the picket, and brought to the guard-house, but as soon as the gate was open in the morning he ran away, afraid of being severely punished, having at divers times committed thefts, but always in consequence of his respectable parents let off with light punishment. Jan Pietersz: Soenwater having stolen some of the Company's wire whilst on guard (the wheels of the barrows having been tied with it through want of iron) is sentenced to be scourged.

7.—Burglary committed in the carpenter's shop. Things stolen:—of the chief carpenter 1 pack of cloth clothing, 1 white pair of kersey pants, 4 shirts, 4 or 5 copper rings, some knives and 1 pair of shoes; of Willem Gabrielsz:  $\frac{1}{4}$  piece guinea linen, 6 knives, 1 pair new shoes, 1 copper pot,  $\frac{1}{2}$  book of paper and pens; and of Frans Hendriksz: Van Vleute, a chisel. Thief supposed to be M. de Hase—Corporal and six men sent to look for him—supposed to be among the Saldanhars, who are about here in multitudes with about 2,000 sheep and cattle, within  $\frac{1}{2}$  cannon shot from the fort. Bought 1 cow, 2 heifers and 18 sheep for copper and tobacco—also bartered—taking what we can get—3 sheep for an old driver and



1652.

—  
December.

some tobacco, which former they use as cold chisels—wish we had more of this old iron, as we bought last week a calf with the same. The Saldanhar captain recovered for us a young ox, which we had already considered as lost, for which he was munificently entertained. Jan Pietersz: Soenwater undergoes his sentence. Afraid that the wind will bring the sticks about our ears.

8. (Sunday).—Bought 11 cows and 29 sheep from the Saldanhars, among the latter some captains, one of whom we entertained yesterday. All treated kindly as usual. Grass set on fire by Saldanhars—requested them not to come so near us with their fire, upon which all immediately proceeded to extinguish the same, for which each received a finger's length of tobacco—seem bent upon not injuring us but showing us kindness—this is reciprocated—we are nevertheless on our guard. Thousands of Saldanhars around us, but not trespassing on the pasture grounds occupied by us—seem to have great faith in us. Bought two fine partridges for a finger's length of tobacco—told them to bring more, as they were very nice.

9.—Bought 9 cows and 36 sheep—cows at 35 or 36 stivers and the sheep at 6 stivers value. Martinus de Hase caught with the carpenter's clothes on him—stolen things all found in a little bush where he had concealed them—freely acknowledged his theft—made a full confession—had absconded because afraid of punishment—had expected to exchange the things stolen among the Saldanhars for food; they had, however, robbed him of the copper rings of the wheelbarrows and the knives, as he was alone—had in despair committed the crime hoping to be put to death, and begged to be shot and not hanged—had often robbed the gardens and the fowls' nests. Decided to keep him confined until the arrival of the return fleet, and hand him over to the Commander, very likely an India Councillor. Gathered as much of the mustard seed on the side of Table Mountain as we could get, about a ton full; will sow them near the works to use the leaves for refreshing the ships. Drank for the first time milk of the cows and sheep, which nourishes the sick likewise.

10.—Bought 12 cows and 18 sheep for less than yesterday, each cow costing fully 26 stivers and each sheep  $5\frac{1}{2}$  do. The cadjagh sown some 6 or 7 days ago in a well manured plot appears above ground, also cabbages, carrots and peas. Collected a fair quantity of seed from the latter, also of the cabbage lettuce and chervil, though little of the last had grown.

11.—Wind and rain—latter welcome for the gardens—two sheep killed by the rain, also a young calf. Necessary to have sheds for sheep and young calves, but we are in want of the necessary materials. Only bought 5 sheep for about  $5\frac{1}{2}$  stivers each—Saldanhars in numbers at the Fresh and Salt Rivers. Took the soldiers from the works to be on guard continually in case of surprise—kept the sailors at work—present number of men as follows: Soldiers 30, sailors at work 24, carpenters and boys 7.

masons 9, gardeners 8, cowherds 2, shepherds 2, pigherds 1, cooks and boys 4, surgeon and boy 2, gunner 1, hospital superintendent 1, provost marshal 1, besides the Commander, 1 sick comforter, 1 assistant, 1 butler, one cooper and 2 boys, 8 in all—total 100, also women and children and men of the yacht 25—grand total 125 drawing pay, among them some sick in bed and many lazy bones whom it would be better to discharge.

12.—Sowed some Roman beans—bought 2 cows, 5 sheep and a tusk. Saldanhars very likely detained by the bad weather—squatting at the Salt River.

13.—Saldanhars come near to the fort with thousands of cattle and sheep obtained only 20 sheep, 2 cows and 5 calves, they being unwilling to part with their cattle—hard to behold so much cattle and not be able to get any, though we offered  $\frac{1}{3}$  more for every head than we were accustomed to do, and treated the natives as kindly as possible—perhaps they have enough copper or been influenced by a jealous rival—would like to know the first point, for it would have been easy, if proper, to have seized about 10,000 which—if ordered to do so—would be afterwards and now also very serviceable—the natives trusting us. Once well supplied, the number could be kept up by breeding, and there would be no fear that the English would spoil the traffic with the natives, who daily give us sufficient cause, in consequence of their thieving, for revenge on them or their cattle, and if their cattle cannot be obtained in a friendly way, why then suffer their thefts without making reprisals, which would be required only once, for with 150 men 10 or 12,000 cattle could be secured, and without any danger; as many of these savages could be caught without a blow, for transmission as slaves to India, as they always come to us unarmed; this, however, requires more consideration and wiser judgment than ours alone—we have only by the way mentioned it but will reflect upon it after more experience gained and orders received. Heavy South-East wind.

14.—Bought 15 cows and 31 sheep—gave more and offered more than usual—each beast costing already about 6 skillings and each sheep 7 stivers—having before only paid for sheep 5 or  $5\frac{1}{2}$  stivers and for cattle 26 to 28 and 30 stivers a piece. Believe that the natives are gorged with copper—the more we offer the more they ask, returning at night with their cattle to the Salt River.

15. (Sunday).—Bought 4 cows, 1 calf and 11 sheep—could get no more—raising their prices—thought it advisable also to hold out a little, but if this does not answer, will have to spend more to obtain a greater number of cattle for breeding purposes—have at present only 88 head of cattle and 269 sheep, besides those killed daily for the men. A Saldanhar stole a copper plate—detected by a soldier—created a great sensation—Saldanhars ran away, but were called back by Herry and the chief told that we knew that he could not help it—barter continued, but the fear remained upon

1652.  
—  
December.



1652

December.

them, as they drove their cattle away. A little while after found three cows driven by a Hottentoot, which we thought had been pilfered from our flock—sent three or four men to circumvent them, who approached near to their flocks, when they all ran away into the woods and up the mountain, leaving their cattle behind—our men called and made them understand that they had merely come to inquire whether the three cows belonged to the whites, but finding the contrary, did not desire their cattle, but civilly asked them to sell them for copper. A new friendship was created and at night some came to the fort with sheep, but if our four men had so willed it, having no weapon but a sword each, they might have driven 40 or 50 cattle to the fort, as all the Saldanhars had run away, showing a timid disposition. We consequently assured a certain chief who came to us in the evening of our good intentions and our readiness to give as much copper and brass for their cattle as they might fairly claim, requesting them to bring many, showing some copper and making them understand that we had brought it for that purpose, and that the ships would bring more—that we were not of the kind of people seeking to rob others but would grant them what they asked for what we required—we treated him kindly, so that he left quite contented, promising to return to-morrow.

16.—Saldanhars half a mile from the fort—only bought 1 cow and 1 sheep—taking 3 sheep back with them, though we offered more than before—believe that they are gorged with copper, having no use for it except as an ornament—consequently very little more cattle will be obtained unless other means be resorted to, but this is at present premature. Herry explained that after the departure of the Saldanhars the Fishmen would arrive with cattle only, and if we wished to oblige him and the Saldanhars we should kill the Fishmen and take their cattle, which would be easily done as they were a very weak tribe. Told him all were our friends who cared to trade, as we had come with copper and tobacco to buy cattle but not to injure anybody—wishing to live in friendship with all. This pleased him as regarded himself and the Saldanhars but not as regarded the Fishmen—the ruin of the latter would be too premature; as beforehand it will be necessary to inquire what profit could be secured from them for the Company. A fine ox and lamb died suddenly.

17.—Bought one sheep though we paid more for it—natives raising their price and continually driving their cattle away after the sale of an animal—what this means is difficult to say, though we treat their chiefs handsomely—could get no more than 1 cow, 1 calf and 11 sheep—not easy to fathom this peculiar people—sowed some cadjanghai, cress, cabbage, water-melon, melon and Indian beans, planted also orange and apple pips—those planted before not having come up. At night about 9 or 10 o'clock saw to the East-South-East, southward from the head of the giant, about 80° above the horizon, a strange star with a tail; the tail



extending northwards right on the knees of the giant, and the head mostly to the south about  $10^{\circ}$  away. Jan Pietersz: Soenwater sentenced for theft ran away—apparently afraid of punishment for other thefts.

1652.  
—  
December.

18.—Saldanhars in swarms with numerous cattle near the fort, almost rushing into the the gate and with difficulty kept away from the gardens—not inclined to trade—flush of copper and consequently cattle trade must diminish. Merry says that they have enough copper and will henceforth bring only now and then an animal. Natives make armlets and chains of the copper, and if there be no longer a chance to trade what harm would it be if they were deprived of 6 or 8,000 head of cattle—the opportunities are many, as they are weak and timid—3 or 4 men often come with 1,000 cattle within range of our cannon, who might easily be cut off. And as they are so confiding we continue to treat them kindly to gain their confidence, and still more so to see whether in course of time anything may be done with them in the shape of trade or otherwise for the Company's benefit and likewise should we to-day or to-morrow receive the order, to be able on the strength of their confidence to take their cattle easily and without a blow, as it is miserable to behold so much cattle, which are so necessary for refreshments for the ships, but cannot be obtained by good treatment or barter. Saldanhars return to the Salt and Fresh Rivers beside Table Mountain, about a mile from this. Saw the comet on the same spot.

19.—Only eight sheep obtained—trade slackening more and more—their inclination for copper passing away.

20.—Jan Soenwater returns to the fort and receives his deserved punishment. The cadjangle sown on the 17th springing up, also the watermelons. Bartered four sheep from the Saldanhars, who had again drawn near to the fort with much cattle, for some tobacco—they no longer ask for copper. If we had no more tobacco we would hardly get a cow or sheep for copper alone—good that they are so partial to tobacco, with which we will succeed very well, having to-day bought a fine milk ewe for its length in tobacco =  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. weight = 11 doits. Very cheap indeed. Saw the comet in the North-East, northerly from the belt of the giant, about  $60^{\circ}$  above the horizon.

21.—On this side N.W. and across the bay strong S.E. wind, which often happens. Sowed a good deal of salad seed, beans, and peas—commenced to cut some wheat and barley, which grew beautifully in spite of the strong winds. If the lands had been manured sooner we would have had earlier and better crops even. Our first season for experiments. Wonderful how well the things grow on a wild and otherwise uncultivated and unmanured ground—expect much from manure, for which the cattle are very serviceable, would, therefore, wish for more to have also milch cows besides those required as refreshments for the ships—but the native desire for copper has passed away, as appears from the conduct of

1652.

December.

a chief to-day, though we offer more. They inquire daily for the ships, especially the English vessels, which makes us suppose that Herry has been influencing them to hold out, as he no doubt likes the English more than he does us, having voyaged with them to Bantam, and expecting to have some profit from them. To prevent which we hope time and opportunity will offer us the means. Would like to have prompt orders to forbid him to trade with the natives or otherwise. Only obtained three sheep. Saw the comet this evening towards the North-East like yesterday.

22. (Sunday).—Bought five sheep—watermelons sown on 17th springing up—manure does them good apparently, as they would not grow in unmanured ground. Death of the sailor Switsert Teunisz: Pyl.

23.—Buried the sailor. Saw no Saldanhars near the fort, but our people fishing at Salt River saw them going inland with thousands of cattle and sheep. But Herry tells us that they will return when the after grass shall have appeared, the vegetation round about having been burnt for the purpose. Are only provided with 89 cattle and 284 sheep, from which the population is to be supplied. The Dutch food is exhausted, and no fish to be caught, which will diminish the supplies for the ships considerably. Hope for the best and trust in God, as the Saldanhars have enough copper.

24.—Sent Van der Helm, the provisional sergeant, and six musketeers to the Saldanhar camps about two or three miles from this, to inquire whether or not the natives had left, how strong they were, and whether they would prefer trading at their location to doing so at the fort. Took with them a good wooden box with cut tobacco and pipes to treat the natives. Returned in the afternoon with some Saldanhars driving 1 cow and 5 sheep, which we bought for copper and tobacco. Report that many had left with their flocks; had only seen two locations, the one having seven and the other eight huts, altogether not more than 80 souls, and of the number 40 men able to carry arms, not at all strong, and possessing 7 or 800 cows and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  thousand sheep—were frightened when they first saw our men, and drove away their cattle to the mountains—were called back and told we had brought tobacco and copper to trade with, and were anxious to be on a cordial footing with them—gave them a pipeful of tobacco and finally persuaded them to bring one beast and five sheep to the fort. Seemed to prefer to trade at their quarters—the reason we do not know, as often they came with their cattle near to the fort and found that we desired no more than to trade with them for copper and tobacco. Perhaps prejudiced by Herry, they are afraid of us, and now more so than ever. Herry likes the English more than he does us, being always full of them—no doubt he has persuaded the natives to keep their cattle back until the arrival of the English, as he seems to know pretty exactly when their fleet will be here from India. Saldanhars continually asking when, especially the English ships will be here—told them—if Herry truly interprets



1852.  
—  
December.

—that the copper of the ships will be given to us to trade with for cattle to be distributed among the vessels and that we still had sufficient copper and tobacco for the purpose. We doubt whether Herry interprets faithfully, as we often trade better without him—if the English arrive, we will be better able to discover what connection there is between them. Saw at night the comet again—having travelled to the North-North-West of us about 50 degrees above the horizon, its tail, which is now less bright than formerly, pointing to the East-South-East—its signification is known to the Lord.

25. (Christmas).—Bought eight sheep—last night one sheep was almost wholly devoured by a wild beast, notwithstanding the watch kept in and outside of the kraal. At night seven or eight wild beasts crossed over the canals, fully eight feet broad and four feet deep, into the kraal, so that the guards fired before they could be compelled to leave—eight persons henceforth to guard the cattle, two of whom shall together take a turn to keep watch and keep a fire burning to frighten the wild beasts. The square within the fort being too small to contain all the cattle, we intend to make a kraal—when the garden produce on that spot has been gathered—between the two points Drommedaris and Oliphant, with a front wall of sods eight feet high and a good canal inside to water the cattle, which may easily be done by locking the river, for which and other similar works the Commodore of the expected fleet will be asked to lend us some assistance with his crews, as we will never be able to finish with the hands we have now. The work is daily increasing, and much is to be done in trenching and digging up the garden ground.

26.—Arrival of the very oldest Saldanhars with their captain and four sheep—had not been here for some time—treated well to draw them nearer, and obtained in the afternoon two more sheep. Churned the first butter and from half an anker of milk obtained 2 lbs. good yellow butter—doing our best to make cheese—in want of many of the necessary utensils, which we have to find on the first opportunity, as success is fairly promising. Very severe South-East during the evening and night, so that the sentry could not walk on the ramparts. In the whole world it cannot blow as hard as the S.E. does here, which often surpasses the West Indian hurricanes and the Japanese typhoons.

27.—Bought a cow and seven sheep from the same natives.

28.—Wind still blowing violently, knocking the corn out of the ears, so that we hardly won a quarter of our crop. Found oats among the corn mixed up with the seeds of wheat and barley sown—carefully gathered—to be sown on a separate plot to grow in quantity, as we intend to do with barley also. Corn here extraordinarily beautiful, pity that it has been so much knocked about by the wind. Churned twice to-day with less milk than on the 29th, obtained  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. much finer butter than before—in course of time things will improve—thank God we are so far advanced that



1652.

—  
December.

we can accommodate the sick with sweet and butter milk and eggs. Fowls breeding finely, but the pigs and pigeons do not seem to prosper—pigs not yet having littered and only seven pigeons reared. Bought 5 sheep, 1 cow and 2 small calves, which we paid for at a dearer rate to entice the sellers—and to obtain a sufficient breeding stock. Saldanhars had been at the Fishmen, killing four and capturing much cattle—requested us likewise to attack the Fishmen, which would oblige them greatly, as the former were a pack of thieves, who would when here endeavour to steal our cattle. We replied that we very much liked the Saldanhars to live and trade with them amicably, and would see when the Fishmen came what people they were, but would always be attached to the Saldanhars, which seemed to please them.

29. (Sunday).—Bartered 4 sheep and 2 cows. Found 18 sheep wanting—herds acknowledged they had lost them through carelessness. Condemned the three principal herds each to pay two reals for six sheep, and told them to be more careful in future otherwise they would be punished.

30.—Wind having blown severely for 5 or 6 days, we found the gardens much injured—the peas blown to pieces, also the beans, which were beautiful—seed of the cabbage lettuce suffered, strange to say, no injury—collected it in this calm weather—likewise that of radish, spinach, endives, &c. Will in consequence of the drought not be able to sow again before February or March. The return fleet will find all our vegetables run into seed except carrots, turnips, radish and beetroot—cabbage also will be ready and in quantity—every day we eat mutton—the churn is fairly going, and we have set aside already 6 lbs. butter—the people receiving butter milk, which may also refresh the men of the coming ships. In want, however, of appliances to make cheese. Matters bucolic promising well—eating fresh butter at table, using the Dutch butter for food. Preparing to bake bread from the new wheat to have everything straight for the refreshment of the ships, which will seemingly henceforth be fairly possible—but from April to October the best refreshments in the shape of vegetables will be had, and for the ships in February and March the most cattle, carrots, cabbage, turnips, &c.—milk the whole year through, for which purpose cattle should be kept. Bought a cow and five sheep. Sent to search for the sheep between Table and Lion Mountains. The men also to go behind Table Mountain to discover how many Saldanhars there were—they remained away the whole night.

31.—Sheep not found—men reported that they had found about the Hout Bay six locations containing altogether about 500 souls and numberless cattle—natives much afraid of the whites, who showed them great kindness, so that some of them accompanied the six soldiers a great distance to show them the way for a little tobacco. Bought 12 sheep and 1 cow. The newly arrived Saldanhars report that many of them were at the Saltpan with

much cattle, which they intended to sell—treated them kindly and informed them that we had much copper and tobacco—may some advantage result from this—God grant it, Amen.

N.B.—The wind and weather very carefully noted every day.

January 1, 1653.—Bought seven sheep before the sermon. Released from irons Gerrit Dirckz : Jan Blanx and Willem Huytjens, and reinstated in office the suspended corporal.

1652.  
—  
December.

1653.  
—  
January.

2.—Bought eight sheep. Died one Dutch pig—these animals do not seem to thrive here. Likewise died one sheep and one calf. Wind so heavy that no one could easily keep his legs, wheelbarrows not manageable on the planks, and the ground as hard as stone in consequence of the dry wind.

3.—Bought five sheep—wind as bad—no progress with the work.

4.—Sent the catechist with a corporal and six soldiers with copper, tobacco and pipes to the Saldanhars, to inquire whether they would like to trade at their place, as they no longer come to the fort with any large number of cattle. Bartered seven sheep in the meanwhile. The party returning brought 2 cows, 1 bull, 1 ox, 1 heifer and 1 calf with 11 sheep. Saldanhars more inclined to trade at their camp than at the fort. Will therefore try again on Monday. Also bought four cows, a calf and six sheep—God be praised for the blessing. On the other side of the bay—from the wreck of the *Haerlem* along the whole coast towards Saldanha Bay—numerous fires, belonging, as Herry states, to natives with much cattle, who may be expected here to trade; if they like copper the cattle barter may again look up. Would like to have more tobacco, which is running out, as without it bartering will be scarcely possible.

5. (Sunday).—Bought 12 sheep and 2 cows, 1 ox, a calf and heifer, for copper and tobacco—half of the last roll already used up.

6.—Sent the catechist Willem Barentz Wylant and some soldiers to the Saldanhars with copper and tobacco to buy cattle. Proceeding with our usual work on the fort and dwellings, gathering the seeds of vegetables and preparing land for cabbage plants, which with carrots and turnips grow as well here as at home, and with which we hope to be well supplied for the return fleet to serve with the cattle as refreshments. Wish we had a corn bag full of carrot and turnip seed—we would then soon have enough to eat the good ones and feed the pigs with the rest. Beet, radish, and other garden produce will not fail in course of time, and consequently henceforth abundant refreshment will through the whole year be at hand. The churn goes oftener—a pity, however, that the cows give so little milk. From 25 we do not get during the week more than half-an-anker of milk, from which 3 to 3½ lbs. butter are obtained, and better than what is made at Formosa—about enough for the table. The milk is distributed among the men. Our men returned at night with 5 cows, 1 ox, 3 calves and 5

1653.  
—  
January.

heifers, also 8 sheep. Bought at the fort 2 cows and 2 calves—a good day's work. Men reported that the Saldanhars were two miles further off, and had noticed that the natives would have attacked them for the sake of their copper if they had seen a chance, there being 80 of them—whilst our men counted 20, among them 10 musketeers. As it has often been observed that our men when only two or three together are robbed of their axes, tobacco boxes, &c., we will henceforth add more men to those sent out to barter cattle, though the works be thereby retarded. Saldanhars not here the whole year; have to go to them, as they are a lazy lot, but this does not matter as long as we can get cattle by money or kindness in order to have an abundance for the ships.

7.—Sent our people to trade—obtained 3 cows, 1 ox and 2 calves, also 4 sheep. Wind prevents us from working at the fortifications. Sent for reeds to thatch the houses. The wind at night was frightful.

8.—Catechist and 20 armed men sent out to buy cattle. Obtained at the fort 1 ox, 1 cow and 10 sheep. Cut the first 2 red cabbages, as good as at home.

9.—Men returned with 1 cow, 2 calves and 3 sheep. Report departure of Saldanhars towards the east to the Bay de Sambras, whither they go every year, and thence crossing over the country to the west, as Herry says, proceed to Saldanha Bay, whence they come hither. Obtained the cattle from the Saldanhar Captain, stationed about 7 or 8 miles away eastward, nearly on the beach, having with him about 80 men and 5 or 600 beautiful head of cattle and 2,000 sheep—the finest they had ever seen. Would not part with any—had to suffer much insult from them and had nearly come to blows. Obeyed orders, however, and did them no harm—bore as much as they could, but had sufficient opportunity to drive off all their cattle, as the corporal, being hard pressed by the natives, fired a small pistol over their heads to get rid of them, when all ran away, leaving their cattle behind. They were called back and told that we would not do them any harm but wished to trade with copper and tobacco—and if they did not like it, they might go whither they wished—parted good friends and gave them some tobacco. Herry stated that Saldanhars will not return before next season, but that there were other natives who might come when seeing the copper of the Saldanhars. For when the latter, named Queena, were a good distance off, after having journeyed from one good pasture to another, the Fishmen called Soaqua would arrive with a few cattle. Told us to be careful of them, as they will come nominally to sell cattle but at the same time will endeavour to do us as much harm as possible, stealing what they can, as they subsist by stealing. What they have has been stolen from the Saldanhars, who when they catch them kill them without mercy and throw them to the dogs. Fires seen towards the East. Glad to have obtained so much cattle from the



1653.  
—  
January.

Saldanhars. People well supplied with meat—still on hand 350 sheep and 130 cows, among the latter 25 milch cows, 1 bull and many fine young oxen and heifers for breeding stock and refreshments for the ships. Hope to obtain some from the Fishmen also. The half of our copper supply still left. Tobacco running short—requires for the future at least 1,000 lbs. weight, to spend it more liberally, as the natives are mighty fond of it. Two sheep destroyed by wild beasts during the night—the spoor evidently that of a lion. Four carpenters and others in bed with dysentery seemingly in consequence of eating some of the wild figs growing here abundantly and eaten by the natives. It is miserable that the common people are so indifferent about their health and know of no moderation before they are with their noses in their beds.

10.—Heavy S.E. wind.

11.—The same—apparently S.E. season.

12. (Sunday).—Warm and calm under the shadow of Table Mountain, but across the bay a heavy South Easter — of frequent occurrence. Bought two sheep from the Saldanhars, who had travelled two days' journey, showing their fires far away beyond the mountains towards the East; would remain there some time and now and then bring something. Another sheep killed last night by a lion, which was frightened away by a musket shot from the carcase in broad daylight, taking his course towards the kloof, likewise a number of jackals, as also another lion towards the Lion Mountain. Sheep henceforth to be driven into the fort and the cattle into the kraal, with eight men to guard them during the night.

13.—Commenced to thresh our new corn—fairly full and large, promising good success when properly manured. South East winds unfortunately prevent the successful rearing of all sorts of grain fruit. These hurricanes do not, however, affect the valleys behind the Salt River, which may be advantageously cultivated by freemen as they are very rich, fine and level, and well supplied with fresh water. No Formosa to be compared to it.

14.—Bought a cow and calf for copper and tobacco, the chief saying that they intended coming to live near us again; treated them well with wine and tobacco to gain their favour, promising to give more copper for their cattle. Herry told us that the Saldanhars made armlets and chains of the copper which they exchange for cattle with tribes more inland, annually returning to the English and Dutch to barter for another supply. Had, however, not been accustomed to sell so much cattle in one year, but if they had exchanged their copper they would return for more. If this be the case it might be profitable in the cold season to salt down some oxen in barrels, as salt is abundant and the pasturage is rich, even for thousands of cattle, within range of the fortress, beyond what is required for gardens and lands. Besides, there is the fine country adjoining Table Mountain, on which the Sal-

1653.

January.

danbars have depastured about 20 cattle and sheep since November on an area of seven or eight miles in Table Valley.

15.—Bought a cow and five sheep. Natives unwilling to part with their cattle — keep them in better condition and less willing to sell them than the other Saldanhars. Lost two cows from the kraal.

16.—Cow and bull lost by carelessness of the guard. Disheartening that the men do their duty so badly. They do not seem to be afraid of punishment, and when it is thought that a careful man has been found, disappointment ensues, so that you have almost to go and watch yourself.

17.—Twelve head of cattle missing. The guards confessed that they had taken little care of the kraal, and the six were condemned each to pay 50 gulden to be more alert in the future. Search unsuccessful. Suppose that the Hottentots have been stealing, as twice the gates were found open and the cattle outside. Herry believed that some beach-rangers had done it, and went to find out. Ordered that the guard, consisting of three sailors, together taking turns, should be commanded by two trustworthy cadets, who would at night receive the cattle from the herds, count them, and in the morning return them counted to the same. Likewise every Saturday we shall count them ourselves, the deficit to be taken out of the offender by punishment. Return of the yacht, bringing 1,500 seal skins—would have brought more if they had had experienced men and the necessary appliances. Complain of the unwillingness of the men to do this kind of difficult work. Saw no natives excepting a few naked meagre beach-rangers, but fires inland. Had consequently no trade, the principal items being the skins. The blubber, according to report, is hardly worth while to be conveyed to this for melting down. Will make a trial with the eight casks brought. Saldanha Bay full of whales—since August none seen here. Whale fishing may therefore be taken into account if the Company intends to boil down train oil. Necessary appliances in the shape of boats, &c., wanting.

*Here follows the Journal of the bookkeeper Verburgh.*

1652.

December.

December 2, 1652.—We left in the afternoon and anchored at Robben Island, where we obtained penguins for the men, who liked it.

3.—Arrived about night at Dassen Island, landed with some men and a hound, and whilst some gathered eggs we hunted rock-rabbits, catching about thirty, leaving the seals and penguins unmolested. The seals apparently cast their young about this time, as they are so abundant everywhere that a ship of 300 tons could be easily freighted with them by just picking them up with the hand, whilst the old ones hunted at sea or on land would not be caught by 60 men for many years. If therefore the skin of a young seal, which is of beautiful texture, realizes 10 stivers at home, the Company would be greatly benefited; yea, it would be worth the

trouble to have a small vessel purposely for it, whilst the skins of the old ones would be worth one rixdollar a piece.

1852.  
—  
December.

4.—Went on shore again with a corporal and two men to dig wells. After various trials they report that they have everywhere within six feet from the surface come upon hard rock and had to desist. Betook ourselves to hunting with the dog, which within a short time caught about 25 rock-rabbits. Corporal reported having found a spot where the French had been preparing skins, having found about 11 or 12 scraping poles, and that they had done so with numbers to facilitate operations. It is a pity that no 60 men are at hand for service, likewise two sailing boats, which might be safely kept here or drawn on shore—using the one to carry the skins to the fort and the other to sail about and fish for the men stationed at the bay and on Dassen Island, barter cattle, bring the men from one island to another, and especially trade with the natives, as this would annually save the Company a great deal. Whatever danger there may be for the boat from the French or other hypocritical friends might be met by arming it with two small guns and giving every man a musket, Likewise advisable to send a person well acquainted with the subject to the Fatheland, to lay the matter before the Directors and procure the necessary appliances of the best quality. Upon this the success of the industry mainly depends.

5.—Weighed anchor and arrived at noon in Saldanha Bay. If the sea continues to be rough the men will not be able to land on the island for the next eight days. The least rough weather makes landing impossible. Hope for the best, to have many skins ready for the fleet.

6.—Dug for water—found it as salt as the sea. The mate caught about 3,000 harders and 16 steenbraasems—all dried to be divided among the men.

7, 8, 9 and 10.—Stormy weather—now and then a lull, so that fish could be caught. Distributed the fish among those destined for the island, and for food for fourteen days to be used in case of delay.

11.—Sent the men on shore—trust they will do their duty. Told the Corporal to keep the men at work—as the men will do anything to avoid the dirty occupation—and not to spare the cane; also to take care that the seals instead of being killed are not driven to sea, which would of course please the flayers—saying with a clown's jest: "The devil! Corporal, it is impossible to kill many, the whole lot are becoming so shy that they take to the seal path over the rocks into the sea." He promised to be careful, and to send offenders on board, who would not try it a second time, as he considered that his honour and advancement in the service depended upon doing his duty. Boats return, as they were in danger of being swamped, it being impossible to land. Will have to wait some time. Some, however, say that landing here is easier than at Dassen Island, but this is childish talk (let them defend



1652.

—  
December.

themselves the best way they can should we be unsuccessful), but it is certain that there is in it a certain sandy bay before mentioned (of which there are many small ones to land in with sloops) and where the French had been and shipped the skins, of which we have no doubt (as their huts, &c., stood near by). There is therefore good anchorage for a surfboat, a light galiot, or other sharp-vessel, the place being well sheltered from the wind, so that the vessel could easily obtain its cargo; and if a station were made there and the sea became boisterous it might, by means of a rope and a block on shore, be beached, and in fine weather again launched. But we submit this to the opinion of the Hon. Riebeeck and others.

12.—Men sent on shore. Mate reported that he had been on an island half-a-mile distant from this one, where the yacht could safely lie, and landing was easy—a desirable matter, because the seals were in comparison obtainable there in greater quantity, and the place for preparing the skins was convenient, as the latter could be easily sent on board. A pity indeed that this was not known before, as the seal catchers would be safer on the other island than where they are now, against attacks from the French, and where they would be in danger if that people unexpectedly arrived; but if the men were placed on the other island this would not be the case. Hope for the best.

13, 14, and 15.—Caught some small sea snoek, 2,000 harders, and 30 steenbrassemes. Asked some beach-rangers whether they would help us to kill seals, so that they could get the meat—seemed not inclined.

16.—Landed on the island and found that the skins were badly prepared. Ordered that no fat should be left on them. Each skin to be stretched with eighteen pins. All promised to do their best, but complained of their want of tools and a grinding stone, which we hope to provide as soon as possible. Their work is not as perfect as that of the French. The latter had provided themselves with the necessary apparatus and taken more kindly to the work than our people. Hope to go on better in future, when more experienced men and tools are obtained. The Company may then offer annually a dividend.

17 and 18.—Bartered from the beach-rangers 25 sea cow teeth, each for two inches of tobacco. Asked them whether they had elephant tusks, called by them quahabi. Was answered that the animals were too large and strong to be attacked by them.

19 and 20.—Caught 3,000 harders and 60 steenbrassemes. Doing our best to find out how to remove the fat from the seal skin; made experiments on board, but not successful. Experienced men like Tanneke would easily do so, and double the work done now. They are very much required, as without them the Company will not make any profit. Hence the person sent home might engage at a fair rate experienced flayers to remain on the islands for a time, as arranged by the Commanders.

21, 22, 23, and 24.—Caught 2,000 harders and 40 steenbraasems, and had them dried.

25. (Christmas).—Every man provided with a cask of water and quarter lb. tobacco, having earnestly asked for it, to remove the stench somewhat. A little arrack would have been very serviceable and gratefully accepted, but none was at hand.

26, 27, 28, and 29.—The master told us that the wounds caused by the bites of the seals are easily healed.

30.—Mate sent for water. He suggested that if a number of casks were placed in the hole into which the water runs, the water would be clear and fresh, which might be of service to the ships arriving there. Very good water for boiling. Mate states that the overseer complained that the ordinary number of seals had not been killed, in consequence of the deception practised by the killers, who will however not be excused but conveyed thence (as the French have done) to another island, where a light boat will be of service to visit the other islets, which we dare not visit with this vessel.

31.—Caught about 600 harders and 7 steenbraasems.

January 1 and 2, 1653.—Heavy South Easter, preventing us from doing anything.

3.—Fine weather. Went to the island—boat could not manage it. Landed with the sloop and killed seven large and 48 small seals.

12. (Sunday).—Recovered much of the goods washed out of the boat.

13.—Have all the skins and eight casks of blubber—viz., 1,136 large and 379 small ones—obtained since our arrival, and if the scrapers would have finished their work double the quantity might have been taken on board. The seals are beginning to grow in number again on this island.

14.—Observed here and in the bay a large number of whales easily obtainable.

15 and 16.—Here at Dassen Island, where we placed the sheep, we killed 106 seals, and a very big one, as heavy as a large cow. We also erected the signs of the Company having taken possession, placed on various spots; and having caught some rock-rabbits (the wind north-west and making anchorage unsafe) we sailed to Table Bay, where we arrived, God be praised! in the evening.

*In the Fort the Good Hope.—(Riebeeck's Journal continued.)*

18.—Sent people to Saldanhars in the neighbourhood to barter for cattle, who returned with a cow and bull. Arrival of the galiot the *Zwarte Vos*, all well on board, and commanded by Teunis Eyssen. It had left the Texel the 4th September ult., and been obliged to call at Brazil. It carried despatches that our Netherland States had fallen into war with England; and secret instructions to the Commander and officers of the return fleet. Fort still incomplete; ordered accordingly to work at it with all

1652.  
—  
December.

1653.  
—  
January.

1653.

January.

hands and leave all other matters in abeyance for the present. Sent a sheep to refresh the men of the galiot, the officers to attend the Council to-morrow. Wind prevents the skipper from landing and dining at our table—being sickly he requires it.

19. (Sunday).—Council held, when it was decided to send the yacht to Batavia and keep the galiot here. Also to add a month's pay to that of the men to compensate them for extra work and inferior food—the cattle being required for the return fleet. To begin work to-morrow with energy in order to be prepared for the English. Wind too strong for the skippers to go on board.

20.—Wind too strong to work. Commenced in the afternoon with lion courage. The skipper of the yacht, preparing for his departure to-morrow, is provisioned from the galiot with bread and wine. Galiot likewise prepared to start for Robben Island to salt penguins and young seals at that place for food for the people, as the Dutch provisions can hardly last a fortnight longer.

21.—Bought a sheep from the Saldanhars, about three or four miles away. Letters from Batavia prepared and entrusted to the chiefs of the yacht.

22.—Bought a cow and sheep.

23.—Rain and N. W. wind—delaying our work, but beneficial to the gardens. In the afternoon the yacht leaves. Last night the lions appeared to storm the fort for the sheep within it; they roared horribly, as if they wished to tear everything to pieces; wall too high for them to scale. Works being continued persistently to be well defended and have no fear of the English, as we are now already so well sheltered that without hard tennis balls and 20 times the number of our men they would not be able to dislodge us. No fear of them or any other Europeans if we can only prevent them from landing with cannon on this side of the Salt River; hence a redoubt at its mouth on this side will be necessary. Spot fixed and preparations made. Await the return ships for the required labour, as our number is too small.

24.—Heavy South-Easter.

25.—Wheelbarrows again manageable. Caught, thank God! to night 1,700 harders.

26.—Bay full of fish. Seins useless, being so old and broken; busy repairing them. It appears as if the Almighty will again come to our aid with fish, which is better for the men in their heavy work than penguins or seals.

27.—Some iron landed from the yacht to be forwarded to Batavia. Wind so heavy in the night that the galiot was in danger of parting. This afternoon a wolf killed a sheep, running away with a quarter.

28.—Bought eight fine sheep. Were liberal with our copper, but tobacco is getting low. Wish we had more.

29.—Some Brazil pumpkin, melon and watermelon seeds brought by skipper Teunis Eyssen from Pharnambuco, and sown last week, are sprouting out beautifully, but the cadjangan having fairly sprung



up has perished. We will try again. In the evening God Almighty again gave us a fine haul of fish, 14 or 1,500 fine harders. Highly required, as the Dutch food is nearly exhausted and bread can hardly last longer than three or four weeks. Our hopes rest on the return fleet for rice, &c.

30 and 31.—Wind and weather as above.

February 1.—Strong South-East wind.

2. (Sunday).—Found a salt pan about half way nearer than the other, small and not exceeding four roods square, but still containing about three or four casks. To-morrow will send men to gather the same before the rain destroys it. Cut the first white cabbage for our table, tender and delicate; also the red cabbage, which with the beef and mutton will greatly refresh the crews of the return fleet. Took out likewise beet and carrots, &c., which might be reared the whole year if we only had sufficient seeds. Cabbages, cabbage-lettuce and other greens will be plentiful, having gathered a large quantity of seed, though not so much of carrots, turnips, chervil, onions and parsley, which have been much destroyed by the hair roots.

3.—Gathered some salt. Frightful South-Easter.

4.—Wind delays departure of galiot despatched to Saldanha Bay to catch and salt rock-rabbits, to save beef and mutton for the return fleet.

5.—Galiot left. A soldier named Willem Sybertsz: died of dysentery. During the last three or four days 12 or 13 men have been laid up, evidently in consequence of the heavy labour.

6.—Wind delays the work, which would have been finished if fine weather had been permanent.

7. Nine sheep wanting of the number. Lost by carelessness of the herds. Though punished they appear to do their duty badly. Consequently ordered that Jan Glysteen and Roeloff Hendriks: who were in charge, be fined 10 gulden for each sheep and receive a hundred blows with the butt end of the musket for their carelessness.

8.—Fine, calm weather.

9. (Sunday).—Went about two miles behind Table Mountain. Found it so full of locusts that earth and sky, as if snow flakes were flying, were hardly distinguishable. If these insects were to come about the fort and into the gardens it is to be feared that all fruit will be destroyed, as we observe from the grass, which has been eaten away level with the ground. Will hope, however, that the Lord will preserve us from this affliction.

10.—Still rainy weather, welcome to our plantations.

11.—More than 20 persons very ill with fever, dropsy and dysentery. Many also very weak in the legs and tired, evidently from the hard work and scanty food. Necessary to be supplied soon, as the bread will hardly suffice for 14 days. The peas have been used up, and only a lot of barley, meat and pork for 14 days remains; a sheep or ox being sometimes killed in between to keep the men on their legs and at the works.

1653.  
—  
January.

February.

1653.  
—  
February.

12.—The barber (surgeon) reported eight cases of dropsy, dysentery, fever and pain in the joints, the sufferers altogether incapable of doing any work; besides there are many others ailing much though still walking about, becoming gradually almost helpless, so that the works are greatly retarded. It would be unfortunate if an enemy arrived now. They might starve us out, as excepting the cattle in the fort, which must feed outside, we are badly provisioned, being already on short allowance for 14 days. Hope for speedy aid from India. The chief carpenter, chief barber (who is alone) and gardener have fallen ill, whilst the provisional sergeant likewise had the fever last night. Bought to-day, thank God! a cow and 15 sheep from Saldanhars squatting some five miles away.

13.—Bartered 10 sheep, 1 ox, 3 cows and 2 calves. During the night a lamb was born, likewise one in the preceding night, which raise our hopes. General complaint made by the men that in consequence of the heavy work and the inadequate supply of food they had become very weak and tired, and therefore requested to be relieved somewhat. This is becoming more evident every day to us also. In consequence of the scarcity of Dutch provisions, not being able to give them more food, and not wishing to consume too much cattle in order to be prepared with supplies for the ships, we have allowed them some rest, advising them to remain hopeful as every hour succour may be looked for. In this way we keep them at work with renewed courage, and have as many as we can keep going, but one after the other is being laid up with weakness, dysentery, dropsy and fever to such an extent that this week between 30 and 40 have fallen ill, altogether unable to work. Have therefore ordered that every morning two sheep and some barley, of which there is but half a cask, shall be given for breakfast and two oxen during the week.

14.—Return of the galiot *De Vos* from Dassen Island, bringing 100 living rock-rabbits (Dassen) and a cask full of 160 salted ones, with report that they could easily be caught. Had anchored in a fine little bay at said islet, the drawing of which skipper Teunis Eyssen has given us, there being a fine opportunity to obtain a large number of seals and the finest anchorage for such galiots. Had also seen a large number of whales.

15.—Death of the cadet Harman Halderfort from dysentery. Many more very ill. The country around and the gardens are full of locusts, which are greatly injuring the cabbages and other vegetables. Bartered 13 sheep.

16. (Sunday).—Bought 1 ox, 1 calf and 8 sheep.

17.—Bartered four sheep. The men are falling ill more and more, mostly from dropsy, so that the works can hardly progress. Some brandy would be welcome, and be better than Spanish wine for dropsy, therefore some ought annually to be sent to this place.

18.—Fine weather.

19.—Saw whales in the bay, and bought 10 sheep and two cows from the Saldanhars.

20.—Calm, warm weather.

21.—Bought 24 head of cattle, also five sheep. Saldanhars apparently expect the ships, as they are continually asking after them, hence there is no doubt of their return, hoping to get more copper. Consequently necessary—that the trade be not spoilt—to get all the copper at the fort from the ships, as already four or five lbs. of it have to be paid for every cow. Reported that the calf supposed to have been lost had been killed by Jan Blanx and Willem Huytjens, the late deserters, in the bushes behind the Lion Mountain, where we found two feet and the cooking place. Discovered on inquiry that not only now but often they had done the same thing with the knowledge of the cattle and sheep-herds. They were put in irons, but having few men at the works and they being the healthiest, we resolved to liberate them on bail and keep them at work until the arrival of the return fleet, when they can be tried.

22.—Obtained 10 cows from the Saldanhars. Wind very strong.

23.—Obtained three sheep—two lambs were born—sheep commencing to breed fairly—hope the same from the cows.

24.—Fine weather.

25 and 26.—The same.

27 and 28.—Lost an ox. Very likely stolen by the Hottentoots, as for some time a few natives have been seen skulking near the cattle, who stole a sheep to-day but were deprived of it by our people. Some pocket pistols required for the herds for defence against the cattle thieves, as they are very much afraid of firearms.

N.B.—As usual the wind and weather are carefully noted.

March 1.—Carrots stolen from the garden. Reported by Jan van Leyen alias Verdonck of Flanders, lately deserter but now of good conduct, that Pieter Martensz : Koe and Roelof Hendricksz : shepherd, with Jan Blanx, Willem Huytjens and Gerrit Dirksz : had agreed to desert to-night or to-morrow with one of the sloops and some sheep, and that he, Jan van Leyen, had been requested to join—likewise to seize the galiot and depart with it. Jan Blanx, Willem Huytjens and Gerrit Dirksz : the principals, were immediately coaxed on board of the galiot and confined in it. Intended to do the same with Pieter Martensz : and Roeloff Hendricksz : who were herding the cattle and sheep, but they suspected danger and ran away. Counted the sheep at night, six were missing, which they had no doubt bound somewhere in the bushes for the purpose intended. Searchers returned unsuccessful. In the evening some Hottentoots report that they had seen five sheep behind Table Mountain, which were found by our people before dark, for which we thank the Almighty, as to-day the last rations of bread were distributed.

1653.

February.

March.



1658.

—  
March.

2.—Saw a boat at the point of the bay. At once sent the skipper in the sloop, well armed, to reconnoitre. Said two rogues had during the night stolen a lot of carrots. Search for them unsuccessful. Arrival of the ships *'t Hoff van Zeelandt*, with the Vice-Admiral Junius on board, and the *Walvis*. And about noon also the *Malacca* and *Parel*, with the Admiral Gerard Demmer, Ordinary Councillor of India and late Governor of Amboina. They reached the offing, but could not approach the anchorage in consequence of the South-Easter.

3.—Wind the same.

4.—The carpenter's house outside of the fort robbed in the night. Vice-Admiral Junius, some skippers and merchants land at noon, whom we treated in the best way we could. In beating up, the fore-top-mast of the *Malacca* came down. Mr. Demmer remained where he was, the wind continuing severe. Some were consequently obliged to remain on shore.

5.—Better weather. Provided the ships with cattle, sheep, cabbages, carrots, milk, &c., and sent the Admiral in the galiot 10 sheep, some cabbages, carrots and beet. He and those of the *Malacca* endeavoured to sail to the anchorage, but without success.

6.—Fine weather. *Parel* and *Malacca* anchor in the roads. Went to welcome His Honour and report on Cape matters, &c.

7.—Hon. Demmer lands—inspected the fortifications and was well pleased—returning on board in the evening.

8.—Meeting of the full Council. Produced our letters and advices regarding the English war, also the instructions for the return fleet, and only withheld the secret instructions to be delivered when the fleet leaves at the last moment. Request to have 200 men of the fleet—who would finish the fort in a fortnight's time, as our people were thoroughly done up—not entertained by the Council, but in consequence of the failure of provisions we resolved that each ship should land half a last of rice, one cask of meat and some bread. Each vessel to have per week three head of cattle and cabbages in proportion, and for the cabins four sheep, besides cabbages, carrots, beet, salad, &c.; the Admiral's, however, to have six sheep and the Vice-Admiral's five sheep, &c. Lost the sloop during the night; supposed to have been stolen by the two deserters. Galiot sent to Robben Island to search.

9. (Sunday).—Fine weather

10.—Yacht returns, having found neither sloop nor men on the island. Loss of the sloop prevents all attempts at whale fishing. At night the two deserters Martensz: and Hendriksz: forced by hunger, return and are apprehended.

11.—Strong wind.

12.—Fine weather. Mr. Demmer and company come on shore.

13.—Wind South-West.

14.—Preliminary examination of the deserters.

15.—Deserters again examined.

16. (Sunday).—Morning fine—afternoon heavy South-Easter.

17.—Fine weather.

18.—Wind in the morning—fine in the afternoon.

19.—Meeting of the full Council. The cattle thieves most mercifully sentenced—three to fall from the yard arm, receive 100 lashes and be kept in irons for one year; two also to fall from the yard arm, receive 60 lashes and be kept to hard labour in chains for six months.

20.—Commander and officers enjoy themselves on shore.

21.—Sentence carried out.

22.—Hazy weather—Westerly breeze.

23.—Westerly wind.

24.—Wind not as strong as yesterday.

25.—Death of a soldier named Jan Gale.

26.—Arrival at midnight of the yacht *de Haes* with skipper Joris Janz: Somer, bringing later intelligence regarding the war. Had left the Texel on the 28th September last year, and touched at Sierra Leone, where it had left the ship *West Vrieslandt*, which would follow in 8 or 10 days. The latter had had mutiny on board. The chief mate and four others, who were the ringleaders, had been executed, as will appear from the record addressed to the Governor-General and Council of India and forwarded by the yacht. Heaven grant that the vessel may arrive safely, as 89 of the crew have already died. Council convened by Demmer. Resolved to refresh the yacht, and having unshipped its Cape cargo to send it on at once to Batavia—taking out of it for the fort 3 casks of meat, 2 casks of pork, 1 cask of butter, half a firkin of vinegar,  $6\frac{1}{2}$  aums of oil, 1 cask of Spanish wine, 2,000 lbs. bread and half a box of candles. The Commander was also ordered briefly to report to India on Cape matters and not unnecessarily to detain the yacht.

27.—Yacht beginning to discharge with the assistance of all the ships' boats.

28.—Discharge of yacht continued. Yacht receives the 709 staves of iron landed here by the galiot for Batavia.

29.—Wind West.

30 and 31.—Wind West.

N.B. —The weather carefully noted every day.

April 1.—Fine, beautiful sunshine.

2.—Misty, wet weather, cleared up at night. Death of the soldier Jan van Heusden.

3.—Council convened on board by Demmer. Resolved to detain the yacht *de Haes* till the departure of the return fleet, to send the latest intelligence to Batavia concerning the ships still expected. Some persons rewarded for their services provisionally performed.

4.—Heavy South-Easter.

5.—Calm weather—S.W. breeze.

1653.

—  
March.

April

1653.

—  
April.

6.—Soldier died named Andries de Belg. Rain, thunder and lightning during the night.

7.—Rainy weather.

8.—Sunshine, calm, S. W. breeze. Commander Demmer enjoys himself on shore with his staff.

9.—Council on board to receive the secret instructions, as the ships leave to-morrow. Letters read, and according to order, we gave a copy to each Commander for guidance on the voyage home. Resolved likewise that the ships shall await the arrival of the rest of the fleet until the 15th, and that the skipper of the yacht (Teunis Eyssen) shall take the place of chief mate on board the Admiral's ship *vice* the chief mate, deceased, and to appoint Gerrit Abels, the present mate of the yacht *de Vos*, as skipper of the same.

10.—The *Malacca*, *Princesse Royael* and *Walvis* took on board 4,105 seal skins for the Chamber Amsterdam.

11.—Wind and weather the same.

12.—Council meeting convened. Demmer asked, as the lagging ships may have passed by, whether it would not be advisable to pass St. Helena as near as possible to see whether they are not in the roads there, in order to communicate the secret instructions to them, lest they should fall into the hands of the English. Matter left in abeyance until Tuesday the 15th. Some offenders punished and disputes settled. Arrival at night of the yacht *de Winthondt* from Patria, with letters dated 21st October ult., with further particulars of the war.

13. (Sunday).—The *Winthondt* prevented by the S.E. from reaching the roadstead.

14. — Light S.E. breeze. The *Winthondt* anchors in the roads, and is immediately provided with water by all the boats, to be able to leave to-morrow with the fleet.

15. — The Commanders and officers of the fleet take leave and take our despatches for home. The *Haes* and *Winthondt* do the same for India.

16.—Wind unfavourable for departure of the ships.

17.—Before daylight the *Parel*, 't *Hoff van Zeelandt*, *Princesse Royael*, *Malacca* and *Walvis* leave for Holland, and the yachts do the same for Batavia. The other ships are not yet putting in an appearance, we fear that if they remain ignorant of the secret instructions they may fall into the hands of the English and we be left destitute of stores expected from Batavia; the more so as we are despairing of the arrival of the yacht *Muyden*, some days ago seen from shore, which ought to be here already, and by which we expected to receive provisions in case the other vessels did not touch.

18.—Arrival of the *Muyden* in the evening a little beyond the roads, under skipper Evert Teunis Harnay, having left the Texel the 26th December. Crew fairly well, only six or seven deaths. Received letters from Amsterdam about the war, and that the *Diamant* and *Lastdrager* had struck on the banks before the land of



Schouwe and become so leaky that they could not undertake the voyage. May the Almighty recompense the Company. Amen.

19.—Sent the *Muyden* a cow, some cabbages and carrots. Arrival of the *Oliphant* with the Hon. Frisius on board. Left Batavia with the *Provintie* and *Enckhuysen* on the 2nd February, and lost sight of the others in the Straits of Sunda. The two others expected every day, also an Englishman well laden, and some days ago seen here near the land. Hope it may touch, that we may seize it for the Company—which may the Almighty grant—to comfort it for the expenses incurred here. Received per *Oliphant* letters from India with invoices of goods sent from Batavia.

20. (Sunday),—Hon. Frisius and skipper land, bringing the letters left behind in consequence of the hurried departure of the first ships from the Straits of Sunda. Also a letter from the masters dated 20th April of last year, authorizing us to strengthen our garrison from the *Malacca*, *Princesse Royael*, *West Vrieslandt*, and *Zelandia*, with 25 military and the necessary provisions. Communicated to them the instructions received and the news of the war, and when they are on the point of leaving, the secret instructions will be delivered as regards the continuation of the voyage. We provided them to-day with a cow, beet, cabbage and carrots. Bartered 12 cows from another nation dwelling more inland, who had seen the copper of the Saldanhars and heard that there were Dutchmen here who had more; had therefore come to get some. They stated that there were others still further inland who would also come. This being so, abundance of cattle may be expected, and our supply of copper and tobacco run out. Sometimes a tusk is obtained for a small piece of tobacco and wire, hence we ought to be well supplied in order not to sit still, but to be able to treat the folks sometimes with a stomach full of rice, barley or peas, and wine or arrack. A little liberality in these things will attract them.

21.—Said natives returned with 16 fine cows. Copper seems to be used by them. The cattle is very welcome to provide these latest ships abundantly, for which the Lord be praised.

22.—The Commanders of the ships enjoy themselves on shore. Arrival of the *Provintie*. The *N. Enckhuysen* still expected. Sailing when seen last in the Straits of Sunda in company with the Englishman, neither of them knowing of the war. It would be desirable for them to arrive together, that we might find something in the English vessel to defray the Company's costs.

23.—Proposed to the Council to discharge from the *Muyden* for the fort 6,000 lbs. bread, but having no storage room for the same it was decided that the *Oliphant* and the *Provintie* should each take out of the *Muyden* 3,000 lbs. bread and send on shore three lasts of rice, which would be less liable to destruction, also half a last of beans, with which we hope to get on a long while. Each ship to receive a cow, with cabbages and carrots every day.

24.—Fine weather.

1653.

—  
April.

1653.  
—  
April.

25.—The *Muyden*, well supplied with refreshments, leaving some sick and weak behind, and having received the despatches, is instructed to proceed to Batavia. The *Oliphant* and *Provincie* to wait for the *Enckhuysen* until the 3rd May.

27.—Arrival of other strange natives from the interior. Bought 14 cows for copper, tobacco and pipes.

28.—Departure of the *Muyden*.

29.—Continuation of the S.-Easter until the night.

30.—Fine weather. Informed that a ship was entering the Bay.

N.B.—The wind and weather carefully noted each day.

May.

May 1.—Arrival of the *Enckhuysen*. Towed to the roads by all the boats. Had seen the Englishman last Monday under the land. Supposed that he had touched at Hout Bay behind Table Mountain. Sent the mate of the galiot and three soldiers overland to spy. Council held on board, and decided that the vessels shall be delayed until the 5th, and to assist the *Enckhuysen* with boats to take water on board, and with carpenters for repairs, to enable her to leave in company. Supplied all with cattle, cabbages and other greens.

2.—*Enckhuysen* busy discharging stores for the Cape.

3.—Fine weather.

4. (Sunday).—The Commanders take their leave and receive their secret instructions for the voyage home.

5.—Gillis Frederick Walvis, butler, and Symon Huybrechse, cadet, fight with knives. Are sentenced to receive some lashes. Walvis also to forfeit two and Symon one month's wages and pay expenses.

6.—Departure of the ships—the Almighty grant them a safe voyage home. Amen.

7.—Sentences as above carried out, likewise those punished who had been hiding on board. Three still missing, viz., Claes Jacobsz : Doer, Jan Verschuyr and Gerrit Jansz : from the Heerenveen. Would have been found if the officers had but searched diligently. Bartered five cows from a new people.

8.—Fine weather.

9.—Some new people arrive from the interior with 14 fine cows, which we bought, treating them when they left with a few glasses of arrack, which seems to draw them.

10.—Fine weather.

11.—Fine weather.

12 and 13.—The *Suarte Vos* to sail for Robben Island to-morrow to fetch shells for burning lime, as the season for catching seals is not yet favourable, the skins requiring dry weather. Hence begin in October.

14.—Departure of the galiot with two rams and four ewes for the Island, to see whether they will increase there, also some rock-rabbits brought from Dassen Island.

15.—South-Easter.

16, 17 and 18.—Fine weather.

19.—Grows boisterous—heavy westerly winds and rains.

20.—Weather the same, preventing the men from working at the fortifications.

21, 22 and 23.—Weather the same. Return of the galiot from Robben Island, full of shells for lime. No more ready at hand. Landed the six sheep, which had good pasture and kept well together.

24.—Nearly brought the east point of the fort (the Walvis) to the height required. Hope next week to take in hand the west point, already four feet high, and finish it before the end of June. In the meanwhile the land will be soaked for cutting sods, the climate having for some time been too dry to make said points strong and permanent with sods: as has been done with the whole fort, already satisfactorily protected.

25. (Sunday).—Fine weather.

26.—Fine weather. Hon. Riebeeck with some Hottentoots proceed to the forest behind Table Mountain, where the carpenters are busy cutting timber for the fire-proof magazine, to encourage said natives to bring the beams to the fort: for which purpose they were beforehand well supplied with food and drink and tobacco, so that they managed to carry (six of them) a fair sized beam to the fortress, whilst two other beams were brought on with a cart by the men. To encourage the natives they were again well fed, receiving also a glass of arrack and a span of tobacco. In the meanwhile appliances required for dragging the wagon, are to be prepared in the best manner possible in the forest.

27.—Eight men of the galiot are cutting firewood for the lime kilns, and the rest of the men are hard at work on the fortress to get it finished. Could not get the Hottentoots to do more work; they say they had been tired too much yesterday.

28.—Made the attempt with oxen. Reported that these animals had pulled well, and before dark carried eleven beams from the forest into the open.

29.—For a dish of beans and a glass of arrack we obtained five Hottentoots, but there was no work to be had out of them. More satisfactory to labour with our own people.

30.—The men brought in three fine beams on the wagon, drawn by three oxen.

31.—Sent the men in two parties to gather shells on the shore. Also others to the forests for beams, and some with picks, spades, &c., to level the road for the wagon.

N.B.—Careful description of wind and weather every day.

June 1.—Wet, westerly weather.

2.—Wet, westerly weather. Arrival of the long-expected *Roode Vos*, which left the Texel on the 19th September, touched at St. Jago on the 26th October for supplies, and left again on 1st Nov. Death of the skipper Joris Meyndertz: den Ham, between the 24th and 25 Nov., and the chief mate Cornelius Jacobsz: Berckhoudt, on the 18th Dec.; Elbert Cornelisz: second mate, in charge,

1653

—  
May.

June.



1653.  
—  
June. having as his mate the boatswain Cryn Jansz: Zwart. Skipper reports that by variations of the compass he had for  $3\frac{1}{2}$  months been wandering about near the Cape, and 12 days ago found that about 70 miles north of the Cape he had fallen too much to leeward. His people looked much worn and some very sick. Sent on board at once a quarter of an ox with some Dutch beet and cabbage (plentiful in the garden), and received the letters from Amsterdam, duplicates of those sent by the *Zwarte Vos* and the yacht *de Haes*.

3.—Council convened, which resolved that though the Commanders in Persia and Surat might have received the news of the war in one way or another, even perhaps from Batavia, nevertheless to despatch the *Zwarte Vos* with the news to Gombroon or Surat. It was also considered whether on the way both galiots might not examine the places whence those of Mozambique draw their gold, but as the skippers and mates believed that the voyage to Persia would by doing so be retarded, the subject was left in abeyance until receipt of orders from home.

4.—The galiot *Roode Vos* supplied with water and fuel.

5.—The *Zwarte Vos* to be despatched on the 9th. Elbert Cornelisz: Kes promoted to the office of skipper absolutely, with a salary of 50 guildens per month, and Cryn Jansz: Zwart to that of chief mate. (See resolution on the subject.) Both skippers being equally anxious to leave the Cape, lots were drawn by them, so that the provisional skipper of the *Zwarte Vos* was selected to proceed to Persia. The mate of the *Zwarte Vos*, as well acquainted with the coast, exchanges into the *Roode Vos*, so that both vessels remain manned by experienced men.

6.—Skipper Gerrit Abelse is permanently appointed as such with 50 guildens salary per month, for which he is to serve his time to the Company. Death of the sailor Cornelius Claesz: of Haerlem, from dysentery. Cases are happening daily as last year about this time. The hospital is quite full, absorbing much wine and fresh meat. This man knew how to catch many partridges every day, there being numbers of them, so that we lose much in him.

7.—Fine, sunshine, &c.

8. (Sunday).—Dirty, wet weather.

9.—Dry weather. Despatched the *Zwarte Vos* with the instructions to Persia or Surat.

10.—During the last 5 and 6 days we obtained 19 sheep, and to-day bartered 11 cows and 2 sheep for copper, tobacco and pipes.

11.—Obtain every day two or three beams from the forest on a cart with two wheels drawn by oxen, and going nicely and easily. It takes a daily trip with two oxen, eight being kept for the purpose to relieve one another. Seven or eight sick in hospital during the last three or four days. It seems to be somewhat unhealthy at this time of the year, especially for the new comers, many being attacked by dysentery and severe fever.

12.—Took a walk to the forest, where the wood is being prepared. The carpenters are to remain at home the day after to-morrow to prepare the woodwork for the store.

13.—Since the day before yesterday five or six persons more have been attacked with dysentery and fever, which are spreading rapidly.

14.—Heavy S. Easter.

15.—Fine weather.

16.—Fine weather. Bought three cows.

17.—Western breeze, cloudy sky.

18.—Misty, calm weather.

19.—Boisterous, stormy weather; heavy rain.

20.—A little better.

21.—A little better.

22, 23 and 24.—A little better.

25.—Boisterous, wet weather. During the last few days some five or six persons have fallen ill. Hospital remains full.

26.—Calm, cold weather.

27 and 28.—Fine, calm, sunshine.

29 and 30.—The bay is every day full of whales, and with proper casks to keep the oil we might with the sloop and the small boat of the galiot attempt to catch one, as the weather is very favourable, but if we caught any we would not know what to do with it, as there are no casks for the oil, having nothing better than cement and lime to make stone receptacles underground. This would also be required for the seal oil.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted every day.

July 1.—Dark, misty, cold weather.

2.—About the same and rainy. Many whales in the bay.

3, 4 and 5.—The same. Being well provisioned we promised the men some extra tobacco and arrack if they would make a kraal for the cattle below the fort sufficiently protected to require only the watch of the ordinary herds, and to convert the old kraal into a garden, it being already well surrounded with ditches full of water; and to add to it another adjoining fertile piece of ground well suited for turnips, sweet potatoes, &c., because of its sandy nature. The above vegetables do not thrive so well in the old garden, which is better suited for cabbages and carrots. The water from the old garden will be easily led into the canals of the new one. All this work vigorously carried on. Yesterday the last earth was carried to the point of the Oliphant, so that the whole fort and its surroundings have been raised to the required height, excepting the two points, Walvis and Oliphant, which must be covered in with sods to prevent the rain from damaging them. This may be done within a few days. After that the squares inside and the ground below outside of the rampart between it and the fosse, at present hilly and not at all level, are to be levelled. In the meantime wood is being daily cut for the kilns and for preparing the fire-proof room with the beams obtained from the

1653.

—  
June.

July.

1653.  
—  
July.

forest. The masonry will be commenced on Monday, and the stone conveyed with the wagon made from forest wood and drawn by oxen, distant about 60 roods from the fort, where it is easily taken from the ground with an iron crow, and is in sufficient quantity to complete the walls of the magazine. The work to be paid for to the masons with a jolly holiday when completed, in five weeks' time. After that the battery will be commenced, to have everything ready when the return fleet arrives. Hence also our hurry to have the gardens ready for the seeds expected from home, which if coming in time may have their produce ready for the fleet. Hope that a good supply of cattle will also be forthcoming. The supply at present for the outward bound ships is 80 cows and 130 sheep, from which we obtain every week about two lbs. clear butter. Many sheep are with young and bring forth daily. Also on hand cabbage, beet, radish and many other vegetables as a rule abundant in the garden. The cabbage lettuce is commencing, and the ships would find a good supply. Pigs, pigeons and fowls breed better than last year. The geese and ducks obtained from the return fleet promise fairly. Trust also to prepare in the garden (having found a well-sheltered spot) before next week some land for corn, barley, peas and beans, to see whether they will thrive there, as the strong winds will not affect them so much behind the high sand hills. Trade with the natives is at present at a standstill in consequence of the wet, cold weather. Hope for a promising future. May the Almighty grant His blessing on all these matters. Amen.

6. (Sunday) and 7.—Dirty, wet, windy weather.

8.—The same, with sunshine; S.E. in the afternoon.

9.—Fine and calm. Very busy completing the point Oliphant with sods. Bay full of whales.

10.—Sowed in the gardens some wheat, barley, oats, peas, beans and cadjangh, to try whether they will succeed better in those sheltered spots.

11.—Skipper of the galiot and bookkeeper Verburgh proceed with the sloop behind Table Mountain to examine and sound the bay there, called by us in consequence of its forests "Hout Bay." Also to find out whether it would be a sheltered harbour for the galiot and other vessels, and wood for building purposes might not be more easily obtained thence per galiot.

12.—Skipper and bookkeeper return overland, leaving orders that the sloop should be brought round when the weather is favourable. Report that said bay, though not large, was well sheltered, having anchorage depth of  $4\frac{1}{2}$ , two and three fathoms. Fine sandy ground and better than in Table Bay, as may be more clearly seen from the sketch made by the skipper.

13. (Sunday).—Sent mate of galiot and three others overland to said bay with provisions for the men of the sloop, whom they met half-way; pursued their course, found the sloop drawn on land and shoved it off to come round to-morrow.



14.—Arrival of the sloop. *Roo de Vos* despatched to Robben Island for shells.

15.—Wind S. West during the night with such extraordinarily heavy hail and rains, which came so vehemently over the Lion's Head that everything seemed in danger of blowing away.

16.—Wind S. West. Works delayed. Tents in which the sheep were sheltered during the night completely blown away, also the gardener's house outside the fort, which was still unroofed. The galiot had enough to do to hold on.

17.—Quiet weather.

18.—Galiot not able as yet to leave.

19.—Warm by day and cold at night.

20 (Sunday), 21 and 22.—Westerly breeze.

23.—Galiot still detained. Men ordered on shore to break stones for the masons, for the magazines or storehouses.

24.—Works still stopped by the weather and sickness in consequence of it. We have hardly 40 men continually employed. Fortifications fortunately nearly finished.

25.—Fine, warm weather. Wind West. Galiot consequently unable to go to the Island. Consulted with the skipper and mate that, as time is rapidly passing without obtaining any service from the galiot and men, and having found enough shells along shore to last for some time, it would be advisable to send the galiot to Hout Bay, as the seal season was approaching, and find out in what manner the wood and fuel might best be brought from that place. Resolved not to proceed with the yacht to the Island but to send the galiot to Hout Bay, which shall inform us of its arrival there overland, that we also may proceed thither to inspect everything with the officers of the galiot. And, not to make a useless voyage, the vessel shall on its return be filled with fuel, which is very abundant near the shore. This alone would be profitable, whilst the galiot would be well sheltered and could do the distance in four or five hours.

26.—Same weather—heavy rains at night.

27 (Sunday).—Same weather. Galiot leaves with a South-Easter, and outside of the bay has a fine westerly breeze to take it this evening into Hout Bay.

28.—Two sailors of the galiot arrived at night overland from Hout Bay with news of its safe arrival, it being anchored out of sight from the sea side. Will go to-morrow myself.

29.—Riebeeck leaves for Hout Bay with 12 armed soldiers, gets a heavy shower on the way, and arrives thoroughly drenched at night on board the galiot. Inspected the forest  $1\frac{1}{2}$  mile from the beach, but the road is so stony, hilly, mountainous, and swampy, that it will be impossible to get the wood to the beach. They were the finest forests in the world, and contained as long and thick spars as one could wish to have. It is possible, however, that about half-an-hour further from the fort than where the wood is now obtained behind the Table Valley, there may be better facilities to

1653.

July.

obtain serviceable timber. Will investigate this when we are at home again. It is surprising to see the fine forests which are scattered all about the mountain sides; pity it is though that there are no serviceable roads to them, the grounds being so hilly. Found also everywhere the finest level pastures in the world, very fit for planting and cultivating, full of game, harts, hinds, rheebucks, steenbucks, elands, wild ducks, geese, partridges, pheasants, and all sorts of finches, snipes, and small game, but all so wild that it is almost impossible to catch them. Observed also rock-rabbits and hares on the mountains, and in large numbers, but they knew how to hide themselves so well in the deep crevices of the rocks that they remained beyond reach.

30.—Riebeeck and the skipper again landed, found good fuel near the galiot's anchorage, and returned along the coast homeward, skirting the mountain sides, so that to-day we have not only walked round Table Mountain but all the mountains lying around and behind the same. Found the side facing the sea very rugged and rocky, and outside, at some distance from the land, many hidden and also visible rocks rising somewhat above the surface of the water, over which latter the sea rushed in a horrible manner, making the few sandy creeks here and there dangerous landing places for those forced by necessity to look for a bay.

31.—Rain and S. Easter.

N.B.—The wind and weather carefully noted every day.

August.

August 1.—Went out to the forest about two miles distant from the fort behind the Table Mountain, and found it well stocked with all kinds of fine, tall, thick trees, certainly as large and full of timber as the large and small forests outside of Haerlem, also fairly easy for conveyance, without the impediments of stones, rivers, or swamps, so that henceforth all kinds of timber, big, small, thick, thin, short and long as required, also for planks, if we only had saws, would be obtainable.

2.—Went to see whether there were more convenient places for obtaining timber, but found no better. Resolved to send the carpenters to the spot described to make a road to it the day after to-morrow.

3. (Sunday).—Fine, sunshine.

4.—Sent Verburgh and 13 men to the forest to make a good road for the wagon. Heavy rain and hail storms, threatening to blow down everything.

5.—Same weather, hail and driftsnow from W. S. West. Two good-sized beams for the fire-proof room brought from the forest, the men having marked off the direction of the road. Arrival of the *Salamander*, which had left the Texel on the 10th April with the *Phoenix* and *Coninck Davidt*. It had touched nowhere, and had some sick and scurvy patients on board. Sent at once a cow and some cabbages on board. Refreshments at this season are most opportune for the ships, the land everywhere being covered, independent of our garden supplies, with wild sorrel, mustard

leaves, &c. If we had been supplied with seeds from home, we would not have known what to do with the garden produce. Received no letters from the Masters, only verbal news regarding our war with the new Government of England, &c.

6.—Fine weather. The skipper of the *Rode Vos* reports that two days ago he had sent the mate overland to inspect the Bay Falso, who on his return had left the gunner behind who had been benumbed with cold, and as he thought had died. Ordered that he should be searched for.

7.—Officers of the *Salamander* busy unloading stores for the Cape and taking in water.

8.—Went to Hout Bay with skipper of *Salamander* to examine it again. Skipper thinks that it is capable of harbouring four or five return ships.

9.—Returned home. Ordered the galiot to return to Table Bay as its cargo of fuel was complete.

10. (Sunday).—Good weather.

11.—Rainy, and N.W. breeze. Return of the galiot.

12.—Same weather. Released from irons Jan Blanx, Willem Huytjens, Gerrit Dirksz : Jan Soenwater and Pieter Martensz : especially because they had worked diligently at the works. Their wages will consequently commence again from to-day.

13.—South-Easter. *Salamander* trying its best to get away. Wind changed to W. However gave all papers and letters to the officers for transmission to India.

14.—*Salamander* still detained.

15.—*Salamander* gets out of the bay.

16.—Arrival of the *Phoenix* with scurvy patients. Every day it is to be supplied with an ox, cabbages and other greens from the garden. Received no letters.

17, (Sunday). — Officers come on shore and give us some Dutch news.

18.—Sour, cold, windy weather from N.W., so violently increasing during the day that everything seemed in danger of destruction. *Phoenix* parted with one cable.

19.—Weather calmed down.

20. — Child of the sick comforter, born last year, was baptized, and the Holy Supper celebrated by the Minister Fredericus Fronten, who had arrived with the *Phoenix*. The rite was performed to-day, in order not to detain the vessel till Sunday.

21 and 22.—During the last three or four nights five or six sheep have been taken by wild animals from the tents within the kraal whilst the men were asleep. Last night our geese and ducks were likewise taken from their hutches and devoured, by which we lose much, as they had commenced to breed famously, some of them sitting on eggs. If we obtain others we will secure them within good strong and high enclosures.

23. — Officers of the *Phoenix* take leave and our papers for India with them.



1653.

August.

24. (Sunday).—*Phœnix* attempts to leave, but only succeeds on the

25th.—When the *Roode Vos* also starts for Robben Island for shells.

26.—Weather too unfavourable for work.

27.—Saw a ship at anchor under Robben Island. South-Easter.

28.—Ship still there.

29.—Ship proves to be the flute *Coninck Davidt*, which had heard from a pirate on the coast of Brazil that the *West Vrieslandt* was lying at Recife, Pernambuco, and that no good discipline was maintained on her. The men of the flute were suffering from scurvy, and at once were supplied with a cow and greens, cabbages, salad, &c.

30.—Dirty weather. Saw at night a ship before the bay.

31. (Sunday).—Said ship not seen again. Do not know who she is.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted.

September.

September 1.—Fine weather.

2 and 3.—Bartered some cows and two calves from the Saldanhars, who said that they were encamped about four or five miles away, and would soon return with numbers of cattle and elephant tusks. Treated well.

4.—Same weather.

5. — Officers of the flute bid good-bye and take our papers for India.

6.—Flute not able to get away.

7. (Sunday).—Flute left during the night.

8.—Weather cold and miserable. Very little work done.

9, 10 and 11 —Death of a boy Jan Aerts: van Jaersveld.

12.—Weather as before, changes at night.

13.—Hard at work in the gardens with all hands, to be well supplied with refreshments for the fleet. Enough in the old garden for the outward bound. The salad is distributed every week among the men, besides what has been given abundantly to the ships. They are the finest heads in the world, weighing one with the other 1 or 1½ lbs. the head, reared from seed won here last year.

14. (Sunday).—Return of the galiot with shells.

15.—Shells being landed. Skipper reports that the six sheep on the Island had increased to nine, and they had found one dead. Had also seen the rock-rabbits there. Trust that the Island will in course of time become a good pasturage.

16.—Wind and weather as yesterday.

17.—Fine, sunshine.

18 and 19.—Commenced to pack the fuel for the kiln, which with this crooked Cape wood is not quite so easy to do.

20.—Fine weather.

21. (Sunday).—Drizzling rain, opportune for the carrots; turnips and cabbages sown this week in the new and old gardens.

22.—Bleak weather.

23.—Warm. Evening S.E. wind.

24.—Calm, warm, sunshine.

25.—Calm, warm, sunshine.

26.—Cloudy, with drizzling rain.

27.—Many whales daily in the bay. Busy with sowing and planting, the best time for which is now at hand.

28. (Sunday).—Fair weather, with rain.

29 and 30.—Fair weather, with rain.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted.

October 1.—Resolved by Council that as the rainy weather continues and no seals can be profitably killed at present, to send the yacht once more to Saldanha Bay to find out plainly whether the Saldanhars are there and barter with them if practicable, also to catch and salt there as much fish as possible. All which will appear more fully from the Resolution taken and the orders to the Commanders. Set fire to the kiln, nine fathoms in circumference. Fairly successful in spite of the heavy wind.

2.—Arrival of Saldanhars with ostrich eggs, and the information that their fellows were coming on with huts and cattle. Heavy S.-Easter prevents the yacht from leaving.

3.—Whilst busy dispatching the yacht to Saldanha Bay, Herry comes to inform us that two Saldanhars had arrived with the news that a large ship had arrived in that bay, bartering sheep and killing seals on the islets for food. Half inclined to think that it may be the *West Vrieslandt*. Sent the galiot with the junior merchant Jacob Reyniersz: with six strong soldiers, besides the crew, to discover what ship it might be, and further decided in Council what was to be done in the best interests of the Company. The galiot was ordered that if it was the *West Vrieslandt*, to try and get it here in order to restore good order on board, by unshipping some of the ringleaders and manning the vessel with more obedient men, that the ship may be dispatched and safely arrive at Batavia. Last night a person having been locked out and climbed over the wall in sight of the sentry, it was found that both were very stupid, having never before been in service and not knowing what such things meant; consequently decided to give each a few lashes and publish a warning.

4.—Twelve or thirteen sailors go out fishing, but return at night with the sad news that one of them, Jurian Wilken, had been drowned whilst standing on land endeavouring to catch the rope of the sloop with which to drag that boat into the river, being above his knees in the water. He was dragged down by the undercurrent alongside of two other persons standing not quite so far in, who with difficulty regained the shore. The following is their declaration:—"Having obtained permission to go out fishing, some of us walked along shore and the others went in the sloop to Salt River. Having arrived at its mouth, the current was so strong that the boat could make no headway; the gunner then

1653

September.

October.

1653.  
—  
October.

said : ' Let us throw the painter to the men on shore, to draw us in.' This was done. Jan Gabrielsz : and Gerrit Harmensz : ran in to seize the rope, but were checked by the quicksands and the strength of the current from going in far enough. Jurian Wilken then came, saying that he could swim, and passing the other two to within a handbreath above his knees, seized the rope, but before he could return the stream had thrown him over. He only lifted his arms and with a cry disappeared, whilst the other two, about a yard behind him and not up to their knees in water, had enough to do to regain the shore. Deponents further declared that the quicksand was so bad that though hardly up to their knees in the water they could barely keep their legs. In spite of the exertions of the men in the boat and those on shore Jurian Wilken could not be found." Here follow the marks and signatures of the men. Declaration read over to them and confirmed by oath.

5. (Sunday).—Dry, South-East weather.

6.—The same, South-West.

7.—Fine.

8 and 9.—Some Saldanhars report that their friends would be here in four or five days' time to trade, for which news they requested some tobacco and a glass of arrack. Kindly treated.

10.—Bartered 17 sheep each at 3 (?) stivers value in wine and tobacco.

11.—Two Saldanhars report that our galiot had arrived at Saldanha Bay, and was on friendly terms with the ship—the former's crew fishing and that of the latter killing seals and drying the skins. For this news they received tobacco, a glass of arrack, and food. Requested them to take a letter to the galiot, but in spite of our tempting reward, they refused, stating that the country was too unsafe because of the wild beasts. The carpenter returned from the forest with a young civet cat, which had been shot near the tent, it having been observed that many daily came to eat up the men's meat and pork if they could only get hold of the same. Arrival at night of two soldiers sent by Reyniersz : who with eight had left Saldanha Bay on Wednesday morning, but got rheumatism in the knee some eight miles from this, and had sent the soldiers for a horse. Sent one at once with three men. Also sent food and wine, which were required badly. Soldiers report that the ship was a Frenchman with 12 guns and 35 or 40 men, who had all been enlisted for the voyage, some for 20, 30, 40, 100, or 200 guildens. They were very busy catching and flaying seals and boiling down the blubber. They had already spent six months on the work, had collected about 4,800 skins, had some oil in readiness, and would leave in 8 or 10 days' time. Many of the men had already drawn and spent their pay, and hinted that they would be glad to be away from the ship, as they must find their own food, and kill penguins for the purpose, also that seals' flesh was their daily food. Whilst at supper some shots were heard fired by the party of Reyniersz : who had arrived. His leg had become



well again, and he had done the journey on foot. Reported likewise that the Frenchman had been there for six months to catch seals, with 40 men and 12 guns, intending to return to la Rochelle on the 25th inst., and offering to take letters for us *viâ* Rotterdam, where he had his partners, as will appear from Reyniersz: journal as follows:—

Friday, 3rd October, 1653.—Left for Saldanha Bay, and passed Robben Island during the night.

4.—At break of day we were between Dassen Island and the continent. Resolved as follows in Council:—As the ship may be either a friend or foe, and we are approaching the bay, to send Verburgh and six sailors to reconnoitre. If a friend, to fire three shots, if an enemy one shot. Anchored before the bay in the afternoon, and by means of a far-seeing pair of spectacles guessed it to be a Frenchman. The wind too heavy to send Verburgh away. In the evening a boat approached, and we prepared ourselves for an emergency. It rowed towards our bows and asked whence we came. We told them from Amsterdam, and invited them on board. They had been at Saldanha Bay and Dassen Island six months, and had already cured 38 or 39,000 seal skins.

*Narrative of the French Captain as communicated to Verburgh.*

Had been on shore at Saldanha Bay and Dassen Island for six months, ship in charge of two men and a boy, he himself passing to and from the ship to the shore. The natives had often hailed the ship, having with them a lot of cattle, but as the three hands were not allowed to leave the vessel, they had left some eight days ago, but he was uncertain whether they had returned to the point of St. Helena Bay or not, where he had first lain with the ship and seen and conversed with thousands of Saldanhars having numerous cattle. Could hardly trade with them, however, as he had but bad glass beads and no copper or tobacco. Also saw some Saldanhars on a point stretching far into the sea and killing seals for food, which were very numerous there. Told me, Verburgh, that his outfit for the voyage cost 7,000 guildens, and that his partners were Nicolaus du Val, merchant, of Rotterdam, and his brother, Jacques du Val, living at Dieppe, each for a quarter of the amount. That the brothers had no share in the ship, for which they had to pay hire, the owners being the Governor of Ilia de Fortouve of one-half, he himself of one-sixth, and some others on board of the rest. Hopes to retire if he reaches home safely, as he trusts that so much will remain over that he will be able to rest. The last voyage was made two years ago, and Messrs. Schuyt and Van den Helm were his insurers, each for 3,000 guildens, whilst the beforementioned brothers were his owners. He had sailed from Dieppe to Mauritius, where the Hollanders, he said, had made their fort square. Had advised them to add four points, which could be done easily, as he showed with a piece of chalk on a box, and which would be a more-

1653.  
—  
October.

1653.  
—  
October. effective defence. Wished to cut some ebony there, but the Commander would not allow him. Had then left and touched at the Carribbean and other Islands, where he bartered many things, as indigo, sugar, and tobacco. So that he left for home with a rich cargo, passing by the back of England and arriving in Scotland. Had spoken with our return fleet. Intends to leave at the end of the month, in the name of the Lord, with a cargo of 48,000 seal skins and some oil, which he is still busy melting, which cargo he intends to sell in France. The skins are used for belts and the fringes of gloves, the wool for hats, as it consists of the finest silver hair and (the leather ?) is equal to Spanish for boots, and a hundred other things. Besides the value of the skins would be 15 or 20 stivers each, which we can hardly believe, as no profit would be made in that case, considering the heavy expense. The ship intends to return next year or perhaps sooner, from which it may be gathered that great profits are made. The Biscayan sloop driven out of this bay last March by a heavy wind, the Frenchman had on board, and told me of it as soon as I arrived. Complained that two years ago he arrived at Texel with the return fleet, and had sent his boat to a Greenland trader to lift his anchor, who had lost it from behind his vessel, but had given him in compensation this Biscayan sloop. Told him that about six months ago said sloop had been drifted out of Table Bay with a strong S. Easter, that it was the same boat, and we would gladly compensate him if he returned it. Declared that he had not seen our boat, and if he could do without the sloop he would gladly let us have it, as much kindness had been shown him by the Hollanders.

7.—Resolved in Council that I should proceed home with the soldiers to inform you of everything, and inquire whether you are inclined to send letters by the Frenchman, who intends (D.V.) to leave for La Rochelle on the 25th Oct. and to leave the galiot, for fishing, behind, the wind also being unfavourable.

*Riebeeck's Journal, continued.*

Reyniersz having returned and reported everything, also that many of the Frenchman's crew were disinclined to return to France with the ship, because having nothing to eat but penguins and seal blubber and whatever else they might catch, and consequently begged our men to be taken into the Company's service, with the offer of telling us all the ways of curing the skins and doing their duty well, it was decided this evening in Council to order the officers of the galiot to accept all who offered their services, and besides tempt as many more as could be secured, in order to bring the Frenchman into trouble, and so prevent his return home, and deprive his employers of all desire henceforth of returning, and by means of his crew obtain full particulars concerning the catching and curing the skins of the seals, &c.

12. (Sunday).—Busy preparing our despatches to be sent with the Frenchman *viâ* La Rochelle.



1653.  
—  
October.

13.—Forwarded the despatches overland to Saldanha Bay with a corporal and three soldiers, and with a letter to the officers of the galiot to hand the letter over to the Frenchman, and further to act in accordance with the contents of our letter.

14.—Fine weather.

15.—Fine rainy weather, favourable for vegetation, and opportune for the gardens, which are improving every day. At night heavy S. Easter.

16.—Hot, calm weather.

17 and 18.—Mrs. Van Riebeeck gives birth to a son, the second born in the Fort. Bartered eight sheep from the Saldanhars, who were treated with arrack and tobacco.

19. (Sunday).—After service we heard that the interpreter Herry had, during service, absconded with house and family. Do not know what it means. Had shown no signs of his intentions before church. Had only said yesterday that he intended visiting the Saldanhars, as he had done last year. At dinner we were told that all the cattle were also gone, and that the herd who was in charge of them, with the boatman, Hendrick Wilders, had been murdered near the Lion's Rump, whilst the said Wilders was away to fetch their food. The cattle had been driven away, which an hour previously had been seen by the sentry in good pasturage, where they were generally left during dinner time in charge of the boy. Sent a mounted party in search behind the Lion Mountain, and two corporals with 15 or 16 soldiers over the kloof to meet beyond. After prayers at night the sergeant returned stating that the cattle had been driven behind Table Mountain along shore over rocks and stones, and that the corporals and the men were still in pursuit, but could not proceed with the horses. Having been informed that the Hottentots had gone with our cattle (42 in number) to the Hout Bay, we sent four men to the forest to inform the six men there of the theft and take them along with them, in order to circumvent the thieves. At night it commenced to rain and blow heavily, so that the men on the road will have a bad time of it.

20.—Cold, bleak weather. A corporal and five men return *via* the Kloof, sent by their comrade Jan van Harwarden, who would with 12 men follow the thieves as far as the Hout Bay, but requested to be provided with food, which was sent at once with ten armed men, so that if they meet there will be 33 quite capable of coping with 2 or 300 Hottentots. Return of Jan van Harwarden at night, with all the men, stating that the thieves had succeeded in driving the cattle beyond the point of Hout Bay towards Cape Falso. Having no provisions they were obliged to return, not having eaten since yesterday afternoon, and being dead tired and weak. Had missed the men sent with the provisions, otherwise they would have proceeded. In short we have lost the pantaloons—being unbreeched—most unexpectedly, and this by means of the Beach-rangers or Watermen, who have always



1653.

October.

been protected and kindly treated by us, receiving for their clothing all the skins of the cattle, &c. Besides we have been cruelly deceived in our interpreter Herry, whom we had always maintained as the chief of the lot, who had always dined at our table as a friend of the house and been dressed in Dutch clothes; besides also that from every fresh arrival he was provided with bags of bread, rice, wine, &c., by way of remunerating him for his services as interpreter. But this difficulty will be overcome if the Saldanhars are not frightened away by this theft of the beach-rangers from coming to us, thinking that we might revenge ourselves on them. Do not hope so. The milch cows are to be regretted, especially as we had much milk, butter and cheese, as in the Fatherland—all gone at once. Likewise the use of the draught oxen for fetching wood, stones, &c., to say nothing of the manure. With God in the van however, we trust to get other cattle from the Saldanhars, from whom the day before yesterday we obtained eight sheep, and who after being kindly treated left, promising to bring cattle very soon—we having at present only 60 sheep, one cow one ox, and four young calves. The rest were stolen whilst we were listening to the sermon.

21.—Council decided, notwithstanding the theft, and though the men were very bitter in consequence, that no harm should be done to the natives, even if the thieves, yea Herry himself, were encountered, not only to show that we only wish to be on friendly terms, but also desire to forgive and forget, in order to remove all fear from the Saldanhars and draw them into close intercourse with us, as the season for trading is now near at hand. Consequently a placcaat was issued that the men should not be carried away by anger to take vengeance on the natives, but to avoid it as much as possible. The men were properly distributed for duty, that in cases of emergency every one should know his station and work. The guards were likewise doubled. Discovered from this theft that these natives are not to be trusted and that prudence is necessary. Died from cold during the night our only ox, one calf and a sheep, having had no shelter. Much cattle dying from want of shelter and by wild animals.

22.—Sent men to the forest to prepare the wood for the gate and other works—wagon to be drawn by the two horses obtained from Batavia. Two sheep died—seemed to be poisoned. Not a day or night passes without sheep dying.

23.—Sent a corporal and two men, with hidden arms for defence, to meet two natives seen at a distance and if possible attract them with tobacco and good treatment, so that not only they, but the Saldanhars might be tempted to trade with us again, notwithstanding the murder committed and the theft of the cattle, and to make them feel that we wish to do them no harm, but to remain as friendly as ever, fully convinced that it was only a number of thieves and Beach-rangers who had done the mischief. For the rest they were to act in the best interests of the Company.

1653.  
—  
October.

Corporal returns in the afternoon and reports that he could not find the natives, though they had pretended to collect flowers and herbs. Wagon returns at night with a beam and two corbels. Had met seven natives armed with assegais, but no communication had been held with them. Three musketeers hastily arrive, reporting that five or six Saldanhars had visited them in the forest, and among them a captain from whom last year we had obtained much cattle, and who had once brought back to us a lost ox, and who told them that Herry was squatting with our stolen cattle at the Bay Falso and had requested the Saldanhars to live with them; but aware that he had stolen the cattle, they would have nothing to do with him, but would show us where he was, that we might regain our own with some men and fire-arms. Recognizing the captain, and knowing that his people possessed thousands of cattle and sheep and would think little of such a small number (as was stolen), also being aware that they had no great affection for Herry and his confreres, and would prefer to trade without, rather than with him, and that this captain, leaving his arms behind, had kindly come to tell us where Herry was, offering his services as guide, and for which purpose our men would expect him at the entrance of the forest this night, we decided by special resolution to send this evening, well armed and provisioned for five or six days, the Corporal Jan van Harwarden, a man of good discipline and energy, with 16 of the nimblest soldiers, who had volunteered to sleep in the forest this night, and before daylight to-morrow to start thence with the Saldanhars.

24.—Fine weather for the picquet. Planted water-melon and cucumber seeds in the new garden. The fine herbs sown this and last month destroyed by worms in the ground, even young cabbages, carrots, turnips, radishes, &c. Time will show whether this is an annual nuisance.

25.—After the closing of the gate three of our men returned with one cow, reporting that already yesterday they had observed the cattle and the location of Herry, consisting of four huts, near the point of Cape Falso, but as they had look-outs everywhere, they had left before our people had arrived, leaving their huts and some useless household utensils behind. Had followed them the whole day, and were still pursuing them, determined to come up with them. The cow having been left behind because she was tired, the corporal had sent her home with the request that they might have more provisions.

26. (Sunday).—Sent the food, and orders that as the Saldanhars were afraid of joining us in the pursuit of Herry, not to follow the cattle further, and not having been successful, to return to the fort and give up the pursuit, as it would be impossible to provide them continually with food. Arrival of another cow from behind Lion Mountain—of its own accord.

27.—Jan van Harwarden returns and reports that he had missed the five men sent yesterday with food. Had followed Herry



1653.  
—  
October.

persistently and for a long time, but could not catch him as he continually crossed the downs of Bay Falso, which were high, and where there was not always water, the men consequently suffering severe thirst and fatigue. Had been so near them once that one of Herry's people was within range. Tried to catch him alive to make a guide of him, but before we could lay hold of him he had made his escape through some swampy ground and bushes. Herry kept to the downs, and avoided the flats and the beach, and also the places which the Saldanhars ordinarily visit, a proof that he is as afraid of them as of us. Will find this out for certain when the Saldanhars arrive, so as to persuade them by some presents to deliver to us Herry and his people or join us in following them up, &c.

28.—Return of the provision bearers. Had not met the others. Been on the spoor, but had not been able to come up with Herry or any of his people.

29 —Corporal Willem Muller returns from Saldanha Bay with a letter from the officers of the galiot as follows:—

"22nd Oct., 1653. Received letter and despatches by Willem Muller, which latter we at once placed in the hands of the French Captain, who after having received your (Riebeeck's) greeting gladly took them and promised to deliver them in proper order. Up to date we obtained only four of his crew. One of them had been for a long while at Madagascar, where he had gained some knowledge of the country and the language, and likewise has some knowledge of curing skins. He said that others on board would also like to leave, and who were well experienced, having been longer in the work; but that the French Captain was getting suspicious (trusting us as little as we do him), as he had already lost four men, and would not consequently send his men on shore for wood or water as long as the galiot was lying here, being well aware that they, like the others, would desert. But not to detain the corporal and men any longer, having taken on board many shells and caught much fish, we have sent them back to you with the order that as we leave to-morrow, they should, three or four days later, be at the watering place, where the Frenchman's sloop will land, to see and secure as many of the men as possible, and for that purpose to be plentifully provided with provisions. And as only a few Beach-rangers have made their appearance, from whom we obtained five or six ostrich egg-shells and a small rheeback, we will leave to-morrow and touch at the Dassen Island, to obtain as many rock-rabbits and eggs as we can get. We pray to God that He may safely deliver your wife, that we may help to eat the 'kandeel.' We are bringing the eggs with us, and recommend ourselves to your kindness."

The corporal also reported that about a day's journey from this he had met a troop of Saldanhars, the first who had last year visited the fort, who were kindly treated with tobacco, arrack and



bread, and that one of them was going with his party to show him the road to Saldanha Bay. Had been three-and-a-half days going but only three days in returning—may henceforth therefore take less time. Had met many elephants, rhinoceroses, elands, harts, hinds, and other game, once a troop of seven and again one of eight elephants, of which we were rather afraid, having to get out of their way. The Frenchman was still in the bay on the 26th, busy scraping his ship and boiling oil on the islets. He is very suspicious about us and afraid that his men will desert; and therefore always so prudent that he never sends the boat for water without a guard of his most faithful men armed with muskets, to prevent desertion. By these precautions he frustrated the object of our men, who were lying in wait, and being only provisioned for eight days had to return with the news mentioned above, that only four men had been obtained who will be very serviceable to the Company.

1653.  
—  
October.

30.—Heavy South-Easter—abating towards noon.

31.—Warm and calm, sunshine.

N.B.—Wind and weather each day carefully described.

November 1.—Weather warm and calm, sunshine.

November.

2.—South-Easter heavy—injures the cabbages and other vegetables above ground.

3.—Morning calm—evening wind.

4.—The men returning with beams brought an old Hottentoo between them whom they had caught. He was at once set at liberty, and being a Saldanhar, we filled his stomach and knapsack with bread and tobacco, and also gave him some wine, so his fears departed, and he remained at the fort of his own accord. Showed him tobacco and copper that he might tell his people that we wished to buy cattle as last year. Told us they were coming, and that Herry had proceeded far inland. Could not understand him well, as he knew not a word of Dutch or English. What we understood from him was by means of Hottentoo words, whose meanings we had learnt.

5.—Again treated the Hottentoo well, to show that we meant the natives no harm in consequence of Herry's theft. They seem to be afraid, and therefore do not come to the fort. Men ordered to treat all without exception kindly, that they might come without reluctance with their goods. Let the Hottentoo go at noon, well provided with bread, tobacco, and arrack. Hope this treatment will draw the others.

6.—The heavy South-Easter seriously injures, like last year, the grain on the fields.

7.—Heavy, dry South-Easter, as last year.

8.—The same—threatening destruction to everything. Jacob Reynierz: allowed to marry Elizabeth van Opdorp, niece and ward of Van Riebeeck, the first notice to be given in church to-morrow. The ceremony to be performed by the bookkeeper Verburgh, as by Resolution specially taken.

9. (Sunday).—First publication of the banns.

1653.

November.

10.—South-Easter prevents arrival of the galiot and delays the killing of seals.

11.—Morning fine—evening strong South-East.

12 and 13.—Morning fine—evening strong South-East.

14.—Warm sunshine, wind West.

15.—Galiot returns with seven casks of salted harders and some shells, also five casks of eggs. Distributed all among the people. Reports that the Frenchman had so cleared all the islands that hardly any seals were seen, but as the four Frenchmen say, shortly an abundance of young seals will be had, which have the best skins, the biggest being sold in France for as much as a pistole, being used for making muffs, of which they showed a sample.

16. (Sunday).—Cut the first cauliflower, as fine and delicate as at home. Second banns published.

17.—Examined the Frenchmen, who gave us important information regarding the preparation of the skins, which were valuable, and though a great clearance has been made, soon a large number of young seals will make their appearance, whose skins are in high favour, as appears from the beautiful fur shown us. They offered to proceed with the decked boat and twelve men to obtain a lot. One of them had for more than nine years voyaged to Madagascar, where they had been located to the number of 400 without a fortress on Ante Pera, eight or ten miles from St. Lucia Bay, buying very cheaply a large number of cattle merely for the skins, which they obtained from the natives in great quantities for beads, and also in some places obtaining fine ebony, and abundance of rice and slaves for inferior and small red coral and brass wire—which they used as rings for arms and legs—and also tamarind. Said also that the French there would be inclined to trade with us for European stores, &c., cheese, rice and hides, as they only every four or five years obtained a cargo from France, and have to keep themselves. Abundance, however, of cattle, fowls, and all sorts of birds, fruit and fish was at hand, and their principal Masters were Cardinal Mazarin and Monsgr. de Tuyne, the King's treasurer and some other Counts and big-wigs of France, who had sent them in consequence of information received that a gold mine was to be found there, and that already they had so far laid one of the natives under obligation, that they were on the way of being shown the spot. Said native, however, had been ordered to Court, where he had hitherto been detained, so that their plans had been frustrated. They were quite convinced however, of the existence of such a mine, as they had cheaply bought 300 lbs. of alluvial gold, but for some years now the natives had refused to bring any more. Reasons unknown. Country also full of indigo, with which the natives dye their clothes and veils of cotton and silk. Did not, however, know whether they could prepare the article for the European market. Also had heard that silver existed along the coast, and might have found it if the captain had made any inquiry, which he did not do.

1653.  
—  
November.

Having fruitlessly searched for gold but finding good subsistence there, they had settled at Ante Pera and collected skins which they had sent to their masters by private opportunity and by French vessels, from which they obtained their supplies, not allowing any ships to trade with the natives at the place where they were located. There were however, other places along the coast for the purpose, though it was probable that we might obtain what we wanted from the French themselves without direct intercourse with the natives, he (Nicola Raine) having visited all the coasts and the rivers and bays, and been in the Bay of Antongil at times when the Commander van der Stel of Mauritius had called there to fetch slaves. No difficulty to be feared from the Portuguese, as none were on the coast. Inquiring why these four Frenchmen had been banished on the island in Saldanha Bay by their captain, they answered, for no other reason than that he (Nicola Raine) had once asked for more food during their dirty heavy labour, different treatment having been promised them in France. Had nothing better than seal's meat and penguins, which they had to catch themselves and salt for the voyage, and not more than a tun of bread all the time they were there, which created great discontent, and he, speaking for the rest, had with his cousin Louys Raine been banished on said island with no provisions excepting sometimes a little water, and compelled to subsist on the birds and seals which they could catch. Raine seeing the galiot in the bay had asked their captain whether he intended to leave them there or take them home, as they had a chance of getting away; others also urged for better treatment, and the captain had answered: "The road is open, let those go who wish." Consequently he (Nicola) and Louys Raine banished, and Martyn Cordye and Daniel Mulot still at large, but desperate in consequence of the treatment received, had come to us, begging for the sake of Christian charity and compassion to be taken into the Company's service as sailors, according to Resolution specially adopted to-day. The salted fish brought by the galiot all spoilt. Shells very abundant on Dassen Island. Would that fuel were so, which is getting scarce, as not more than one cargo will be obtainable at Hout Bay, but if we obtain more cattle from the Saldanhars we may get sufficient from the forest about one-and-a-half miles away, also timber. The oxen stolen by Herry did good service. Have now to use the two Batavia horses to drag the beams from the forest.

18.—Wet weather, but seasonable for the gardens. Drought and heat have been very injurious to the fine seeds. Turnips and cabbage and carrots much destroyed by worms, of which the gardens are full. Will however, have abundance for the return fleet and all who arrive from home, except cattle and sheep, as we fear that the Saldanhars will be afraid of coming to the fort when informed of Herry's crimes, thinking that we may take vengeance on them. May God make them understand otherwise, that on arrival they may experience the same friendly treatment of last year.



1653.

November.

19.—Weather wet and favourable for vegetation.

20.—Warm, sunshine.

21.—N. W. breeze.

22.—N. W. breeze.

23. (Sunday).—Fine, warm, sunshine. The young couple solemnly married before the Council and the public in the Council Chamber. There being no Minister the ceremony was performed by the Secretary.

24, 25, 26 and 27.—Some persons punished for offences committed, as may be seen by the sentences.

28.—Weather the same.

29.—Rainy.

30. (Sunday).—Favourable garden weather—all vegetables, *e.g.*, cabbages and turnips, growing splendidly, many of them are very large, weighing three to three-and-a-quarter lbs., hard and fast like liver.

N.B.—Wind and weather noted carefully every day of the month.

December.

December 1.—South-East.

2.—Calm, sunshine.

3.—The butler and under barber of the galiot, in consequence of having uttered defamatory expressions about the skipper and mate, are sentenced to receive fifty lashes; and the under barber, the cause of other troubles, is further sentenced to be suspended from office for six months and compelled to beg pardon of the officers of justice and the persons injured by him, and so make restitution for having wounded their honour, as is more fully expressed in the sentence.

4.—Sentence carried into execution.

5.—Sunshine—fine and clear.

6.—Resolved to despatch the galiot and large boat, properly protected and both provided with the necessary appliances, provisions, water and fuel for three months, the day after to-morrow to Saldanha Bay to kill seals and inquire whether the Saldanhars are afraid to come to us here, and if there, to try and open a trade with them, according to Resolution adopted. Saw in the afternoon some fires towards the East, the first of the season. Hope they are those of Saldanhars, and that the latter will come soon, which God grant. Amen.

7. (Sunday).—Two of our men (one with a gun) shooting birds at Salt River had perceived five Saldanhars, who had given them an egg-shell for the Commander, asking for tobacco. Sent them two men with tobacco and pipes, for which they were very grateful. They said that what Herry had done was by no means pleasant to them, and that the Hottentoo called by us Lubbert, the comrade of Herry, had murdered the boy, and that they would have nothing to do with them or any of the watermen, and would visit us to-morrow with cattle and sheep as last year, upon which our people, in the best way they could do, expressed our kind intentions and

bartered four or five ostrich egg-shells. Trust that the Lord God will give his blessing on the trade. Amen.

8.—Galiot and boat depart for Saldanha Bay. Death of a soldier Jan Coenraetsz :

1653  
—  
December

9.—Wagon returns from the forest and reports that some Hottentoots had visited the carpenters' tents when the latter were far away in the forest at work, and finding no one in charge had stolen all the tools. Resolved to send a corporal and four men to the forest to take charge of the camp, and also to take with them four axes required.

10.—Lots of fires towards the East. No Natives arrive.

11.—Weather too bad for work on the fortress. Sent the men to the forest for palisades. Reported that they had seen many fires inland.

12.—Westerly, warm weather, which ripened our cabbage and turnip seed, of which we daily collect so much that we will not only require no more from Patria but will be able to provide India.

13.—Calm, warm weather.

14. (Sunday), 15, 16 and 17.—Men arrive with palisades on their shoulders from the woods with the news that six Hottentoots had been with them, and that a while after Corporal Willem Muller had proceeded with them to within cannon range of the fort, where they remained, stating that they had two cows beyond the river to sell to us. Accordingly we sent the Domine—whom they knew well since last year—with tobacco, copper, pipes and bread, and besides Muller another corporal, both secretly armed with pistols, but as soon as the natives saw them approaching they took to their heels to about half-a-mile beyond the view of the fort, where they awaited our people, seeing they had no muskets. Found them to be people of the captain, who seemed last year to be in alliance with Herry. Among them were two who were present when Herry stole the cattle. Often asked our men whether they had fire-arms with them, evidently being very frightened and shaking and trembling as they sat down with them. Could not be persuaded to come to the fort, but would be at the same spot to-morrow with two cows. Gave each a piece of wire, tobacco, pipes and bread, also some for their captain ; and as one of them had had a hand in the theft, or at any rate was present when it was committed, the present to the captain was entrusted to him to show that he was not suspected, and to remove their fears. They parted consequently in friendship, with the agreement to meet to-morrow, sending as a token of regard a full ostrich egg to the Commander. They also wished to make it appear that they abhorred Herry and his evil deeds. God best knows what to make of it, but it is certain that they fear that we will revenge ourselves on them. Must do our best by kind treatment to regain their confidence, which can only be done when again trading with them. The Domine is to go again to-morrow.



1653.

—  
December.

18.—Found it necessary to send 10 musketeers with the 50 men carrying palisades from the forest  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles distant from this, as the Saldanhars, however timid, are not to be trusted, and steal whatever they can get. Becoming afraid, however, in consequence of this arrangement, they remained away. Therefore to give them courage to approach and live on friendly terms with them, it is necessary to guard our property well, for if only two or three carry muskets not a hundred natives will attack them, but they cannot refrain from stealing when they see our men unarmed. That they are bloodthirsty has not yet been shown, as the murder of the boy was only committed to prevent the news of the theft from reaching the fort in time for pursuit. If they were cannibals they might often have killed our men, who cannot be prevented from going out into the fields to gather figs and other dainties. As the Hottentoots had agreed to meet our men to-day, we sent the Provost Marshal alone towards them with a pistol concealed in his coat, that the Saldanhars, believing him unarmed, might more fearlessly approach him, and if possible be persuaded to come to the fort, and in case of failure to tell them to wait for the others, who would bring the wares agreed upon.

19.—The wood carriers report at night that the fires of the Saldanhars had been removed far inland, and they had seen no natives.

20.—Riebeeck and Reyniersz: escorted by 20 men proceed to the forest to inspect, &c., and see whether it were possible to reach the Saldanhars. About  $1\frac{1}{2}$  mile from the fort from the side of the mountain we saw half-a-mile from us various troops of natives, to whom we at once went, leaving the soldiers behind us within musket range, and taking three or four secretly armed with pistols with us, and also the drummer, who was sent in advance to tell them that the captain was there himself. Having given his message, and the natives finding that we had left the armed men behind, awaited—about 12 or 13 of them—our coming, but as we approached, and the soldiers imperceptibly almost did the same, they sometimes, some of them, got up and ran away as hard as they could through abject fear, and even after returning, repeating it 10 or 12 times, until we left four more behind and the three of us approached. Ten of them then kept their ground, though shaking with fear; the rest stood at a safe distance, seeing how matters would end. When we came up they recognized the Commander, shook hands with him, and, as a strange sign of good feeling and friendship, took him round the neck, the Commander not being backward in his gesticulations for the same purpose. At once the bags were opened, and they were treated well with bread, arrack, wine, tobacco and pipes. Made us understand that they were greatly dissatisfied with Herry's doings, and had given him a good thrashing, &c. Seemed to be favourably disposed, and we at last succeeded in getting them with one cow to the fort, but they stopped more than 50 times on the road, afraid of proceeding, and



1653.  
—  
December.

begging us to bring the copper to them in the fields. We, on the other hand, encouraged them the best way we could, assuring them of good treatment at the fort. At last they ventured, and we, taking them by the hand, and dancing, jumping and singing, entered the fortress with them, where we filled them well with tobacco, arrack and food, besides performing various tricks which pleased them well and caused a new alliance with them, to further which we bought a cow from them for double the amount generally paid.

21. (Sunday).—Arrival of the *Naerden*. Left Amsterdam 23rd August. Many scurvy patients on board. Provided them at once abundantly with cabbage. Received a small letter from the Chamber, but strange to say with nothing in it. Saldanhars and wives at the fort—a good sign. Brought a useless sheep, which we did not buy. Treated them well, and obtained two good elephant tusks.

22.—Arrival of the *Breda* from Hoorn, having left the *Vlie* on the 9th inst., also the flute the *Lam*; both full of scurvy patients. Provided them well with cabbages and other vegetables. Bought two cows from the Saldanhars. Paid double the price given before and treated them well. Allowed some of them to go on board, where their stomachs and bags were well filled with bread and they were made drunk. Everything was done to attract them. The two new cows ran away in the evening, but were brought back by the Saldanhars for some bread and tobacco.

23.—Visited the ships, to obtain from them some necessary provisions.

24.—Heavy wind and sea from the west. *Breda* and *Naerden* very much struck by the waves, fortunately without injury.

25. (Christmas).—Vessels move away towards the outside roads, to obtain deeper water.

26.—Ships busy landing provisions.

27.—Galiot returns. Had not met the Frenchman at Saldanha Bay, who had taken everything with him. Had obtained seven sheep from the natives, which had been left on the Saldanha Island where about 600 fine skins had been obtained. Had thence proceeded to Dassen Island to commence the seal hunt with energy. Underwent on Christmas eve the same danger there as the ships here. Had lost the large decked boat, and consequently obtained the long boat of the *Breda* to replace it. Seals had fairly increased on the Dassen Island. Numerous young ones. Decided to kill these in preference to the old ones—skins more valuable, danger less.

28. (Sunday).—South-East.

29.—South-East. No communication between the ships and the shore.

1653.  
---  
December.

30.—Fine and calm. Many Saldanhars have been here, but brought only one cow. Have now again seven head of cattle, of which we gave three to the ships, viz., the *Breda*, the *Naerden* and the *Lam*, with cabbages every day, that they might have a little fresh meat. The three vessels leave for India with our despatches. God guide them. Amen.

N.B.—The weather carefully registered every day.

---

## LETTERS DESPATCHED FROM THE CAPE.

No. 1.—TO THE DIRECTORS OR BOARD OF SEVENTEEN AT  
AMSTERDAM.

1652.  
---  
12th Jany.

As the *Lieffde* informs us that it intends to part from us in the evening, it being already late in the afternoon, we write briefly, and would have done so more completely if we had more time. We have reached the neighbourhood of the Canaries in the latitude of  $31^{\circ}$  with fairly healthy people. A carpenter died from dropsy on the 7th. Since our departure we had a good deal of stormy weather which made us very uncomfortable and anxious because of the top-heaviness of the *Drommedaris*, which was so excessive that we voyaged with great danger and never dared to carry proper sail. On the 30th December we decided to enter an English port to obtain some ballast, but the wind turning towards the N.N.E. before night we changed our minds and proceeded, intending, when we are more beyond danger from enemies, to carry our guns below as we cannot encounter any heavy weather, and would be in great peril on a lee shore, in consequence of our inability to carry the necessary sail, &c.

Written hurriedly in the *Drommedaris* this 12th January, 1652, in latitude of about  $31^{\circ}$ .

(Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK.

In looking at the list of supplies we find ourselves without smith's coals, which we particularly require to make the grates for the oil boilers—but they may be made in Holland if you think so.

---

No. 2.—TO THE DIRECTORS, per "SALAMANDER."

18th April.

Though we have little to say, we make use of this opportunity to acquaint you with our safe arrival on the 6th and 7th instant, also that we have marked off the site of the fort, and are zealously at work—but with few hands—so that the progress must necessarily be slow, and it will take some time before we shall be able to despatch any of the three ships, as all the building materials have been stowed under everything and we cannot as yet reach them to erect the necessary shelter for our stores, which we intend to have

within the fort which has been marked off near the Fresh Water River on a very suitable spot, and a somewhat elevated level plain of good soil, excepting at the one sea point tending towards the Salt River, where the ground is soft and uneven. All about it is very dusty because of the dry season. During the rainy period, however, sufficient sods will be found to strengthen the embankments. The fresh river will nicely run into the canal at the other sea point towards the Lion Mountain, but the canal must be dug deep if the water is to be led into it and around the fort. The spot on which the fort is to stand is about two fathoms higher than the water in the river, we have therefore not made the canal more than two roods broad, intending to make it as deep as possible. We have drawn the fort square with four bastions; the outside points of which are 21 roods away from each other—Rhineland measure—i.e., the outside points or polygons at 21 roods.

1652:  
18th April

|                                 |    |    |    | rds. | ft.  | in. |
|---------------------------------|----|----|----|------|------|-----|
| The inside polygons and squares | .. | .. | .. | 13   | 17   | 3   |
| The length of their lines       | .. | .. | .. | 3    | 6    | 2   |
| The length of the gorge         | .. | .. | .. | 2    | 3    | 8   |
| The main lines                  | .. | .. | .. | 5    | 0    | 9   |
| The flank                       | .. | .. | .. | 2    | 0    | 3   |
| The second flank                | .. | .. | .. | 1    | 8    | 6   |
| The façade                      | .. | .. | .. | 6    | 1    | 0   |
| The radius                      | .. | .. | .. | 9    | 7    | 0   |
| The curtain                     | .. | .. | .. | 9    | 1    | 0   |
| The plain inside                | .. | .. | .. | 5    | 0    | 0   |
| The angles of the polygons      | .. | .. | .. | 90   | deg. |     |
| The angles of the bastions      | .. | .. | .. | 60   | do.  |     |
| The tenaille                    | .. | .. | .. | 15   | do.  |     |
| The angled flanks               | .. | .. | .. | 150  | do.  |     |
| The angle forming the flank     | .. | .. | .. | 40   | do.  |     |

*Measure of the profile of the Ramparts*

|  |    |    |    |    | rds. | ft. |
|--|----|----|----|----|------|-----|
| The base                               | .. | .. | .. | .. | 2    | 8   |
| The outside slope                      | .. | .. | .. | .. | 0    | 4   |
| The inside slope                       | .. | .. | .. | .. | 0    | 8   |
| Height of the ramparts                 | .. | .. | .. | .. | 0    | 8   |
| Breadth on the top                     | .. | .. | .. | .. | 1    | 8   |
| Base of the parapet                    | .. | .. | .. | .. | 0    | 10  |
| The outside and inside slopes together | .. | .. | .. | .. | 0    | 4   |
| The outside height of the parapet      | .. | .. | .. | .. | 0    | 4   |
| The inside                             | .. | .. | .. | .. | 0    | 6   |
| Its breadth on the top                 | .. | .. | .. | .. | 0    | 3   |
| Its height                             | .. | .. | .. | .. | 0    | 11½ |
| Breadth of the berm                    | .. | .. | .. | .. | 0    | 6   |
| The platform all round                 | .. | .. | .. | .. | 0    | 7   |
| Width of the fosse above               | .. | .. | .. | .. | 2    | 0   |



1652  
—  
8th April.

And as deep as the ground will permit us to go for the most perfect state of defence. We will send you drawings and more complete measurements per return fleet, likewise of the lands selected for cultivation, of which there is sufficient within range of our guns, if it only rains. At present vegetation is burnt up by the drought. From the instructions to the officers of the *Salamander* we gather that the first ships of the Hon. Van Teylingen which left this for St. Helena on the 26th February had on board a good many things for us, and if they had found us here, would have assisted us for some time in placing ourselves in a proper state of defence, which would have been most opportune as our progress is but slow now, because of the few hands at our disposal. We have therefore decided as quickly as possible to get ready two points, and arm them with cannon, in order to be somewhat prepared for an unexpected attack of the savages. The officers mentioned will be able to give further particulars, &c.,

(Signed by) J. v. RIEBEECK.  
DAVID CONINCK.  
JAN JANS: HUGHSAET.  
SYMON PIETER TURVER.

On board the *Drommedaris* at the Cape,  
18th April, 1652.

---

No. 3.—LIST OF PAPERS SENT HOME *per* "SALAMANDER."

1. Original letter to the Directors dated 18th April, 1652.
  2. Private letter from Riebeeck to the same—and of same date.
  3. Copy of journal of the voyage and of events down to 18th April inclusive.
  4. Copy of resolutions adopted by the Council.
- 

No. 4.—TO THE COUNCIL AT BATAVIA, SENT *per* "WALVIS" AND  
"OLIPHANT."

13th May. From the annexed instructions and papers you will gather the charge accepted by us to establish here for the Company a general rendezvous, and also erect a suitable fort for defensive purposes, and the protection of the lands to be cultivated and used as pastures, that the Company's passing ships may be properly provided with refreshments and relieved of the necessity of touching at other places; especially to pass by St. Helena on the return voyage, where the number of pigs is rapidly diminishing. For this purpose we left the Texel on the 24th December last year on board the *Drommedaris* (which carried our flag), the *Reijger* and *Goede Hoop*—the *Oliphant* and *Walvis* having been detained in consequence of the shallow water. After a voyage of hardly 3½ months we arrived here in safety on the 6th and 7th April last;

provided, besides some necessary materials and merchandise, with appliances for catching whales and seals, to burn oil; and with orders to examine what profits might be drawn here for the Company. With God's help we intend to do our best, and on the 8th ult. have marked off the fort, a square of 13 roods 7 feet 7 inches, four points, near the beach, on the eastern bank of the most easterly branch of the Fresh River, which one day we hope to lead right round the fort in a canal, as the fosse of the northerly sea-point falls at its angle right into the river. The fort has been planned as described in letter to Directors per *Salamander*, dated 18th April, 1852, and in journal (of which copy is annexed) of 9th April. We commenced work on the 10th, and endeavoured, because of our small number of workmen, to finish first two points cross-ways, and a portion of a serviceable shed to stow away the food and other dry wares, that the ships might be able to leave sooner. Notwithstanding the great demand for ships in India, we have not been able to work faster with the hands at our service, or to land our supplies and ammunition from the *Reijger* or deposit them in loose tents before we had some means of defence. The yacht *Hope* was too small to take over any of the cargo, and the *Drommedaris*—so strangely laden, as the skipper reported—also could not take on board anything out of the flute, as the things in the hold had to be moved every day before the wood works, &c., could be reached, which were only beginning to be landed on the 20th April to enable us to commence with the buildings. This necessarily caused the delay of the flute. Have hurriedly run up the house 18 feet deep and long. The one curtain 36 feet long, hurriedly built up, has been temporarily covered in with planks over which a tarpaulin will be drawn to receive the *Reijger's* cargo. We and our whole family in the meanwhile remain in a loose and leaky tent until better accommodation can be provided for the remaining goods in the *Drommedaris*, which we intend to despatch as soon as possible. Will do our best in the meanwhile to unite the eight points, which are still isolated and about 4 feet high. Also busy with provisional outworks of 6 feet at the base and 6 feet high, which are to be connected with the rest in order to have some defence, when the ships have left, against a sudden surprise of the savages; nor are we without anxiety as regards some European nations and hypocritical friends like Prince Robert and others, who sometimes have strange schemes in their heads, as appears from the annexures, and who may turn us out in our defenceless condition. We have accordingly decided to keep with us about 50 sick men, taken from the *Walvis* and *Oliphant*, to help us after their restoration to health, and then to be sent on with the following ships. Trust you will not take it amiss. Said ships arrived on the 7th instant, and had touched at St. Vincent—had also been in great danger in the Bay of Biscay and elsewhere, and had many sick and dead on board—the *Walvis* 45 and the *Oliphant* 89. The *Good Hope* will be very serviceable to explore the coast harbours

1652.  
—  
13th May

1652.

23th May.

and find out what can be done there. It is also strong enough to sail eastward of the Cape, but as this is rather hazardous we will as yet confine ourselves to the West and the neighbourhood, awaiting your orders. In case you decided upon an Eastern course it would be advantageous also to visit some Madagascar harbours, where some profitable trade might be secured at least in slaves, and I would be glad to receive the advices and notes of the Hon. van der Stel, who I recollect visited the place from Mauritius in his time with a yacht, and made a good thing with slaves. For this purpose we should be provided with such wares as may appear suitable—after consulting your own or Van der Stel's papers—for use here and to the West of the Cape along the coast, whither we intend to send the yacht in order to attempt to open up the trade and cultivate the land. For the present purposes of trade, and as clothing for the men we require: 1 packet fine and common bleached Mouris, 1 packet fine salmpouris, 1 packet fine bolatins, 1 packet fine betiljes, 1 packet fine gingham, also coloured for outside wear, and other stuffs serviceable for the same purpose, 100 or 150 pairs silk stockings, 100 or 120 good and superior blankets, 1 packet inferior coloured chintz, 40 or 50 cotton blankets, which are placed in silk bags to make feather beds of for the men, as it is very cold here. 2 packets sail clothes for the men, 2 packets cheap negros cloth, as many think that it may be acceptable to the natives on the West Coast, 1 packet fine and common Parcallen, 1 or 2 packets guinea linen, which will be readily bought by the men, coarse linen or cloth, some cattys sewing silk and Chinese or other cotton for the men to work their clothes. All to be charged to the men's accounts, and you will please tell me whether we are to add a profit or charge as per invoice.

For provisions we require instead of bread—which will be no longer sent from Holland—25 or 30 tons rice for 120 eaters, viz., 80 on land minus myself, the assistants, butlers, carpenters, cooks, &c, leaving not more than 55 or 60 men and boys for the works; the guard, with soldiers, and all women and children, number 20; on the yacht soon to leave for Saldanha Bay and further westward, there are also 20; together 120 eaters. Besides there is what we must give to the natives to court their good will. Some bales of white rice for our table, 2 tons beans and 2 tons cadjangan, to see whether they will thrive here. Will also make an experiment with Dutch peas. Some Indian corn for grinding, and to see whether they will thrive better here than the Dutch; 10 or 12 picols brown sugar for brewing beer; likewise some white, also some sugar candy; 20 leaguers arrack, of which we likewise ask more than we require, because it will often be necessary to treat the savages, who are very much pleased with and drawn nearer by it, and also by a full stomach of rice, of which we therefore require a surplus also. Some Margosa tamarind, species of mace, nutmeg and pepper; some casks of brown and white salt, which is not to be found here, and of which we may be in great need, as we hope in course of



time to obtain cattle for salting, and also large steenbraasems for the same purpose, to have in supply for the ships. We therefore also petition for some seins, and that you may order all the old seins of the homeward bound ships to be left here, as we have only one, which is already much damaged—they will not only be serviceable for fishing but for making nets to catch birds, which are abundant but wild, and could in this way be easily caught in numbers; said seins are cut to pieces at St. Helena to be converted into ground nets, but we trust that with the abundant supplies to be obtained here in course of time, it will become unnecessary to call at that Island. At any rate it will always be more necessary to leave the said seins here, for providing the ships with abundance of fish, than to delay three or four days at St. Helena for the same purpose and cutting the seins to pieces. Would also like to have all the old hoops and casks of the return ships, for preserving the train oil to be obtained from the whale and seal fisheries; also 100 or 150 bundles of cane, part of which would be given to the yacht to be used as hoops for the casks to be made out of the staves obtained from the ships, as the Dutch hoops get spoilt and unfit for use (by too much heat); three or four picols wax and cotton thread for candles, for the fort and the yacht; some surat soap; some coarse earthenware for the table, as we have not been supplied from Holland; two or three sieves for the gunner; bunting for the fort and the yacht; some weights and scales; also some paper, as we have very little on hand; also sealing wax. We have hardly half enough paper for writing our letters in sextupel copy for home, whilst the present ships could spare very little. Also one or two bells for the fort, which may be in stock from some condemned or wrecked ships.

Two metal guns (culverins), shooting far and commanding the roadstead, preventing all enemies from firing into our embankments from a distance and destroying them, whilst we would remain helpless with our 4, 6 and 8-pounders; also a pair of wide mouthed pieces for defence against attacks of the natives and others, to be placed below the walls, and to be charged with grape. In this manner we would, according to orders, have 4 pieces on each bastion, whilst now we have only 12 in all, as the ships could spare no more—3 on each point, 8 six-pounders, 2 eight-pounders and 2 four-pounders. Of Indian matches we ask a large quantity, as inland journeys are often undertaken to examine one thing and another; this cannot be safely done without soldiers, as the natives cannot be trusted. Also 2 or 3 hundred lbs. of Indian gunpowder for the fort and yacht, as the 2,000 lbs. from home will be too little, and this place should be provided with 4 or 5,000 lbs. powder, and other ammunition and supplies in proportion, in case of a siege by European enemies or savages. Expect your advice and orders.

To start the whale and seal fisheries we require 2 whaleboats with their furniture: also 3 kedges, only one having been found

1652.  
13th May.

1652.

13th May.

in the ships—sloops useless without kedge anchors either when catching whales or caught in squalls—will therefore have to sit still in the meanwhile—though we see the whales before our eyes. There will be sufficient leisure to hunt them, but for that very reason we the more urgently make the request. In course of time this industry must defray the expenses incurred here. Also required, one good lot of tackle with blocks, &c.; cane and other material for hoops, to be used for the train oil casks; some strong beams or thick teak planks for oil tanks—the deals from Ho'lland are suitable for the gate and bridge, &c. They are much broken, spoilt by heat and unfit as tank material; also some moss or other stuff for caulking; smith's tools and coals for the grates of the oil ovens. We have sufficient iron for the purpose. Lime and a large quantity of bricks; of the latter we obtained about 5,000 out of the *Drommedaris* and not 7,000 as the invoice states—enough suitable soil here for bricks and tiles if we only had men and tools—Chinese would be welcome. Large number of the 5,000 bricks already used for the tail pieces of the posts of the houses and store, and also powder magazine. For each oil furnace will be required at least 2,000 bricks, and this must be put in order, as in that way much expense will be defrayed. Pipes to be used at the oil ovens—the one from Holland broken. One is insufficient. Some tiles for roofing the houses, as the planks which are now in use crack in this cold weather, and will do so the more when it is warmer—will therefore be at our wits' end to know how to keep dry and also shelter our goods. We have taken some old sails from the ships to throw over the roof, but cannot spare too much tar to make a tarpaulin. We therefore ask you for some; also some pitch to use for our oil tanks, pipes and wooden dwellings, to preserve them the better. Our supply of paint and linseed oil is insufficient; we would like to have some more.

To see whether they will thrive here, we ask for the following Indian seeds, viz.: Seeds or plants of sweet potatoes, pine apples, water and other melons, pumpkins, calabashes, cucumbers, Indian radishes and all other imaginable seeds; all sorts of young trees, shoots and sprouts of vines also, which will thrive beautifully along the mountain slopes and as well as in Spain or France; oranges, lemons, pumplenoses, bananas, mango and mangostan, durean, soorsak, seri and pinang; cocoa nuts, of which we had 12 and which we planted; also bamboo plants or seeds, which will be useful in many ways, as there is no suitable forest here to make anything from, excepting six miles off, for which carts and heavy labour are required. Would like to have some old bamboos to be used for little sheds (pondoks) on the land; guavas, pomegranate, papajas, sugar cane or its seed, and whatever else might be considered capable of being cultivated. For keeping a dairy going, and so obtaining butter, milk and cheese, a hundred Chinese or other industrious workmen, possessing the knowledge of cultivating



Indian produce, would not be unwelcome, as we will have enough to do at first with our small supply of hands to put the fort in defence and plant the suitable ground beneath it with all kinds of Dutch fruit and trees. Beyond the range of our cannon there is so much fruitful soil that thousands of people would find enough to do; to all appearance it will yield better and sooner than the soil in New Netherland, where the forest is first to be destroyed before anything can be planted. Annually many families proceed thither from the Fatherland. But this land is hardly dug up when it is found to be the most suitable garden and seed soil in the world in all directions. It would therefore not be unserviceable to the Company if, under conditions framed by the Company, some freemen from India or Holland were licensed and permitted to come hither and take up their residence here as subjects of the Company. This would increase our means of defending the Company's boundaries and jurisdiction, which might be further extended but could not be maintained with few men.

The Chinamen might also make bricks and tiles and other earthenware if they only bring tools with them, there being clay in abundance, likewise shells for burning lime, so that in course of time everything could be made, bred, and provided here to the great profit of the Company. No doubt Dutch peas, wheat, beans and other grain will thrive well here. Have made a trial with a little seed, a very little, because of the dry season. Will continue the trial during each season to find out at what time of the year each grows best. If we had Chinese or other industrious men here to cultivate the soil, it is evident that in course of time the ships will be able to obtain all kinds of necessaries, not only for the voyage, but for a long while, as the Chinese may burn arrack, the wash of which may be used to feed pigs. Plans may also be made to catch multitudes of harts, elands and steenbucks, with snares or otherwise, as is done at Formosa, whence proper information should be obtained, for if skins could be procured in quantity, a great profit might be secured to the Company in Japan. The cowhides will also yield a good deal, as much as is paid here for the whole animal. A bird-cage (trap) might be invented in which to catch numbers of geese, ducks and other waterfowl found in abundance here. We would require for this purpose some tame ducks and geese from Batavia, also some rabbits to breed from in the downs so suitable for them. Also some Indian pigs, among them one or two boars to breed from and so supply the ships. The whale and seal fisheries will also succeed, but we cannot commence this before we have more bricks, lime and smiths' tools for building in the boilers—also two whaleboats with appurtenances, &c.

*Salamanca*, the only vessel which arrived here from India since our arrival—on 15th April ult. It left on the 19th, taking our journals and letters for the Masters (copies enclosed to you). Ship's officers told us, and we gathered also from letters of Hon.

1652.

13th May.



1652.  
13th May.

V. Teylingen, dated 8th April and inserted in our journal, that you were aware of our purpose here for the Company; and had sent some seeds, plants and young trees per the return fleet under Van Teylingen, which found us not yet here, part of it passing without touching, so that we have been left without those seeds, &c., and likewise without the horses. We humbly ask for 10 or 12 with the necessary harness for use in land expeditions to be sent out to discover what may exist inland and can be turned into profit for the Company. We have heard that there were two living horses here—the one was killed by wild beasts, and the other, with a piece of halter on him, is so wild that we cannot catch it. Do not know who landed them.

Transhipped from *Good Hope* into *Reijger* according to orders 295 staves iron for India. Also baskets with ? found in said yacht, and marked “for the matches”—trust they will arrive safe. We intend to make some sort of a jetty and extend it so far into the sea from the Fresh River that the boats may lie alongside and take in water, &c., without necessitating the men to go up to their necks in water, which often causes great trouble and sickness. Will see whether we can make a watercourse from the Fresh River to have a navigable cutting through the beach into the sea—both rivers might be connected, the one dammed up and the other provided with locks to be opened in cases of overflow to produce a quicker discharge, or otherwise, as may be found necessary in course of time. We require, however, good poles and other wood for the locks, which are with difficulty obtainable here. Would like you to send them. A delay of a year longer must take place if they are to come from Holland. Likewise some nails of various kinds as much as you can spare. We are only provided with three kegs of nails, which will soon be used up, as our wooden houses require many nails. How things are going on here you can gather from the various officers and also from our journals, to which we refer you. We confide you to the grace of God.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

Cape, 13th May, 1652.

List of papers sent by Riebeeck to the Governor-General and Council of India, per *Oliphant* and *Walvis*, on the 15th May, 1652:

- No. 1. Original despatch dated as above.
2. Copy of journal from date of departure from Holland until . . . May, 1652, inclusive.
3. Copy of Resolutions of the Council.
4. Copy of Placcaat.
5. Copy of letter sent to the Directors per *Salamander*, dated 18th April, 1652.
6. Copy of invoice of goods in hands of the senior merchant Riebeeck for the Cape.

7. Memo. of stores shipped in the *Drommedaris* and *Reijger* for the Cape. 1652.
8. Two invoices of the *Drommedaris* and *Reijger*. 13th May.
9. Of the yacht the *Hoop*.
10. Copy of instructions for the officers at the Cape from the Directors, dated 15th March and 12th Dec., 1651.
11. Copy of Extract—Resolution of the Directors, dated 4th Dec., 1651.
12. Copy of letter from Directors to officers of the *Drommedaris*, *Reijger* and *Hoop*, dated 15th Dec., 1651.
13. Copy of extract from letter of the Chamber of Zeelandt to the Chamber of Amsterdam and dated 15th Dec., 1651, referring to the designs of Prince Robert (Rupert).
14. Copy of Remonstrance by Sieur. Leendert Jans : delivered to the Directors and dated 26th July, 1649.
15. Copy of further considerations or reflections on the same by Johan van Riebeeck, handed to the board in June, 1651.
16. Interdiction of war.
17. Memo. of the garden seeds sent from Holland to the Cape.
18. Invoice of the ship's money received by Van Riebeeck from the Directors.
19. Original letter of Hon. Van Teylingen to the Governor-General and Council of India, dated 25th February, 1652
20. Sealed letter to the same gentlemen.

---

NO. 5.—BATAVIA—TO THE GOVERNOR-GENERAL AND COUNCIL—  
SENT *per* REIJGER.

With the *Oliphant* and *Walvis* we have sent you duplicate letters and annexures, dated 15th inst. This accompanies enclosed invoices of the iron in the *Reijger* transhipped from the *Goede Hoop*, and is to notify that from the *Drommedaris* and *Reijger* more than 700 sawn and other deals, also 400 spars, small beams and roof spars, are wanting, no doubt caused by our sudden departure from Texel—this will cause me much inconvenience in making our dwellings, stores, bridges and oil houses, &c. Will try and get on the best way we can, and see whether wood is procurable with carts from a certain fine forest about six miles further inland ; for this purpose some strong buffaloes from Batavia would not be unserviceable, but if in the growing season we barter some cattle, we might, to begin with, visit the place with them, and await your further instructions. The basket containing the compasses referred to in our former letter, being open, we found that it contained only 6 small sloop compasses ; we therefore kept them as required for the sloops here. Also the box of matches marked "Cape" found in the *Reijger* above the stated number. Trust that we have acted well in all these matters. Will be glad to hear of it at the proper time. 16th May.

1652.  
—  
16th May.

From the journal dated 15th inst. you will gather that we gave the name of "Good Hope" to our little fort, according to instructions.

Had believed that the *Oliphant* and *Walvis* could have left sooner, but they were detained in consequence of landing their sick (to be employed after restoration to health in working at the fort and so bring it the sooner into a proper state of defence), and stores for us; likewise of contrary winds. Skipper Hoogsae having worked lustily with his men in the meanwhile, was able to get ready to leave with them. The *Walvis* left this morning with a strong South-easter, and the *Oliphant*, having still to take in a boat load of water, left in the evening with the *Reijger*—may they arrive safely. We hope to despatch the *Drommedaris* in 10 or 12 days, as we are aware of your want of ships and men for prosecuting the business of the Company. We will consequently do our best to forward the men left behind per first ships from home, and help ourselves in the best way possible. Will do our very best in everything to your satisfaction, that you may have occasion to think of your servant to his advantage, who recommends himself to your good will, that he may soon be relieved and profitably employed in India. We commend you most humbly to the One All's grace and ourselves to your powerful interest.

(Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK.

Cape of Good Hope, 16th May, 1652.

List of the papers sent by Riebeeck to the India Council, per *Reijger*, 16th May, 1652:

- No. 1. Original despatch.
2. Invoice of the iron transshipped from the yacht the *Good Hope*.
3. Copy of register of papers sent to Council of India, per *Oliphant* and *Walvis*, dated 15th May, 1652.

---

No. 6.—BATAVIA—TO THE INDIA COUNCIL.

5th May.

15. The annexure is copy of a letter dated 16th inst. sent you per *Reijger*. Trust that that vessel, and also the *Walvis* and *Oliphant* with our complete communications, have reached you before the arrival of this. We refer you to the latter and only have to write as follows: Did our best to despatch the *Drommedaris* as soon as possible, and for that purpose took our residence in a bare tent temporarily rigged up outside the fort. Have landed all the bread casks out of the *Reijger*, and placed them on the loft of the house, notwithstanding the wood is so thin that it can hardly be used for anything else than a dwelling. We have done this to find room for the cargo of the *Drommedaris*, as the pork, meat, and other casks are still lying in the open air, and merely covered up with a few planks to protect them from the sun. Are daily



busy preparing more shelter, and in the meanwhile doing our best to let you have this vessel also in good time with a crew of 57 men. On board the *Reijger* were 56. Total 113 men. Of the *Drommedaris* we did not, excepting our own person, the assistants, barbers' apprentices and 4 sick, retain more than 49 men; of the *Reijger*, among them some boys and 6 sick, 27 men; of the *Oliphant*—13 sick and 3 dead among them—20 men; of the *Walvis*—also 12 sick and invalids among them—30 men. Total with boys, sick and all, 126 heads; deduct the sick and invalids—fully 30; also myself, 1; assistants, 2; sick comforter, 1; surgeons, 2; officer of the soldiers, 1; cooks, 2; cooks' apprentices, 3; dead, 3; total 5 heads. So that there remain for doing the work no more than 1 men. You will observe that we have not a man too much; we will manage, however, to get along as well as we can, and also with the help of the sick when restored to health; so that we may send you the rest of the men with the first ships from home when we hope to be in a better state of defence and the men themselves restored to health. Will be glad to hear of your approval. We have kept on shore for the use of the Company of the cash received or refreshments for the ship 40 reals in specie and given Skipper Boninck at his request  $30\frac{1}{4}$ , the rest having been spent in Texel. The balance will appear from the ship's books of 1st May. Will debit the Hon. Company with these 40 reals in the ship's books and credit the general office with it in our business books; and also with all our merchandise, according to the custom prevailing in India, unless we receive different orders.

Had been ordered to despatch the *Drommedaris* with 40 men, and had intended to do the same in the case of the *Reijger*, but as the *Walvis* and *Oliphant* have left us 50 eaters, sick or otherwise, we added sixteen men to the first named ships, so that we retain here 18 men above our fixed number, who are mostly sick, 3 have already died. Have therefore really only 15, who will be sent on when recovered.

Will not require salt, having found since the departure of the *Reijger* a beautiful saltpan, but difficult of approach, near the wreck of the *Haerlem*. Fully three miles from the fort. Carts will be necessary. This and other matters we hope to have in order before the arrival of the next return fleet.

We have taken from the *Salamander* the assistant Frederick Verburgh and two boys named Jan Willems: Bobbels of Delft and Cornelis Cornelis: of Rotterdam, who hid themselves on board at Batavia. Verburgh declares that he did it only because of his inclination to remain at the Cape, and as he conducts himself well, and does good service at the office, we beg that he may be allowed to retain his salary, and that his accounts may be forwarded from Batavia. He and Willems arrived at Batavia last year per *Salamander*. Bobbels left per *Reijger* for Batavia with our consent.

Did our best to despatch the *Drommedaris* as soon as possible, trusting that its voyage may be so short that it may obtain the

1652.  
—  
25th May.

1652.  
—  
25th May.

premium—the delay here being deducted—and we receive our share.

Would like to have some slaves for the dirtiest and heaviest work, to take the place of the Dutchmen in fetching stone, &c. which are to be obtained only at a distance, and with which we will be able to make whatever is necessary. Some slaves from Batavia would therefore be welcome, who know how to cut stone and dig up the soil. You should also send us some tile and brick-makers, as brickmaking will be harder work than fetching and preparing the stone.

Forgot to ask in former letter for some Batavia vinegar—consider it cheaper than Dutch. Our supply will not last longer than until the arrival of the next return fleet. We further find wanting in the *Drommedaris* a keg with 104 yellow armlets marked K and a ton marked o<sup>v</sup>c. Invoice does not say what it contains. Also a case of matches marked No. 9. In its place we have found a case No. 163, which being light we supposed to contain the matches—found it to contain paper boxes covered with shavings. Believed them to contain amber or other valuable articles. Closed the box again and forwarded it to you per *Drommedaris*. Box will no doubt be missed in other ships, and has been wrongly shipped hither instead of the matches, caused evidently by the hurry of the lightermen at Texel.

(Signed) J. V. RIEBEECK.

Cape of Good Hope, 25th May, 1652.

List of papers sent to India per *Drommedaris* on 25th May, 1652.

No. 1. Original letter to the India Council, dated 25th May, 1652.

2. Copy of original letter sent per *Reijger*, dated 16th May, 1652.

3. Copy of journal since departure of *Walvis*, *Oliphant* and *Reijger*.

4. Invoice of iron transshipped from the *Goede Hoop* into the *Reijger*.

5. Invoice of money received by Skipper David Coninck from Riebeeck.

6. Memo. of things on board the *Drommedaris* for Batavia.

7. Memorial of F. Verburgh.

---

No. 7—BATAVIA—TO THE GOVERNOR-GENERAL AND COUNCIL  
OF INDIA.

30th May.

Though nothing particular has happened since the departure of the *Drommedaris*, we cannot let the *Hoff van Zeelandt* leave without sending a few lines and copies of our last letter of the 25th, with annexures forwarded per *Drommedaris*, which we trust will reach you safely under the Providence of God, Amen.

1652  
—  
30th May.

Opening our boxes we found such heavy hinges as if we intended to build the biggest houses in the world. We cannot use them for our lightly built dwellings, but they may be of service for cellar doors, gates, &c. We therefore humbly request you to send us some light window and door hinges. We can spare a good lot of heavy ones, which we may send to Batavia if ordered.

The men are more and more attacked by dysentery and heavy fever, and dying. This delays the progress of the works. We have, however, taken no men from this ship and will see to get on the best way we can; and as hitherto we have not yet obtained any cattle from the natives, we will send five or six of our strongest men to shoot harts or elands for the sick and the preservation of the health of the others. Our crops are likewise not yet coming on because of the cold and long drought. A lot of seed has also been spoilt, so that we are doing our best to rear new seed and prepare much land, so that we may sow a great deal, and have an abundant supply for the passing ships.

Some boxwood and heavy planks will be required for the jetty and doors of the locks in the river, which could be so arranged that in course of time the boats might sail up the river right to the fresh water. For this and other matters we expect the things asked per *Walvis* and *Oliphant* in our letter of the 15th by the following return ships, &c.

(Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK.

Cape of Good Hope, 30th May, 1652.

List of papers sent by Riebeeck to India per *Hoff van Zeelandt*.

No. 1. Original letter to the Governor and Council.

2. Copy of original letter per *Drommedaris*, and dated 25th May, 1652.

3. Continuation of journal since departure of *Walvis*, *Oliphant*, *Reijger* and *Drommedaris*.

4. Invoice of money received by Skipper David Coninck from Riebeeck.

5. Memo. of goods in the *Drommedaris* for Batavia.

NO. 8.—INSTRUCTIONS TO BE OBSERVED BY THE OFFICERS OF THE  
“GOEDE HOOP” ON THE VOYAGE TO ST. HELENA AND  
SALDANHA BAYS AND THE ADJOINING ISLANDS, TO EXPLORE  
THE COASTS AND FIND OPPORTUNITIES FOR TRADING, &c.

Whereas it appears from a certain extract received at home from 14th October. Wingurla that some years ago a Portuguese vessel destined for Goa had touched at Saldanha Bay, about 20 miles to the north of this Cape, and for white copper had obtained a fair quantity of gold, amber and ivory, without any further inquiry having been afterwards made by the Portuguese—it lying beyond their district; and whereas the late Governor-General van der Lyn informed us last year at Amsterdam that a certain small French vessel had met



1652.

14th October.

him at St. Helena with a cargo on board worth a ton of gold, consisting of furs and oil taken at Dassen Island, which we suppose to be Ilha Elizabeth, lying before Saldanha Bay, about seven or eight miles away from this to the north, very full of rock-rabbits and seals, as may be gathered from the journals of the Admiral Joris Spilbergen, who took three days to reach the Cape from that place in Sept., 1601; and eight days from the bay of St. Helena in  $32\frac{2}{3}^{\circ}$  South Latitude. And whereas everywhere along the African coast as far as the Ilha Elizabeth he had also found good anchorage, and from the fires burning everywhere on shore deduced that people lived there; we have consequently decided to despatch the yacht thither, as she is doing nothing at present, in accordance with resolution of 24th ult., in order to discover what trade may be initiated, and that we may have some certain information to send home per return fleet.

Wind and weather permitting, you will leave to-morrow, passing between Robben Island and the mainland straight to Ilha Elizabeth, always sounding to know what bottom there is, as good sandy anchorage is to be found on the Eastern side between it and the mainland, and within gunshot of the island in 16 fathoms, according to Spilbergen.

But before this you shall proceed round the point to the little bay towards the south (Hout Bay), discovered by the mate, and reported by him and the late bookkeepers Helm and Verburgh as a very serviceable harbour and protected from all winds. It has very good timber, easily obtainable and very necessary here. Without difficulty you may pay it a visit, and especially because it is supposed at home that there are some bays or havens behind this Cape where private Mozambique traders from Portugal call for refreshments—and this may be one of them.

In sailing away you shall carefully make observations regarding the grounds, depths, bays, coves and rivers between this and the other places mentioned, making separate and complete charts, with full descriptions and indications also of everything that happens on the way, and regarding all lands passed, for information of the Directors and the India Council.

You will therefore carefully examine everything, and especially take care that you are always on your guard that you be not attacked unawares by savages or other enemies or hypocritical friends; and we will provide you for your better defence with two strong soldiers, well armed, whom you shall keep under strict discipline with your other men, that no harm be done to the natives. You shall do your best to make them well dispositioned towards us, that we may the better discover what profits may be secured to the Company.

Having arrived at any place, and in the first place at Ilha Elizabeth, &c., you shall make the following observations:—

1. The exact latitude and longitude of the said islands, bays and rivers.

2. The depth of the anchorage there.

3. In what manner or in what quarter there will be the best security against storms and winds.

4. How far the rivers or bays are navigable, and with what kind of vessel.

5. What kind of people is found at the various localities, and in how far they are to be trusted.

6. What means of supporting life there are, and how obtainable.

7. Especially whether any gold, amber, ivory, musk, ostrich feathers and other merchandise, also cows, sheep, pigs, fowls, and other animals are obtainable and what kind of merchandise. Also in what way the trade is to be conducted.

8. Whether the cowries are taken there as on the coasts of Angola, not far from it.

9. Whether any civet cats are to be had—which we trust will be the case, as we have seen many here in the wilderness.

10. Whether any hides of cattle or game can be bought from the natives. To find out one thing and another, you will take with you 56 lbs. tobacco, or one roll; 154 lbs. yellow copper, consisting of 57 pieces of flat, weighing 71 lbs.; 1 roll of wire, weighing 40 lbs.; 1 roll thick wire, weighing 36 lbs.; 20 armllets, weighing 7 lbs.; 2 pieces caperias; 2 pieces guinea linen; 20 red caps; 54 knives, viz., 48 bread and 8 razors; 4 iron bars found in the yacht.

In trading you are not to be too liberal, as our worst wares are often considered by them to be the most valuable. You have therefore to pay particular attention to what they seem to like best.

A head of cattle is ordinarily obtained here for two small or large copper plates like those given you, likewise for wire in proportion; but to draw them the more readily, you may in the commencement be a little more liberal, that is to say, if you cannot obtain it in any other way.

Sheep are ordinarily bought for as much tobacco or wire as the sheep is long with its tail.

Tusks per piece for a span or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  do. of tobacco, according to size.

Musk will very likely be obtained for tobacco, but if they should want copper for it you may give it, taking care that you get a good article—for which purpose we annex a description, to enable you to test it.

You may also give copper for amber, if you cannot obtain it in a cheaper manner. If you find gold among them, you must not show that you are too anxious to have it, as it is possible that they may consider copper as valuable—a matter to be carefully inquired into.

Of ostrich feathers you may also obtain some, viz., very fine points, which, as Herry the Hottento, who speaks broken English, tells us, are to be had for a small piece of bread or bad tobacco.

1652

14th October.

You shall likewise now and then show them what wares you have, to find out what they like best, that we may be informed of one thing and another for the good of the Company in future.

If any good timber should be obtainable anywhere you must try and bring with you as much as you can carry, also whatever you think may be of service and profit.

If it should happen (which we do not hope) that in the said bays and elsewhere no trade or people are found, you shall not delay or proceed further along the coast, but return from the bay of St. Helena and on the way touch at Ilha Elizabeth, killing as many seals there as you can stow the blubber of in your casks. For this purpose we give you 16 firkins and half leaguers, iron bound, also oil aums. You are to dry the skins at the same time and bring them with you, as many as you can take on board, to cover the expenses of the trip. The skins are to be properly flayed and cleaned of all blood and fat, and kept pure and clean to prevent putrefaction, a matter of great consequence. Time therefore should be taken for the work instead of lying idle here. You are accordingly most seriously urged to do your best in this and other matters for the benefit of the Company, without minding the grumbling of the sailors and soldiers because the work is dirty or difficult. Everyone, especially the officers, should consider that the Company's food and money are to be earned, and they are consequently bound by honour and oath to do their best in the interest of their masters without reference to body, life, trouble, heavy or light labour, as the Company do not like to sacrifice their money and food to idleness.

Whilst busy at the island you shall also dig wells to procure fresh water, which may be most likely obtainable there, it being a low sandy island with little vegetation; and very stormy on the western side, but on the eastern portion towards the mainland it has fine sandy soil to hold the anchor in 16 fathoms within gunshot from shore—according to Spilbergen.

Of the rock-rabbits, which are also, according to Spilbergen, in great abundance there, you shall collect as many skins as possible as samples for Holland and India.

When you have a fair cargo of seal skins, blubber and rabbit skins, you shall, a few days before your departure home, try and catch and bring with you as many live rock-rabbits as possible, to be used as food by the men here, in consequence of the want of victuals. You are not to pass the Robben Island, but touch there when returning, to kill there as many seals as you can get and so bring as much additional blubber and skins as possible. Skins may be prepared here, that we may have more on hand when the ships arrive. Do not mind a little stench or dirt, as these things are of great importance to the Company, because of the profits which they will bring in Netherland and India. The Masters will therefore be well served and you will gain honour and reputation. Wherever you touch you are to put up signs of possession having



been taken by the Company, especially wherever some profit can be made. 1652.

As these are the chief matters of our instructions at present, we leave the rest to your experience and zeal, assured that you will do your best for the Company, conducting yourselves as honest and zealous servants, &c. 14th October.

(Signed) J. VAN RIEBEECK.

Fort of Good Hope, 14th Oct., 1652.

List of papers given to Skipper Turver of the *Good Hope* :—

No. 1. Original Instructions for the officers of the yacht, 14th Oct., 1652.

2. Invoice of merchandise *datum ut supra*.

3. Extract from Journal of Spilbergen regarding the discovery and description of the African coast about the bay of St. Helena, in Nov., 1601.

4. Extract from our Instructions received from the Masters regarding the war with Portugal.

5. Copy of interdict regarding the war with Spain, &c.

6. Description of the test for musk and amber to be found on the coast, as we hope.

NO. 9.—FURTHER INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE OFFICERS OF THE YACHT “GOEDE HOOP,” AGAIN PROCEEDING TO SALDANHA BAY AND THE ISLANDS TO SEARCH FOR TRADE AND CATCH SEALS, &c.

Having observed the good success of your first trip in finding the dried seal skins on a certain island within St. Helena Bay and evidently left by the French—we have yesterday by Resolution decided to send you back in order to have a large supply of seal skins for the return fleet; also blubber. For this purpose you take seven additional iron-hooped firkins with you—that the expenses of our masters may be met as much as possible, according to full particulars in the first Instructions, according to which you are to act, excepting in the case of St. Helena Bay, which you shall not visit because of the danger of doing so. You shall not go further than Saldanha Bay for seeking profits for the Company. For this purpose you have 25 men, and among them two skilled cleaners and two skilled flayers. You shall place 16 men under provisional Corporal J. v. Grylich (? Gulick) on the islets at the mouth of the Bay, which you shall name the Saldanha Bay Robben Island, because of the multitude of seals there. You shall take care that the tools are used for the skins in the manner indicated by those brought with you—the fat to be thoroughly scraped off, and the skins stretched out and fixed with pins to dry. Poles and clubs have been obtained from the forest, and also carriers’ knives, that everything may be done well and carefully. You shall also diligently inquire what trade may be initiated, and keep with you

1652.  
—  
27th Nov.

on board nine men to carry you to and fro. The bookkeeper Verburgh is to undertake the trade and keep accounts, and be your second in Council. As the former cargo may be required, nothing particular having been taken from it, you will take it again with more tobacco, as the former lot was spoilt. You will also bring some shark skins, plentiful in that bay, that we may see whether it be of the kind taken in Japan, for which four or five tail are paid. Also all kinds of fish or ray skins, which are hard, sharp or thick. You shall carefully examine into everything which may possibly bring any profit. This may secure you great honour as the first discoverers of further means of securing profit.

And should there be any lazy workmen they must be kept to the work by serious, continual and often also "feeling" admonitions. This is strongly urged upon the officers, who are responsible for everything, the more so as there will be no reason to complain on that island of scarcity of food, because of the quantity of fish and nicely flavoured rock-rabbits obtainable there.

As we gather from your report that some Saldanha natives or beach-rangers had requested to be placed on the Saldanha Seal Island to kill seals, you shall allow it, and find out whether they are inclined to do it for the Company, as we fear that they may have done it for the French, who may have given them the meat. This is to be carefully attended to, and a trial made to get more skins.

When your quantity is complete, and the skins are ready for packing, you shall do your best to get them here before the arrival of the return fleet. You will therefore leave Saldanha Bay on the 1st of February, without coming hither in the meanwhile, as too much time is wasted by sailing to and fro — unless your cargo is ready before that time. You will bring all the men with you to prevent an unexpected attack from the French, who might be inclined to revenge themselves, when not finding the skins which they had left behind. Therefore you should always be on your guard against them and other enemies without hindering or otherwise showing them ill feeling, unless you are first attacked, when you are allowed to defend yourselves.

Any sheep obtained at St. Helena Bay you shall land on Ilha Elizabeth and also on Robben Island, called Cornelia, situated before this (Table) bay; among them two or three rams for breeding purposes, also some live rock-rabbits; as before this has been done by the English and Admiral Matelief, when it was found that they answered there very well—that when the natives fail us we may be able to depend upon ourselves in course of time. To catch the rabbits alive and in quantity you may fix nets to long poles, with which they are easily caught.

The whaleboat accompanying you, you shall keep with the vessel, to carry you to and fro. The ship's boat is to be used for carrying the skins on board, but whaleboats are too valuable for this work—they are therefore not to be employed for carrying cargo.

Last time you forgot to dig for fresh water on Ilha Elizabeth, and erect signs of having taken possession there and everywhere in the bay. This is of great importance, and should have been your first care. The island in Saldanha Bay was named "Proffyt." You likewise neglected to make perfect drawings of the coast and bays, according to instructions, which you ought to read and bear in mind more carefully, as it is our order that they shall be promptly carried out, for proper drawings are to be made of everything and sent to Holland and India for the information of our masters and for their guidance. You are therefore to pay careful attention not only to this but to every one of our orders, as what they contain is in our opinion for the best interests of the Company, which ought to be of as much importance to yourself. You are also recommended to obey our orders implicitly, for what you may consider as of no account, may be found to be of very great benefit to the Company. For instance, the shark skins in such abundance there (Saldanha Bay), and so little valued by you, and for which we have seen paid as much as 15 guildens each in Japan. And what does it matter if everything be skins only, as long as we can secure profit to the Company. No selection of merchandise should be considered too bad or unimportant. Profit is the main point. Therefore take this and our preceding order to heart. This would satisfy us and serve our masters.

As there is great desire for tobacco among the men, you shall promise a span of tobacco for every 100 skins per man—skins to be flayed, cleaned and dried—to make them more zealous in collecting, viz., 10 men having 100 skins to have each one span of tobacco—giving this extra tobacco only as long as your supply lasts—more you must not promise, as tobacco is dear, and it ought to be earned.

You shall during your stay on the Island Elizabeth collect the fat of the rock-rabbits, as the surgeon states that it is worth four or five stivers per lb. in Holland. You shall keep them in kegs as samples to be sent home. The skins are to be cured in the same manner as those of the seals, as they will very likely be worth money. At any rate it will show that we have done our best to find profit for the Company wherever we could.

We depend further upon your zeal, trusting that you will do your duty. Wish you a happy voyage for the advantage of our masters, &c.

(Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK.

Fort of Good Hope, 27th Nov., 1652.

1652:  
27th Nov.

### RESOLUTIONS.

December 30, 1651.—Prayer. O merciful, kindly, loving God and Heavenly Father, inasmuch as it hath pleased Thy divine Majesty to call us to the management of the business of the General United Netherlands Chartered East India Company here

1651.  
30th Dec.



1651.  
—  
30th Dec. at Cabo de boa Esperance, and for that purpose we have met with our Council of Assessors in order with their advice to adopt such resolutions by which the greatest interests of the said Company may be promoted, justice maintained, and (if possible) among these wild and brutal people Thy true reformed Christian doctrine in course of time may be planted and spread to the glory and honour of Thy Holy Name and the welfare of our Masters the Chiefs—whereunto we are altogether incapable without Thy gracious help—we therefore pray Thee, O Most Gracious Father, that Thou mayest dwell with us with thy Fatherly wisdom, and presiding at these our meetings, so enlighten our hearts, that all wrong passions, misunderstandings and other similar failings, may be warded from us; that our hearts may be free from all human influences and our minds so constituted, that in our deliberations we may not intend or decide otherwise than what will tend to the magnifying and the glory of Thy Most Holy Name and the greatest service of our Lords and Masters, without in any way regarding our own interests or personal profit. This and whatever more may be necessary to carry out our ordained work, and for salvation, we pray and desire in the name of Thy well beloved Son, Our Saviour and Redeemer, Jesus Christ, Who has taught us to pray—Our Father, &c.

30th Dec. December 30.—Heavy westerly wind—the *Drommedaris* so light that it is impossible to carry the necessary sail. Council held with Skippers of *Reijger* and *Hoop* and officers of the ship. Dangerous condition of vessel considered, and resolved, as laying-to would be of no use, to call at an English harbour to provide the *Drommedaris* with some ballast and thence proceed as fast as possible.

1652.  
—  
20th Jany. Saturday, January 20, 1652.—Safely proceeded to  $18\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  N. latitude. Council held as before with Skippers of *Reijger* and *Hoop* to consider whether it will be necessary to call at the Cape Verde Islands, which, with God in the van, we trust to reach to-morrow, and inquire whether there are any sick people on board to refresh the crews.

This spot once passed no place of call will be found until the Cape is reached. The salt food might lead the men to expect a landing, to keep up their strength for the labour required for the fort. Arrived at the Cape, it may be necessary to rest the men for some days that they may gain strength for their work, which is to be taken in hand at once; and as the oldness of the food has not yet affected the men, two or four days' sojourn at the Islands may so refresh the men that they will arrive at the Cape quite strong and hearty, and commence to work at once. In this manner the *Reijger* and *Drommedaris* may be forwarded much sooner from the Cape to Batavia—for the stronger and healthier our men are, the sooner and better we shall be able to proceed with the work. All this having been carefully considered, and we having been informed that the crews of the three ships were well and strong, it was unanimously resolved to proceed direct towards the Cape and not touch at the

Islands. Hope the Almighty will protect us and grant us a safe voyage. Amen.

March 29.—*Reijger* and *Hoop* some days far to leeward and southerly. Had for three or four days no opportunity to take the sun's altitude. Guess that we have enough of south latitude to strike the Cape with an Eastern course. Council assembled to inquire into the difference between the observations and to come to an understanding about the course to be taken for reaching the Cape, that at the end of the voyage we may not part company. Skippers and mates come on board. Found the average latitude  $34^{\circ}$  S. and longitude  $22\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ . Resolved to reach  $34^{\circ} 20'$  S. and thence steer for the Cape together. May God grant us His holy guidance, and good progress. Amen.

Monday, April 8.—Safe arrival at the Cape on the 6th and 7th of April, 1652, to establish here, according to the orders of the Dutch East India Company, and for that Company, a general rendezvous; for that purpose we are to select the most suitable site on which to build a defensible fortress under the protection of which we have to take possession of such lands as are required for cultivation, and the breeding of all kinds of cattle, in order to refresh the ships; all the materials are in the ships, and every hand will be required that can be spared. Following Resolutions consequently adopted by the chief merchant Johan van Riebeeck and the Council convened by him Riebeeck to land with the Skippers Davit Coninck, Johan Hooghsaet, Symon Turver and some armed soldiers to inspect and fix upon a site—as was done provisionally yesterday—for the fortress, to commence work as soon as possible and be in a state of defence, that the ships may leave for Batavia. the *Reijger* and *Drommedaris* shall each retain 36 men on board to unload the vessels and fetch water and ballast; the yacht to have 11 men; all told 83 men. Each shall, when the weather is favourable, fish with its own sein, that the men on shore may remain at their work—the one that has caught much being obliged to share with the other that has caught little. To labour on shore the *Drommedaris* shall provide 50 men; the *Reijger* shall provide 39 men; and the *Goede Hoop* shall provide 5 men; making a total (including cooks and carpenters) of 100 men; besides the officers, assistants, chief barbers, &c. To further the works more rapidly, all the carpenters shall be set to work to commence a serviceable dwelling-house and store within the precincts of the fort. Regarding caterers, each party shall take on shore their own cook or his assistant to prepare food for the men twice a day, and give every one three half-quarters of wine every day, that all may be treated alike, and there be no cause for grumbling. Necessity of having a regular watch considered. Resolved that all shall equally be bound to mount guard—soldiers and sailors, including carpenters—not one excepted, that it may not be said that one has harder labour than another. Hence for arming the sailors eight muskets will be landed from the *Drommedaris* and six

1652.

20th Jan'y.  
29th March.

8th April.



1652.

8th April.

from the *Reijger*, with sabres and belongings for use on guard—the soldiers to have their own arms. Resolved also, in order to carry out these instructions, to publish a placeaat in accordance with the above Resolutions for the information of those on board and on shore.

19th April.

Friday, April 19.—Chiefs of *Salamander* give notice of the speedy departure of that vessel to Holland, *via* St. Helena, in the name of the Lord. Letters for the Directors prepared and ready. Read and signed by the Council. Resolved to entrust them to the commanders of the said ship for delivery, also to take on shore, as ordered by the Governor-General and Council of India, the men found secreted on board—Frederick Verburgh, assistant, and the boys Jan Willemsz : Bobbel of Delft and Cornelis Cornelissen of Rotterdam—for the present to be employed on land at the works of the fortress.

11th May.

Saturday, May 11.—Not more than 60 men daily at work, retarding greatly the progress of the fort, postponing for a long while the completion of the same, and keeping us defenceless. Departure of the *Drommedaris* and *Reijger* to Batavia will necessitate the diminution even of that number, as the ships cannot proceed short-handed. Arrival of the *Walvis* and *Oliphant* on the 7th ult. with many sick. Some of them brought on shore for refreshments. Resolved by the full Council to select from the said vessels the weakest and thinnest to be left here and sent on by the following ships from Holland. From the *Walvis* 30 men; from the *Oliphant*, 20 men; total 50 men. All victualled for three months—so that when well again they may assist the few left behind by the *Drommedaris* and the *Reijger* to work at the fort and assist to place it more speedily in a state of defence. That all may be well supplied, and the food sent from Hollaud to the Cape, somewhat economized it is understood, that for its thirty men the *Walvis* shall land 1,400 lbs. bread, 1 barrel meat, 1 barrel pork,  $\frac{1}{2}$  aum oil,  $\frac{1}{2}$  aum vinegar, some salt, 270 cans of wine, 3 casks barley or peas, and some stockfish, for three months. And the *Oliphant* 1,000 lbs. bread, 1 cask meat, 1 cask pork,  $\frac{1}{2}$  aum oil,  $\frac{1}{2}$  aum vinegar, some salt, 180 cans of wine, some stockfish, 2 casks of barley or peas, also for three months. Riebeeck to pass receipts for the same to the commanders. Among the 20 men of the *Oliphant* are to be reckoned the under barber Leendert Leendertsz, transferred to the *Drommedaris* and to proceed to Batavia. The boatswain Symon Cornelisz : transferred from the *Reijger* to the *Goede Hoop* to do his work on the latter as sailmaker, for which object his salary is increased from 10 to 14 gulden per month, and for which he shall serve out his time. The outward bound fleet every moment expected. May be greatly assisted by the crews whilst at anchor, without interfering with their ordinary work, to complete the fortress to the great benefit of the Company, and assist the few men still in good health, who are continually at work and getting fairly tired of it. Resolved



immediately after their arrival to propose to the commanders of the fleet and earnestly urge upon them the necessity that they shall during their stay here send as many men on shore as may be spared without interfering with the taking in of water, &c., that so the fortress may be sooner completed and the whale fishery and other necessary matters taken in hand more speedily for the benefit of the Company and its supporters. Will have tedious and disheartening labour with so few men, unless assisted with more hands for a good while. But this will be unnecessary with the assistance at hand of the passing ships, by which everything could soon be completed and a smaller garrison kept here, so that some of the men could be sent away to Batavia, as we intend doing at the first opportunity, for the benefit of the Company. Also to require from the ships mentioned some things highly necessary for the works, &c. Some rope for the yacht—or rather a cable for it in its dangerous position. Some food for the heavily working men—and in case of refusal to protest with justice against whatever loss, &c., the Company may in consequence suffer.

1652.  
—  
11th May.

Wednesday, September 4.—Misbehaviour of Corporal Joost van der Laeck, who in consequence has been apprehended. Necessity of appointing another to the vacancy. Paulus Petkauw of Dantzic, cadet, who has for many years served the Company in India, appointed provisional sergeant, and Willem Muller, cadet, likewise a fine sober person, to be provisional corporal, vice Paulus Petkauw, promoted, that the good order and discipline among the sailors and soldiers may not be infringed or injured. And whereas the Council is rather small in number, it was decided to appoint a judicial committee to try the charges brought by the Commander against van der Laeck, accused of opposition to, and defaming the character of the Commander, greatly damaging the authority necessary for the latter in the discharge of his duties. It was resolved to appoint the following persons to try the said case: the skipper of the yacht, Symon Turver, as president; Gerrit Abelsen, mate of the yacht; Paulus Petkauw and Jan van Gulyck, provisional corporals; before whom Riebeeck shall lay his charges through the assistant Pieter van der Helm, appointed provisional fiscal—that justice may be done.

4th Sept.

Tuesday, September 24.—Works with God's help so far advanced that we are at present in a fair way of defence against attacks of these natives. Necessary consequently to look about for some sources of profit to reimburse the Company for their costs hitherto. Decided that the yacht *Good Hope*, which is at present doing nothing, and can be easily spared, should proceed to the Island Elizabeth, which is full of seals and rock-rabbits (whose skins are fit for fur, and carcasses to extract oil from), about seven or eight miles from this to the north; also to go thence to the St. Helena Bay, situated on  $32\frac{2}{3}^{\circ}$  of S. latitude, and Saldanha Bay, about  $33\frac{3}{4}^{\circ}$  of S. latitude, for further discoveries as regards the coast between this and those places; also to inquire whether any

24th Sept.

1652.

—  
24th Sept.

trade be possible for the Company in those parts, as by extract from letter from Wingurla, signed by Skipper Davit Claesz: in 1651, and received at home per the *Reijger*, it appears that a Portuguese vessel some years ago had visited the Saldanha Bay and bought for old copper, gold, amber and elephants' tusks, and from General Van der Lyn at Amsterdam, that last year a small French vessel had met him at St. Helena, which had shipped at the places named a cargo of furs and oil of the value of a ton of gold—which is likewise known to Skipper Turver. It likewise appears from the journals of Joris Spilbergen that he had been in 1601 in the month of . . . at those places, had seen fires inland, showing the presence of people, and thought that very likely civet or musk and tusks might be obtained from them—which we have seen some of the savages wearing around their necks—whilst Herry tells us that those of Saldanha are well provided with these articles and with tusks. Spilbergen also states that said Island Elizabeth is full of seals fit for producing an immense quantity of oil. The skins would, as stated by well-informed persons at home, be worth a rix-dollar or three gulden per piece. The rock-rabbits have fine and valuable skins which alone would cover the costs of the voyage, if no trade could be established anywhere. Resolved to start the yacht at the commencement of next month in the name of the Lord, with as many casks to hold the blubber as we can spare, and send a Hottentot boy, with the permission of his parents, with the vessel to learn our language, and so in course of time serve as interpreter. To provide them for additional security also with two healthy soldiers, hoping that the Almighty will bless the proposed work for the service and benefit of the Company. Amen.

2nd October.

Wednesday, October 2nd.—Whereas Pieter Brackenier, boat-swain, will not confess, after various examinations, that he had said when speaking of the fugitives, that the anchor was gone and the cable would soon follow, and the witnesses declare that they did not see him speaking but heard his voice, on which it is hardly possible to depend, and as because of his denial no further proof can be obtained than that he had acknowledged to have said that he wished he was with the deserters, but had said so in a joking manner, it is resolved to liberate him, but as he is a loose and dirty prater, and not with quite clean hands, to drop him three times from the yard-arm and give him 100 lashes on his wet posterior before the mast—as appears from the sentence. To deprive him henceforth of the opportunity on shore to create discontent among the men, he is likewise ordered to proceed on board the yacht, to serve his time there. It was also resolved to sell the empty boxes and trifles belonging to the deserters and close their accounts, and confiscate the amounts which they may still claim from the Company, their persons to be considered as rogues, who against honour and oath have left the service. It was further resolved to place the train oil boilers at the Salt River, to be free from the smell at the



fort, and prevent any sickness which might result; and for the security of the boilers and materials, to erect a small fort of three roods square—made of sods and mounting two four-pounders—to be garrisoned by the oil boilers and whale fishermen. This will also tend to give more strength and security to Table Bay and rivers, all of which may then be defended by our guns so well that no one will be able to land against our wish. Our sloops in the river will be well secured and better than at the fort, where when the N. W. wind blows they are often sunk and, when drawn on shore, buried under the sand. The redoubt could be made without expense.

1652.  
—  
2nd October.

Wednesday, October 9th.—Jan Blanx, Jan van Leyen, Willem Huytjens and Gerrit Dirksz, already three times examined, are examined again for the fourth time and declare that they know no more than they have already confessed. Resolved to settle their case by verdict to-morrow and give them their well-deserved punishment, to prevent more trouble and to frighten others, for the greater security of the Company. The surgeon assistant Cornelis Hanz: Mayerp is to clear himself by oath from the charges brought against him by the prisoners.

9th October.

Thursday, October 10.—Jan van Leyen sentenced to have a bullet fired over his head. Jan Blanx to be keelhauled and receive 100 lashes before the mast, both to be put in irons for two years; Willem Huytjens and Gerrit Dirkse also to be put in irons for two years, for deserting and intending to proceed to Mozambique, a hostile country; and because Jan Blanx had said that he would injure the Company as much as possible. Jan Leyen was the first to speak of deserting, and had persuaded the two others. Sentence to be carried out to-morrow. The chief surgeon, Adriaen de Jager, and the under surgeon Cornelis Hanz: Mayerp, as no sufficient evidence has been obtained against them, are absolved, and Mr. Cornelis is discharged from prison.

10th October.

Tuesday, October 15th.—Would have much desired, in consequence of repeated orders, to take the soundings of Table Bay. Weather at present unfavourable for the purpose. Yacht prepared to visit St. Helena and Saldanha Bays for further discoveries. Resolved to start the yacht to-morrow. Shall first visit the bay behind Table Mountain, lately discovered overland by the book-keepers Van der Helm and Verburgh, and afterwards also in their company by the mate of the yacht, and considered to be a fine well-sheltered harbour, finer than Table Bay, entirely landlocked except in two places, having  $5\frac{1}{2}$  thousand yards from it fine forests to which a level road might be made, and where perhaps a Mozambique privateer might be caught. Commander of the yacht instructed to inquire into all these matters and take careful soundings, making a careful drawing of the position of the forest and of the whole—for which they may remain away three days, when they shall return and commence the work of sounding Table Bay, then they shall proceed to St. Helena and Saldanha Bays between

15th October.



1652.

15th October.

Robben Island and the mainland. Instructions and merchandise, ready a long while, are now entrusted to the officers of the yacht with proper invoice.

26th Nov.

Tuesday, November 26.—As it hath pleased God the Lord to acquaint us, by means of careful investigation, with the fine opportunity of obtaining seal skins about Saldanha Bay, manifested in the 2,700 skins found on a certain island there, beautiful and full of fine wool, from which seemingly large profits may accrue to the Company, judging by the expensive arrangements made by the French for the purpose, it is decided to send the yacht again to the said bays to have a large supply of skins ready for the return fleet from the Island lying at the entrance of the bay. To have the people at hand, as there are as many seals as on the Island Elizabeth, and at present no more men can be spared from the works to proceed to Dassen Island, 16 men are to remain on the said Island to kill and flay the seals, and nine men on board to pass to and fro and inquire whether any trade can be established in the said bay, for which shall be employed the little cargo on board. The yacht being ready and provided with more people and appliances for the object in view, the officers will be instructed to leave to-morrow.

5th Dec.

Thursday, December 5.—Thieving, roguery and other dirty malpractices among the common people, in spite of reiterated warnings, so much on the increase that nothing of the Company's property can be entrusted to any one, not even the sentries, who are in duty bound to prevent all crime and inform their superiors of it, according to honour and oath as required by the "articul brief." Instead of this they are discovered to be the worst offenders. Necessary therefore to provide against this, hence resolved, for the greater security of the Company and the safety of the fortress, to appoint a provost marshal to act when required as executioner—the more so as Jan Pietersz Slenwater, now in gaol, should be made a capital example of—not having hesitated, in spite of our orders published, to break from the wheelbarrows whilst on guard, by means of his gun or pike, the Company's copper, and steal the same to exchange it to the natives for ostrich eggs, roots and other rubbish, damaging the Company's cattle trade. Hence to prevent such crimes we have appointed to the said office Michiel Gleve of Straelsont, an able man, and of his own free will prepared to accept the office. Has promised to do his duty in everything, as ordered by the laws—his wages being increased from 9 to 15 gulden per month, together with the emoluments attached to the office, according to the statutes of India

9th Dec.

Monday, December 9.—Mattys de Haes leaves his post when on guard during the night between the 4th and 5th, in spite of our repeated warnings, to go and steal turnips in the Company's gardens. The next morning for fear of punishment he runs to the woods, and returning during the night enters the carpenter's house outside of the fort, breaks open three or four boxes there and steals

the contents. Had before this been guilty of various thefts, but each time been excused with a light punishment because of his honest parents. Being examined he acknowledged the offences, declaring that he had acted in despair and because he was daily called a thief. As, however, such offences are of very serious consequence, and to deter others, he should be punished most rigorously. It was resolved, as our Council, in consequence of the absence of the yacht, is very small, and the case is a very difficult one to deal with, to keep the prisoner in irons until the arrival of the return fleet from India in eight or nine weeks' time, and then to hand him over to the Commander and his Council

1652.  
—  
9th Dec.

#### ATTESTATIONS, DECLARATIONS, AND AFFIDAVITS.

4th September, 1652. — The undersigned declare that the Commander and a party had been out picnicking at the side of the river in the copse, about an eighth of an hour's walk from the fort; that the Commander having a headache after having caught some fish, which it was the intention to partake of on that spot, Corporal van der Laeck ordered the drummer to beat the drum, but was requested by Riebeeck not to do so as he could not bear the noise. The Corporal being drunk would not listen, and called Riebeeck a di'ol fellow (*Commandeur gij zijt een drollige Carel*), threatening to thrash the drummer if he desisted. Riebeeck was compelled in consequence personally to order the drummer to desist and go home; the latter was followed by the Corporal thrashing him with the cane. The Corporal thereupon returned to the table, placed in the little copse to eat the fish at, and grumbled, saying that the Commander had no right to order the drummer; that he alone had it; and if there had been war, he would have ordered the drummer to beat as long as he liked, without inquiring whether or not it pleased Riebeeck. The latter tried hard to quiet him, and told him that there was peace and no war, and that his head could not stand the noise. But the Corporal replied "Commander, you are a fool"; whereupon he was ordered to leave the company, and go to the fort; he would, however, not go, and continued his saucy conversation, three times repeating it that the Commander was a fool. Shortly afterwards three or four Hottentots arrived with some fine crayfish for the Commander, and escorted by the drummer who had met them on his way to the fort. The Corporal again attacked the drummer with his cane, and made such a noise, in spite of Riebeeck's orders to the contrary, that not only the drummer, but also the natives, who could not understand what was the matter, ran away, and so prevented Riebeeck from returning their attentions, as was his ordinary custom, with a present of tobacco and food, in order to gain their affection and confidence. The Corporal is consequently the cause of the natives having been made somewhat afraid of us, and the Commander being very much put out by his conduct, leaves for the fort, the whole party break-

4th Sept.



ing up—Signed by P. van der Helm, F. Verburgh, Jellis Frederik, Joost Carstensz and Symond Huybrechtsz. And as witnesses by Hendryck Hendryckse and Jacob Direksz Spaaz. — The above declaration is confirmed by oath.

4th September, 1652.—Declaration of the undersigned, that Corporal Joost van der Laeck returning to the fort searched for the drummer, and running after him like a madman thrashed him severely. Being told that the Commander was coming he answered "Who cares for the Commander? He may be Commander of the fort, but I am Commander of the soldiers. I have had enough of the Commander," &c., all being expressions savouring more of mutiny than becoming obedience.—Signed by Gerrit Abelsen, Cornelis Jansz : Majarp and P. van der Helm, Secretary. And as witness by Symon Pietersz : Turver.—The above confirmed by oath.

25th September, 1652.—Declaration of the undersigned, that when speaking together about the desertion during the night of Jan Blanx and Willem Huytjens, and likewise of Gerrit Dirksz : van Elsen and Jan van Leyden, Pieter Brackenier had said that he wished he was in their company, and uttered other words inclining to mutiny and the creation of rebellion among the men, who might thus also be tempted to take a wrong course, instead of obeying their officers in accordance with the rules of honour and the oath taken by them as required in the "Articles" signed by them.—Signed by Willem Gerritsen and Switsert Teunisz : Pyl in presence of P. van der Helm and the witnesses F. Verburgh and Symon Huybrechts.

26th September, 1652.—Declaration of the undersigned, that Harman Vogelaer, sitting in the guard-house among the men had, said, "To-day it is meat day, and if justice were done we ought now to have meat and fish together, but instead meat is withheld and only fish is given. What can half a fish help a man? And if this continues I wish that no more fish are caught, or that there is not a single one in the river," and such like unnecessary prating.—Signed by Valentyn Lehman and Pieter Witsinck, in presence of P. van der Helm, Secretary, and the witnesses Jellis Frederik and Joost Carstensz.

26th September, 1652.—Declaration of the undersigned, that some days ago Jan Swynshoof coming into the kitchen had said that Harman Vogelaer had incited the common people and told them that every day they have to work hard and do not get enough to eat, and that it is nobody's fault but that of Walvis, the butler, and only penguins are served out instead of pork and meat. Said Swynshoof having been examined by the Court had acknowledged that Vogelaer had said "May the Devil take Walvis for withholding from us the pork, and giving us instead, penguins without the knowledge of the Commander."—Signed by Joost Carstensz : and Sybrant Rinckes, in presence of P. van der Helm, Secretary, and the witnesses F. Verburgh and Pieter Witsinck.



## EDICTS (PLAKKATEN.)

ISSUED BY COMMANDER JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK AND COUNCIL FROM  
THE 9TH APRIL, 1652, TO THE 14TH OCTOBER, 1652.

1652

9th April

April 9, 1652.—Whereas we have been ordered by the Directors to proceed to the Cape in the *Drommedaris*, &c., and build a fortress for the safety of the Company's possessions there; and whereas such a new undertaking, especially as regards the natives of that country, who are very brutal, should be proceeded with with much prudence, and it will be necessary to be thoroughly on our guard, and in a state of thorough defence, and likewise to give them no cause for dissatisfaction, but on the contrary to do everything to show them all friendship and amiability, in order by affectionate intercourse to make them inclined to associate with us, and provide us with cattle of all sorts, and further to minimize whatever inconvenience we might otherwise suffer from them in our agricultural pursuits, &c., to be undertaken for the refreshment of the Company's ships, at present the chief object of the Directors, &c., &c. Therefore, to prevent all misfortune and promote the purpose mentioned, and further to maintain proper discipline and good order among the privates, who think little of the chief object to be attained, we have considered it highly necessary according to Resolution of 8th April, 1652, to promulgate in the form of a *placcaat* the following articles together with other very useful ones extracted from the general *articul brief*, and to affix them where they can be seen and read. Everyone on board of the three ships, sailors or soldiers, shall be bound, according to their oath sworn on the *articul brief*, when required, readily to proceed on shore by our order, and with such tools as may be required for building a fort, &c. They shall further labour with all possible zeal, as it behoves all honest servants to display, without trying to get off with a fine. That no one may complain of having to do more or less than another, the guards shall regularly and equally be selected from soldiers and sailors, without exception of person. Should, however, the Commander decide to proceed towards the interior for the purpose of exploration, he shall be at liberty to select such soldiers or sailors as he may deem necessary for his protection. And as this wild nation is very bold, thievish, and not at all to be trusted, everyone shall take good care of his arms and tools, that the natives may not steal them, as we in no wise wish, or for any consideration whatever desire, that they should, without our knowledge and consent, be pursued, beaten, or frightened with a sour face by anyone for the purpose of regaining what has been stolen. All arms and tools therefore shall be debited to those who have received them, and should anyone lose them, he shall receive 50 stripes at a post, and forfeit his rations 8 days, or undergo such other heavier punishment as the importance of the case shall require. And should anyone ill-treat, beat, or push a native—whether he be right or wrong—he shall in the pre-

1652.

9th April.

sence of the latter receive 50 lashes, that the natives may be made to understand that the deed has been against our will, and that we desire to associate with them in all kindness and friendliness, according to the orders and object of our Lords Principals. Therefore the various guards shall likewise be specially ordered also to keep an eye on this. And should they connive at any harm done to the natives, they shall (if convicted) receive the same punishment. Everyone is therefore earnestly admonished and ordered to show all friendliness and amiability to the natives, that in course of time they may be made accustomed to us by our friendly intercourse, and help to realize the object of the Masters. Everyone however, shall be on his guard and not venture among them so far or trust himself among them, that they may overpower and massacre, or carry him off. For that purpose everyone is expressly forbidden to go any distance, either alone or in company, from their places of watch or work, by day or night, whether for fishing or otherwise; and under no pretext whatever, except with special permission of the Commander, on pain of severe punishment. We therefore command all the guards at the outposts to remember this order, that no one may stray away or proceed beyond the furthest sentinels; as those neglecting it, or conniving at any transgression of the same, shall be punished in like manner. Whoever neglects his work or watch, or is found asleep, shall for the first time receive fifty lashes, and forfeit his wine rations for eight days; the latter shall go to the informer. But for the second offence he shall receive such heavier punishment as martial discipline requires. That the work may in every respect proceed better and quicker, everyone shall obey such person as shall, in the absence of the chief officers, be placed over them. Offenders to be punished as above. No fishing, therefore, and no throwing of seins shall be allowed except by consent of the Commander after having consulted with the Council. Everyone is likewise expressly forbidden, whatever his position or rank may be, to undertake the least barter or trade with the savages without the consent of the Commander — whether the articles be cattle, refreshments or anything else—that they may not be made to think too much of their cattle by the cupidity or imprudence of the men, and the Company in that way become the loser by seeing its wares thought little of. Whoever transgresses this order shall, according to the *artical brief*, be prosecuted in the severest possible form, forfeit his position and pay, and sent home disgraced. The cattle so bartered shall be confiscated for the Company, as it is our opinion that the interests of the Company greatly depend on this. All officers having any high or low authority over the sailors and soldiers are therefore ordered to carry out our instructions, and both on board and on shore to take care that these orders are promptly obeyed and maintained, and the service of the Company properly conducted. Whosoever shall be found indifferent or negligent on this head, shall be declared unfit to hold any office, and further fined in such



a manner as the exigency of the circumstances requires. Let therefore everyone avoid personal injury. Whosoever may offend in other matters not mentioned here, shall be tried according to the *articul brief* and the circumstances of the case. That no one may plead ignorance of these orders, we have had them, and some paragraphs from the *articul brief* read on board of all the ships and affixed on shore to a post erected for the purpose.

Thus done by the broad Council on the ship *Drommedaris*, this 9th April, 1652.

(Signed) J. VAN RIEBEECK.

1652.  
—  
9th April.

September 25th.—Whereas, during the preceding night, Jan Blanx, of Malines, arquebusier on the yacht *Goede Hoop*, Willem Huytjens of Maastricht, sailor, Gerrit Dirksz van Eltsen of Maastricht, and Jan van Leyen, soldiers stationed here, deserted inland, and we know not whither; and whereas we are told that more persons know of it, and also intend to desert, contrary to the *articul brief*; and whereas this may cause very serious results, especially here, as the fugitives may incite the natives against us, and as far as possible betray the fort and the Company's servants to these heathen and brutal people, or at least prevent us from carrying on any trade in cattle, &c., with them—men being especially required for this purpose—and whereas the roads would everywhere be made unsafe, so that we would be prevented from carrying out many matters for the benefit of the Company: We have, to make timely provision, deemed it necessary to warn each and all to refrain from such desertion, and to notify that those who know anything about such intentions should at once communicate them, failing which they shall be liable to such pains and penalties as have been decreed for fugitives and deserters, according to the *articul brief*. Informers shall receive a present of 50 Carolus guilders (*Carolus*=*Caroliën*=*Charles d'or*=f 12), and should they likewise be guilty, they will, in addition, be pardoned, and on the first occasion promoted to the first official vacancy. Those, however, who are not guilty and disclose any treason shall receive twice as much. And that no one may plead ignorance, &c.

25th Sept.

In the Fort Good Hope, 25th September, 1652.

(Signed) J. VAN RIEBEECK.

October 9th.—As at present some inhabitants of Saldanha commence to make an appearance here, who are very audacious, thievish, and not at all to be trusted, and as they are besides very fond of copper and iron, everyone is warned and expressly ordered to take good care of his arms and tools (of every description), that these natives may not rob him. Whatever may be stolen shall be debited against him, and he shall moreover receive 100 lashes, or even be punished more severely, as circumstances may require, as we do not in any way, and for no consideration in the world, desire that any of our people shall do the natives any harm; or that the latter, should they steal or carry anything away, shall be pursued or frightened, but rather treated with kind-

9th October.



1652.

9th October.

ness, to make them accustomed to our friendly intercourse and more inclined towards us, that we may the more readily find out what profits may in course of time fall to the Company by trading with them, &c. All therefore, without exception, on board or on shore, are expressly ordered not to cause the least annoyance to any one of the natives, or to trouble them in any way, but to treat them in a friendly manner, on the pains and penalties above mentioned. Moreover, no one shall without our knowledge or consent buy or barter anything from them; and should he find musk, civet, ivory, cattle, sheep, &c., among them, he shall induce them to bring their articles to the fort, to be bought for the Company. Offenders to forfeit what they have bought, and to be arbitrarily punished according to circumstances. And as we observe that notwithstanding our daily admonitions and reiterated orders, some do not hesitate in the least to run into the garden and there pluck the young fruit and spoil it, all are warned henceforth to refrain from doing so and not to come near to or enter the said gardens, as all offenders will be punished for twelve months at the public works without pay, and receive in addition 100 lashes, without any nonsense (*sonder simulatie*). No one shall on Sunday or any other day, without our consent proceed outside the fort a greater distance than half a musket shot, and always remain within sight of the same. Offenders will forfeit eight days' wine allowance and receive fifty blows with the butt of a musket or a rope's end, as in consequence of the arrival of the Saldanhars the roads are no longer so safe. Let everyone therefore take care, and avoid punishment. Much less shall anyone absent himself in the evening, or remain outside, but everyone shall proceed to his proper quarters and sleeping place, and take care that when the roll is called he is inside. Offenders shall be heavily punished according to the exigencies of the case. And as the barracks and other dwellings are made of wood and covered with reeds and therefore can be easily burnt, everyone, without exception, is forbidden to burn any light either by day or night, or to bring any burning matches in the houses or the barracks, or to drink any tobacco, or allow any to be drunk, except at the spot beneath the gate appointed for the purpose. Offenders, in addition to their usual work, to do half as much more and to receive no wine, or to be punished more severely according to circumstances. The sergeants and corporals of the guard shall pay strict attention to this, and should any offence of this nature occur through their connivance, they shall be held liable. And as many absent themselves from daily prayer, and the Sunday Christian exercises and exhortations—attending very little to their religion, which all true Christians, for the sake of their consciences, should principally, and before all other things cherish carefully, if the blessing of the Lord on this place is not to be withheld, and he does not wish to forfeit the grace of the Lord—everyone, whoever he may be, is warned henceforth to attend at the place appointed for the purpose;

and those remaining absent are notified that they shall forfeit six days' wine rations for the first offence, and one month's pay for the second in addition; whilst for the third time they shall be condemned to work in chains for a whole year at the public works. And that no one may plead ignorance, &c., this has been publicly read and affixed with some Batavia Statutes concerning soldiers and arquebusiers stationed here for their information.

(Signed) J. VAN RIEBEECK.

In the Fort Good Hope, 9th October, 1652.

1652.  
9th October.

October 14.—Arrival of Saldanha natives, thievish and not to be trusted—likewise hankering after iron and copper. All warned to be particularly careful of their arms and tools, lest they be stolen; defaulters to be charged with the loss and likewise to receive 100 cuts or even severer punishment as circumstances may require. The natives to be injured under no consideration whatever, and when stealing not to be followed or frightened, but to be kindly treated, to create a friendly feeling in them and likewise confidence, that we may know them better and be able to treat with them, to discover what trade may be opened with them for the benefit of the Company. Order consequently to all, without exception, not to molest the natives in any way but to treat them kindly. Punishment as above, or in the presence of the natives No one to barter with the natives but to inform the Commander of everything discovered in the shape of musk, civet, ivory, cattle, sheep, &c., that the exchange may be for the benefit of the Company. Defaulters to suffer confiscation of the goods, &c., and to be punished according to circumstances. All garden thieves stealing the young fruit cautioned. Offenders to be punished with 12 months at the works without pay, and with 100 cuts, or more severely if necessary, No one to go beyond the fort on Sundays or weekdays, without consent, further than half the distance of a musket shot and without being lost sight of, under the penalty of losing eight days' wine allowance, and receiving 50 blows with the butt end of a musket or a rope; the arrival of the Saldanhars having made the roads unsafe. Hence all should be careful. All to be present at night when the muster roll is read. All habitations being of wood and covered with reeds, precautions against fire are necessary—rules accordingly—smoking only permitted under the gate. Punishment: half of ordinary work added, no wine allowance; or heavier punishment. The guard to be particularly careful in carrying out these orders, being held responsible. Those absenting themselves from daily prayer and the Sunday devotions will for the first time forfeit eight days' wine allowance, for the second time in addition lose one month's pay, but for the third time be condemned to serve in irons for one year without pay. That no one may pretend ignorance this is publicly read and affixed at the proper place together with certain articles from the Batavia Statutes referring to soldiers, &c., on shore and appended to this.

J. VAN RIEBEECK.



1652.

20th April.

## LETTERS AND DOCUMENTS RECEIVED.

## No. 9.—TO RIEBEECK AND COUNCIL.

You will have seen from your instructions why the Seventeen have thought proper to establish a stronghold and rendezvous for the Company's ships at the Cape, to be occupied and defended by 70 or 80 men. Since then we have had great reason to apprehend that one or other foreign nation, especially the English, on groundless pretences and for other reasons, might be induced to land at the Cape with a strong detachment to lie in wait for the Company's ships, and endeavour to surprise the fort in order the more easily to gain their object, the more so as rumours fly about that they have fitted out a large fleet to St Helena to intercept the Company's ships. Though we do not exactly believe this, we are still to be prepared for them. Therefore at the last meeting of the Seventeen it was decided to order you—that you may always be in a proper state of defence—to strengthen your garrison with 25 military, and draw the men from the ships *Malacca*, *Princesse Royale*, *West Vrieslandt* and *Selandia*, together with the provisions required for them—with this proviso, that those who are ill on the said ships shall be selected for the purpose, that they may be restored to health on shore, and do the work of the Company. You shall pay particular attention to this, and this letter shall be our authorization to you. In the meantime we shall expect to hear from you how things are going on there, and whether the establishment promises to be successful.

(Signed)

P. DE CARPENTIER.

JEAN LEGOUCHE.

ZACHARIAS RODE.

Amsterdam, 20th April, 1652.

## No. 10.—TO RIEBEECK AND COUNCIL AT THE CAPE.

24th July.

You will see what we have written to India regarding the war between this State and the new Republic of England in the accompanying copy, and as it has been decided to forward this despatch to Batavia, Surat and Persia, you will send the two first of the three vessels (a yacht and two galiots) arriving at the Cape at once to Batavia. In case the two first are both galiots, the second galiot shall proceed from the Cape to Gombroon in Persia or to Surat, as wind or weather may be favourable for one or other of these two places, it being our intention that the yacht shall in any case proceed to Batavia, and that one of the galiots shall proceed to Gombroon or Surat. As we have ordered the India Council that, because of the dreadful war now broken out, all return ships shall touch at the Cape, and having refreshed themselves leave in company for the Fatherland, without daring to separate from each other, you shall do your best to assist them to the utmost, that



they may proceed without calling at St. Helena. You are likewise recommended to put the fort in such a state of defence that it may be prepared for all unexpected attacks from the English and other enemies. In the event of your requiring any more men you may draw ten or twenty from the yacht, namely, such as are ill and easily restored to health after having been refreshed on shore. Will write you again with the following ships.

1652.  
—  
24th July.

(Signed) HANS VAN LOON, J. C. HAYMAN, P. DE CARPENTIER,  
CORNELIS CONINCK, J. J. CRUYVELT, J. CARDON, A. DE  
GROOT.

Amsterdam, 24th July, 1652.

---

NO. 11.—TO THE GOVERNOR-GENERAL AND COUNCIL OF INDIA.  
(FROM THE CHAMBER OF SEVENTEEN.)

With the yachts *De Leeuw* and *Het Wapen van Batavia* we in March last acquainted you with the probable war between this State and the new Republic in England, and which has now been declared, as you may gather from the enclosed, being copy of despatch sent by three different routes to Aleppo for the respective directors of Persia, Surat and Coromandel, and likewise to serve for your information. And as we have received your letters dated 19th December, 1651, on the 28th and 29th June, informing us that our naval power in India had from various causes been much weakened, we intend to provide you with ships and men, as may be required, especially if the five following ships arrive safely, in order to prosecute this war most vigorously not only against the English but also the Portuguese, and with such prudence that we do not do too much at once, but endeavour to ruin first of all those who can do us the greatest injury, viz., the English, who, as we read in your letter, assist the Portuguese to the best of their power, and are to be attacked first, so that the Portuguese, deprived of their assistance, may be more easily followed up. It is certain that the English nation, especially after having beheaded their king and adopted a new form of Government, never had any intention to live on friendly terms with our Government but determined to obtain undivided dominion over the sea unjustly, which no nation can allow, and certainly not ours, the free Netherland nation, which has now battled for about 80 years for liberty and at last obtained it with great honour for itself and posterity. We are therefore compelled to oppose this usurpation to the utmost of our power, and also the usurpers themselves, and prosecute them with all the power at our command where they have any commerce, destroying their ships, according to the instructions of the States-General in their letter of 18th July. We are sure that they had this object in view a very long time already, having advised their servants in India to be on their guard, so that it is possible that in conjunction with the Portuguese they may attack us. It has consequently

1651. — been made necessary to transmit this warning to you by different routes. Nor are we at all comfortable about the five ships on the way, as it is said that Admiral Blake has taken a Northern course to intercept the Company's ships, unless Admiral Tromp of ours, being at sea with a fleet of 100 ships, has followed him or in some way or another created a diversion, which we long to hear of. We pray God daily that He may ward off such a great calamity from the Company. To His Holy guardianship we confide you.

(Signed by the Committee of the Seventeen) HANS VAN LOON,  
J. C. HAYMAN 1652, P. DE CARPENTIER, CORNELIS CONINCK,  
J. J. CRUYVELT, J. CARDON, A. DE GROOT.

---

No. 12.—FROM THE SAME.

24th July.

In March last with the yachts *De Leeuw* and *Het Wapen van Batavia* we informed the India Council of the likelihood of the war with England, and that we would send further news by express to guide them. And whereas our ambassadors, after having been detained in London a long while without being able to come to a settlement (however much on our side we were prepared to come to terms, and adduced all rational and fair conditions for the retention of mutual friendship), had to return home unsuccessful, and as—whilst the negotiations were proceeding— all imaginable hostility was shown towards us by the seizure of our ships without any distinction whatever;—the States-General, in order to maintain their Republic and its right to free navigation and trade, especially on the ocean, have been compelled to equip a large fleet to protect the nation from all attacks, ward off all violence, and at the same time do as much injury as possible to the English nation. This has also been communicated to us by the States-General in their letter to us of the 18th, with the command to carry out this war faithfully in the East Indies. Considering the importance of the matter, and that the English Ministry may give timely notice to their servants in India and also orders to seize our ships there, we have not dared to delay in sending you the above information *via* Venice, Leghorn and Marseilles to Aleppo, with orders to do your best to capture all English ships wherever possible. But the captured ships are not to be plundered or injured. A proper inventory shall be taken of their contents, which are to be applied to the profit of the Company. Of this you shall not neglect to keep a good account (until you receive other orders from this country or Batavia). It will be left to your own discretion what to do with the prisoners — whether to keep them confined or let them go. You will have to adopt the best plan in the interest of the Company to diminish the strength of the enemy. You are recommended to act with the greatest prudence, forethought, and courage as the case may require, and we doubt not that the Lord God, who knows that this war has been forced upon our

State against its meaning and intention, will bless our efforts. For the rest we shall abide by the instructions which you may receive from the India Council.

1652.  
24th July.

(Signed by the Commissioners of the respective Chambers) HANS-VAN LOON, J. C. HAYMAN 1652, P. DE CARPENTIER, CORNELIS CONINCK, J. J. CRUYVELT, J. CARDON, A. DE GROOT. Amsterdam, 24th July, 1652.

The letters for Surat and Coromandel having the same contents, you shall use your best endeavours to forward in the safest way to their destination.

Address of the above letter: Honourable, prudent, very discreet. The Officers in the service of the General Netherland East India Company stationed at Gombroon in Persia or Surat, wherever this may first arrive.

NO. 13. — EXTRACT FROM RESOLUTION OF CHAMBER OF SEVENTEEN, REPRESENTING THE COMPANY.

This 19th August, 1652. Monday forenoon.—After discussion it was decided to commission Messrs. Pieter de Carpentier, Jacob Claesz: Hayman, Paulus Verschuer and Allart de Groot, together with the Company's Advocate, to consider the instructions to be given to the Commander at the Cape and the Commanders and officers of the return ships, which are expected at the Cape in 1653, in order that they may be guided by it. Said Commissioners to report what steps may be required, as this matter has been entrusted to them alone.

(Signed) C. DE GRAEFF, EVERARD VAN BLEYSWYCK, JAN JACOB ROCH, ZACHARIAS RODE, JAN MUNTER, P. BOUDAAN, COURTEN, NICOLAAS VAN DER MERCT, JOHAN HULST, J. VAN DER CHYS, CORNELIS HUYBRECHTS.

No. 14.

The accompanying letter had been sent away yesterday already when we received news that the *Orangien* and *Breda* were lying safely in Westhaven in company of 42 Dutch men-of-war, which, in consequence of stormy weather, had taken shelter in various harbours of that Island. Hope that they will soon arrive in safety. Inform the India Council of it. You shall have as many copies made of our instructions as there are return ships proceeding home, to give a copy to every Commander, and confirming the same with your signature, by virtue of the powers conveyed in the original documents, and which you shall show to them in order to obtain credence more readily.

(Signed by the Commissioners of the Chamber of Seventeen-- P. DE CARPENTIER, J. C. HAYMAN 1652, PAULUS VERSCHUER, A. DE GROOT.

Amsterdam, 21st August, 1652.



1652.

## No. 15.

20th August. We are still abiding by what we wrote you on the 24th July. On the 16th inst. the *Salamander*, *Lastdrager* and *Coninck Davit* safely arrived, having encountered a severe storm off Shetland and parted from the *Breda* and *Orangien*. Are afraid that some misfortune has happened to them. We enclose extract from Resolution of the Seventeen and Instructions for the Commanders of the return fleet, which are to arrive at the Cape in 1653—that they may be guided thereby on their voyage homeward. You are to take care that these our secret instructions become known to nobody except yourself and the Commanders of the return fleet at the moment of their departure.

(Signed by the Commissioners of the Seventeen) P. DE  
CARPENTIER, J. C. HAYMAN 1652, PAULUS VERSCHUER, A.  
DE GROOT.

Amsterdam, 20th August, 1652.

---

No. 16.—THE INSTRUCTIONS MENTIONED ABOVE FOR THE FLEET  
OF 1653, HOMEWARD BOUND.

20th August. As there is at present war between the Netherlands and England, and the latter nation is doing its best to trammel us and ruin our ships, so that it is of the utmost importance to the Company that its homeward bound ships should arrive together in our ports, we have, in accordance with the Instructions of the Seventeen given to us, thought it advisable, for the better security of the return ships, to order you as follows. That on your arrival at the Cape you shall wait for the ships despatched from Batavia after yourselves, until the end of March, or at the longest the 10th of April. If all the other ships have arrived before you, you shall proceed from the Cape as quickly as you can. But if before the end of March or 10th April ships are still expected, you shall, when the appointed time has elapsed, proceed homeward, and during your stay at the Cape provide yourselves with refreshments and water sufficient that you need not touch at St. Helena. Before you leave the Cape, the Commander of the fortress shall first read to the Commanders and officers of all the ships of the fleet destined for the Fatherland, and afterwards hand them a copy of the annexed secret orders, which you shall obey as if they had been inserted in this, instructing you how you shall steer your course for the Fatherland.

(Signed P. DE CARPENTIER, J. C. HAYMAN 1652, PAULUS  
VERSCHUER, A. DE GROOT.

Amsterdam, 20th August, 1652.

---

No. 17.—THIS DESPATCH IS PARTLY A DUPLICATE OF No. 15, WITH UNIMPORTANT DIFFERENCES IN EXPRESSION.

1652.

It has this added. At the next meeting of the Seventeen in September, more definite orders will be given regarding the despatch of the return fleet from Batavia for your guidance also, when your general and special letters will also be answered.

20th August.

(Signed by the Commissioners of the Chamber of Seventeen) P. DE CARPENTIER, J. C. HAYMAN 1652, PAULUS VERSCHUER, A. DE GROOT.

Amsterdam, 20th August, 1652.

No. 18.—SECRET INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE COMMANDERS AND OFFICERS OF THE NETHERLANDS EAST INDIA RETURN SHIPS, EXPECTED AT THE CAPE IN 1653, TO GUIDE THEM ON THEIR VOYAGE HOME.

To take the safest course, the ships shall proceed without touching at St. Helena, and having gained the latitude of Corfu and Flores, you shall thence direct your course so that you may pass between Iceland and the Faroe Islands, and have good room to come round by the north of Shetland and sail as close to the coast of Norway as may be safe, in order not to be blown on shore there. You are not to go so far north that you fall into the bend of Drontheim, but you shall steer your course so that you reach the point of Stadt in Norway, and so on, keeping near the coast until you reach our ports—always taking care to keep away at such a distance that you may always be able to have a wide berth with every wind. You shall keep the order perfectly secret, and so manage that it shall be known to no one but the Commanders and skippers. The mates shall not be told of it before you have reached the latitude of Corfu and Flores. You and the mates shall be mindful of the oath taken by you all, that this order be kept so secret that not one of the crew shall become acquainted with it, in order to avoid all unpleasantness as much as possible, which would otherwise be caused.

20th August.

(Signed) P. DE CARPENTIER, J. C. HAYMAN 1652, PAULUS VERSCHUER, A. DE GROOT.

Amsterdam, 20th August, 1652.

No. 19.—TO THE COMMANDER AND OFFICERS AT THE FORT THE GOOD HOPE.

With the galiots, the *Zwarte Vos* from Amsterdam and the *Roode Vos* from Hoorn, which left Texel the 4th and 10th September, the Commissioners of Secret Instructions have sent you orders for the regulation of the course of the homeward bound ships in 1653, and likewise copy of our advices *via* Aleppo to Persia, Surat and Coromandel, forwarded to the Commanders there on the 24th July

17th Sept.

1652.  
—  
17th Sept.

last regarding the war with England, of all which the triplicates are sent to you with this pinnace. From the letters of the 24th July to the India Council you will have observed the safe arrival of the six earliest return ships, and from the letters of the 20th August written by the Commissioners of Secret Instructions to you, the safe appearance of the *Salamander*, *Lastdrager* and *Coninck Davit* for Amsterdam. On the 9th September the *Orangien* arrived for Zeeland, and on the 10th the *Breda* for Hoorn, which had both escaped the violent storm off Shetland and the English fleet cruising about there. Received your letter of 18th April, 1652, per *Salamander*, also your Journal and Resolutions adopted by you on the voyage, and at the Cape, from which we were pleased to be informed of your safe arrival on 6th and 7th April, the selection of the site for a fort and also the work done to it. Hope that it is already in a proper state of defence. We send you all the tools asked for, as far as we are able to collect them—the rest will follow. In our letters of 24th July you were told to send one galiot to Gombroon in Persia or to Surat with the despatches, and the other to Batavia, and we hope that this has been done before these despatches reach you. You will do your best to despatch the yacht *Haes* as soon as possible to Batavia with the despatches, that the Council may be acquainted in time with the condition of affairs here, and our advices. Have no time to answer your letter now completely but will do so by the next vessels.

(Signed by the Commissioners) J. C. HAYMAN 1652, P. DE CARPENTIER, ZACHARIAS RODE, JAN MUNTER, JORIS BACKERSZ, C. DE GRAEFF, FRANS MEERMAN, JANZ CADON, PAULUS VERSCHUER, JOHAN HULST.

Amsterdam, 17th September, 1652.

Address, with the seal well preserved, Honourable, prudent, very discreet, the Commander and Chiefs at the Cape of Good Hope, in the Fort The Good Hope, per the pinnace the *Haes* which may God preserve.

---

NO. 20.—FROM THE AMSTERDAM CHAMBER.

21st October.

Our last to you was dated 18th April, 1652, per *Malacca*, *Princesse Royael* and the yacht *Tortelduyff*, copies of which and of the instructions which accompanied them go by this opportunity. With the *Salamander* we received yours of the 18th April, 1652, containing for the Chamber of Seventeen your Journals kept, and Resolutions taken on board and at the Cape, also the personal letter written by the Commander to this Chamber, from which we were glad to hear of your safe arrival, also that you had selected a site for a fort and were busy erecting one. The tools required by you have been sent by the *Haes*, which left on 28th September last, with invoice and originals of the copies



forwarded now. This goes with the *Diamant*, *Lastdrager* and *Winthont*. By order of the Seventeen we also send you plain authority empowering you to require of the Commanders of the vessels touching at the Cape, and for which you shall deliver proper acknowledgments, whatever you may be in need of, whether men or provisions, and the ships may easily render. The officers of these three departing ships have likewise received written instructions to provide you with what you require; this shall be a standing order for all following ships. Will also do our best to let the other Chambers do the same thing as regards their outgoing ships, by which means we trust you will be well provided with necessaries. In the letter of the Chamber of Seventeen dated 24th July last you were informed of the war with England, and we hope that you have brought the fort into such a state of defence that it may be able to meet all unexpected attacks of the English or others, and that you will be particularly on your guard against all and everyone. We enclose three or four copies of the printed manifestos of this State against the English. The drawing of the fort we shall expect in time, and also would like to know into what a state of defence you have brought it, with what garrison, ammunition, provisions, &c., you remain provided, and what you may still require, that we may here make proper arrangements to meet your wants. Also whether, and in what way you are able to agree with the natives, and what appearance there is of any trade with them, and of what that commerce would consist; likewise the character of the country and the people, and what success may be expected there. The request of the Commander to be relieved shall be communicated to the next meeting of the Seventeen, for consideration and resolution. What has been forgotten in this shall be supplemented with the ships leaving in autumn.

1652.  
21st October.

J. J. CRUYVELT, JORIS BACKERSZ, JACOB DRUYVENSTEYN,  
JACOBUS BAS, C. N. GRAEFF, JOAN HUYDECOOPER, P. DE  
CARPENTIER, ZACHARIAS RODE, JEAN LEGOUCHE, DANIEL  
BERNARTS.

Amsterdam, 21st October, 1652.

---

No. 21.

The Directors of the General Company to all the Commanders and officers of the Company's ships leaving for Batavia and returning thence touching at the Cape, greeting. We let you know that as the Seventeen have decided to build a fort at the Cape and occupy it with the necessary garrison to refresh the passing ships of the Company, and as the said garrison cannot subsist on their own resources but must necessarily be provided with stores from Batavia or Holland, we have therefore, according to the authority granted us by the Chamber of Seventeen dated the 4th instant, resolved to order the Commanders of all ships, going and returning, that at the request of the Commander and officers of the fort they shall assist

21st October.

1652. them with such supplies regarding men and stores as may be  
 21st October. required, and the service of the Company demands, and as the ships  
 may be able to give.—Ordered by the Chamber of Seventeen at  
 the meeting of the Chamber at Amsterdam this 21st October, 1652.

(Signed) JORIS BACKERSZ, JACOB DRUYVENSTEYN, JACOBUS  
 BAS, C. N. GRAEFF, JOAN HUYDECOPER, P. DE CARPEN-  
 TIER, ZACHARIAS RODE, JEAN LEGOUCHE, DANIEL  
 BERNARTS, J. J. CRUYVELT.

---

NO. 22.—TO THE COMMANDER AND OFFICERS OF THE  
 SHIP————

21st October. As before this the Chamber of Seventeen decided to build a fort  
 at the Cape and place a garrison in it, that the passing ships of the  
 Company might always be refreshed, and as said fort and garrison  
 cannot depend on their own resources, but must necessarily be  
 assisted from home or Batavia, the Chamber of Amsterdam has  
 been ordered by that of the Seventeen to despatch in the interests  
 of said fort and its occupants an open letter or deed by which all  
 Commanders and officers of the said Company voyaging to and fro  
 and touching at the Cape are ordered to assist the Commander and  
 officers of the fort mentioned, at their request and under proper  
 acknowledgment, with such supplies in the form of victuals, ammuni-  
 tion and men (the latter either by discharge or exchange) as may  
 be required and the service of the Company needs, and also as the  
 ships may be able to spare. In order that this may not come upon  
 you unexpectedly we have resolved to give you notice beforehand,  
 and to order and impress upon you that you shall carry out these  
 intentions of the Company and obey the orders from Amsterdam.

Done in the Chamber of Amsterdam, 21st October, 1652.

Agrees with the original. (Signed by the Advocate of the  
 Company) P. VAN DAM.

---

NO. 23.—FROM THE AMSTERDAM CHAMBER.

19th Dec. With the *Diamant*, *Lastdrager* and *Winthont*, we have sent you  
 ours of the 21st October, copy of which you now receive. This goes  
 with the *Weesp* and *Muyden*. The first mentioned three ships,  
 after having been detained by contrary winds, were compelled in  
 company of a large fleet of merchant vessels to return home, but  
 the *Diamant* and *Lastdrager* being unable to procure pilots were  
 unable to come in safely and struck on the banks of Schouwen,  
 where the *Diamant* lost its rudder and became very leaky, but it  
 finally reached a channel in which it has been found possible  
 to discharge its cargo. Hope that the ship will be saved. The  
*Lastdrager* by bumping has also become leaky, and been obliged to  
 return to Texel. The consequence is that both these ships will be  
 unable to proceed on the voyage, but the *Winthont* having arrived  
 safely, went to sea again on the 14th. Trust that with God's

blessing it will have a safe voyage. We have sent to the Chamber of Zealand copies of our former despatches to you, and which we also now send by this opportunity to you, to be placed in the letter boxes of its departing ships, so that you will now be provided with all the stores required. What is forgotten in this will be provided for with the ships leaving in spring.

P. DE CARPENTIER, JEAN LEGOUCHE, JACOBUS BAS, THOMAS BROERS, JAN MUNTER.  
Amsterdam, 19th December, 1652.

1652.  
—  
19th Dec.

---

No. 24. — RECEIPTS signed by the Skipper of the *Paarl*, &c., for Cape Cargo on board from Batavia.

---

No. 25.—TO RIEBEECK. FROM BATAVIA.

With the *Walvisch*, the *Reijger*, and the *Drommedaris*, which arrived on the 2nd July last, and the *Hoff van Zeelandt* on the 3rd August, we received your pleasant letters dated 15th, 16th, 25th and 30th May, from which we gathered that you had arrived safely and begun your work at the fort, as a defence for the station to accommodate the passing ships, according to resolutions of the Seventeen communicated to us by that Chamber last year. We did not for a moment doubt that that Resolution would be carried into effect, and we therefore sent you last year with the fleet of the Hon. Van Teylingen various kinds of seeds and other trifles, as the enclosed invoice will show. But you had not yet arrived. We will not fail in sending such goods and necessities as you are in need of and we are able to supply. With the said ships you have made a large demand of merchandise and other necessities which it is impossible for us to supply, because being bulky articles the ships would be very much encumbered by them and arrive home without a full cargo, which would be injurious to the Company, and as we do not possess a great part of them we could not supply you, especially home tools and necessities, which in consequence of the extensive arrangements in India are never abundantly supplied—so that it would be better for you to ask for them from home, not doubting that the Seventeen will supply you satisfactorily. But not to fail altogether in complying with your demands, we have sent you some trifles with the *Paarl*, *Malacca*, *Prinsesse Royael*, *Walvis* and 't *Hoff van Zeelandt*, as you may see from the accompanying invoice, to the amount of f. 6,019 11 4, for which you will please credit the General Company. All the ships expected this year have safely arrived, excepting the *West Vrieslandt* which is tarrying a long while. God grant that she may have touched at the Cape and soon make her appearance. The said five ships proceed to the Cape there to await the others, which are still taking in cargo, or have not yet arrived, in order that all may in

24th Dec.



1652.  
—  
24th Dec.

company sail for home *via* St. Helena or straight on, as may be judged best. From their letters we have gathered what the Seventeen have ordered regarding your station, and in case the *West Vrieslandt* has not touched at the Cape we send back to you the letter sent by the Chamber per last ships to conduct yourselves in strict accordance with the orders. We have not been able to persuade any Chinese to leave their country for such a distant land and with such uncertain prospects; neither can we at the moment send any slaves, because we require them ourselves. We trust that the natives have come nearer and settled under the fortress, and that they will be sufficiently inclined for service to do all kinds of work instead of slaves, and where if possible they should be kept by means of little presents. We likewise do not send any rice, which is very scarce at Batavia, but instead we forward four tons of Java beans and two tons green peas. You must take what you require from the passing ships, in order not to run short. The accounts of the assistant Frederick Verburgh and Cornelis Jong: who stowed themselves away last year in the *Salamander*, accompany this at your request, also certificates of good conduct to be of service to them. Henceforth, however, you shall not allow such runaways to remain there, but send them back to us by first opportunity, that their example be not followed by others.

(Signed by the India Council) CAREL REINIERSZ, JOAN MAETSUYKER, CAREL HARTZINCK, JOAN CUNÆUS, CORN: CÆSAR, D. J. STEUR.

In the Castle of Batavia, 24th December, 1652.

## LETTERS AND DOCUMENTS DESPATCHED.

No.—14.—BATAVIA—TO THE INDIA COUNCIL BY THE “MUYDEN.”

26th April.

26th April, 1653.—Hon. Demmer and his five ships arrived here on 2nd and 6th March and remained seven weeks. Waited for the other ships and left on the 17th instant about two in the morning for Holland. The same day the *Haes* and *Winthont* sailed for Batavia. On the 18th the *Muyden* arrived, Skipper Evert Theunissen Harnay. Left Texel on 26th Dec.; touched nowhere; a few sick on board, all convalescent after being well refreshed. Took out of her 22 or 23 of the weakest men to strengthen the garrison, according to orders received per *Oliphant via* Batavia from the Directors and dated 20th April last. Also landed provisions in proportion, as in consequence of the scarcity of food we had discharged a lot of men to Batavia and Holland, not having anything to feed them with. But this will be mended if the Directors' orders are obeyed and the ships touch here.

By the said five ships we received your consignment according to invoice, excepting 1,000 lbs. gunpowder shipped on board the *Princesse Royal* and *Malacca*, but as we had not received an

invoice of the same we could not claim it—they consequently left with it. Did not obtain a grain of rice, which goes beyond our comprehension, as it was the chief want felt, as stated with the *Haes* and *Winthout*.

Our letters to Holland and Batavia, and likewise those of the Hon. Demmer, will tell you how badly we were still off for provisions after the ships' departure. In order not to be put to inconvenience we have drawn supplies from the *Muyden*, as the receipts will show, so that excepting bread and rice we are well provided. Our bread and rice will not last longer than four months, and if like last year no vessels arrive before that time we shall be again without bread. We therefore wish to be provided by you with 20 tons rice, annually, which can be better preserved than bread, which latter suffers much from atmospheric influence, as we have no suitable dry casks to keep it in, excepting empty leaguers, firkins, &c., thoroughly unfit for such a purpose.

Some chains for criminals we also require; likewise heavy beams, bricks and lime for reasons stated in our preceding letter, and to be, in annexed copy of letter to the Masters. A great deal may be stowed away in the chains, and on the upper decks of the large ships, if the skippers would only like to do so.

Had a conversation with Hon. Demmer regarding the settlement of freemen here; but he adduced such good arguments to prove the inconvenience of the plan that we did not say a word about it to the Masters, whose chief object is to have a station here for breeding cattle to refresh the crews, and rear vegetables, which would have been more abundant if the ships had only brought us seeds in sufficient quantity. Demmer's letters and our journals will show how well European vegetables thrive here. You will also observe from those documents what prospects of trade and profit for the Company may be looked for in time.

*Roode Vos* and *West Vrieslandt* not yet arrived. Afraid that in consequence of the troubles on board the latter ship, she will never put in an appearance. Hope God will save the Company from such a misfortune. Demmer left on the 17th, the *Muyden* arrived on the 18th, on the 19th the *Oliphant* under Hon. Frisius, and on the 22nd the *Provintie*, bringing the open instructions of the Masters and notice of the war. These instructions stated that when the fleet was leaving, certain secret orders were to be handed over to the chief officers, communicating the course to be taken towards home.

Immediately after the departure of the fleet we were visited by many natives with much cattle. They had come to get copper and tobacco, which the Saldanhars told them could be obtained, and stated that if other natives further inland knew of this, they also would come with cattle, tusks, feathers, &c. If this does happen we will soon be out of our supplies, therefore if you have any thick yellow plate copper to spare, please send it. Will also ask a larger quantity from Patria. Signs favourable that the trade will be

1653.  
—  
26th April.

1653.  
26th April.

pretty brisk. For this purpose kind and friendly treatment of the natives, and sometimes a treat of rice, arrack and wine will do a great deal.

With the return fleet of next year we shall expect the same quantity of clothing. Supply at present inadequate. The same as regards provisions; also rice, which is more convenient than bread. Would also like to have one or two parcels red cloths, not too fine or too coarse, in case we are ordered from home to trade along the coast which the Mozambique traders frequent, and where for cheap articles much gold, tusks, ebony and fine Caffers for slaves are to be had, as you may gather from the accompanying extract of the present letter to the Masters.

(Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK.

P.S.—After closing the above we were invited to attend the Council of Hon. Frisius, in which it was decided to detain the ships until the 3rd May for the *Enckhuysen*.

With the *Oliphant* and *Provintie* we received two horses. Whether that with the *Enckhuysen* will arrive alive, time will show, if the vessel does not likewise pass the Cape. However, we beg to be provided with a dozen by the next return ships for making journeys inland and examining what may tend to bring profit to the Company.

List of papers sent to India 26th April, 1653.

- No. 1. Original letter to Indian Council dated 26th April, 1653.
2. Copy of ditto to Directors and dated 14th and 15th April.
3. Copy of journal.
4. Copy of letter by the *Winthont* and *Muyden* from the Masters to us.
5. Extract from letter of Riebeeck to Directors by the *Oliphant*, &c.
6. Ship's account—refreshments to *Muyden*.

4th May. NO. 15.—PATRIA—TO THE DIRECTORS PER “OLIPHANT,” &c.

4th May, 1653.—Our latest, directed to each Chamber, was of the 15th April last, per *Parel*, &c., under Hon. Demmer, who left on the 17th instant. He remained here from 2nd March to 17th April waiting for the other ships, and was provided with cattle, sheep, cabbage, carrots, beet, &c.; so also were the *Haes* and *Winthont*, which left on the same day for Batavia, taking our letters, &c., for the Council. On the 18th the *Muyden* arrived, from which we provided ourselves fairly with meat, pork and bread, &c., as the receipts will show. On the 19th the *Oliphant* arrived under Hon. Frisius, and on the 23rd the *Provintie*.

The invoice will tell you what we obtained from the said ships. We cannot understand why we have not received any rice, which can be much better preserved than bread, as we have no dry casks or suitable rooms to keep bread in. The *Malacca* and *Princesse Royael* left with 1,000 lbs. powder, of which we had received no



invoice and which therefore we could not claim. We consequently took from the *Muyden* 1,000 lbs. so that now we have about 4,000 lbs. altogether. The other goods have been received in good order.

1653.  
—  
4th May.

From the letters sent by the first five ships you will notice what promises of commerce there are here, our hopes regarding cattle having been much strengthened since, as after the departure of the said ships other natives, dwelling further inland, came and bartered to us forty fine animals; they had heard from the Saldanhars that they could obtain copper, and had consequently come. Others still further inland would also arrive as soon as they heard of the copper, and would be prepared to treat with us in friendship. To promote this, kind treatment and a stomach full of rice with a drink of arrack and wine and a little tobacco go a long way and draw them nearer.

By the *Oliphant* there is proceeding home a German Priest called Martinus Martiny, who has been a long time in China and travelled through the Indies in all directions. He has made many notes and charts, and in German told us that during June, July and August we might easily voyage towards the Rio dos Reyos, about 280 (Dutch) miles to the East of this Cape on the coast of Africa, nearly half-way between Mozambique and this, and in  $25\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  S. Lat., on this side of Cape Corrientes, where much gold, tusks, ebony and fine Caffers or slaves were to be had, at cheap rates and easily, in exchange for Genoa linen, red cotton, coarse and painted cloths, tobacco, iron, glass beads of all colours, little bells, and salt, of which latter we have an abundance. He also said that annually the Portuguese obtain their slaves and gold there by means of a small vessel, and that the same may be obtained from Os Montos d'Ouro in about  $28\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  S. Lat. and not more than 220 (Dutch) miles from this, round the point, and as accessible to us with light yachts or galiots armed with 4, 6, 8 or 10 carronades, as it is from Mozambique. Besides, according to this priest the Portuguese do not number more than 20 and are without a fortress, which they only have at Mozambique. They would very likely be inclined to trade with us as well as the natives, especially to obtain European stores, cheese, butter, wine, &c. They get very little help (which must be obtained from Goa *via* Mozambique) and would therefore be anxious to trade. By water they could not hinder us at all, as the place is only visited from Mozambique by two or three vessels smaller than galiots, with two guns, and sent by private merchants from Mozambique to fetch the gold obtained there by the Portuguese from the natives. Gold may also be obtained along the same coast as far as the rivers or bays named R. de Cuamo and R. de St. Jorge in  $18^{\circ}$  and  $19\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  S. Lat., and for the same merchandise. Because of the shallowness of the water they can only be navigated by small vessels during the months named, so that there is no danger of being caught by large Portuguese ships in the neighbourhood, as soon as Terra de Natal has been passed. Along the whole coast only fine weather may be looked for. After

1653.  
—  
4th May.

August it is a favourable time to return, when it is the best season also to kill seals, inasmuch as the rainy season sets in (lasting from May to October); and when it is so wet, no skins can be cured, so that we must wait till that time before recommencing the seal fishery. As in three or four weeks the right time will have arrived to sail towards those places, an attempt may be made, but the galiot *Zwarte Vos*, which we kept instead of the *Goede Hoop*, is so worm-eaten that she is not strong enough to go far and will not be fit for use more than one or two years longer. We therefore require another, and will not be able to visit the places mentioned before we have a stronger vessel and your direct orders. In case you deem it expedient to hear the padre himself, you will be tempted to have those places visited, as many maintain that it is the real Ophir whence Solomon was supplied with gold. For this purpose a serviceable yacht with eight or ten or more pieces and a strong galiot would be welcome, and I would gladly have the attempt made before my departure to Batavia, in order to inquire whether there or elsewhere such or any other considerable trade might not be opened.

From the copies annexed you will gather what we have written to India.

The timber, lime and stone asked for in our former letter we expect to get, as they are highly required to shelter our men and goods, especially the brick, cement and lime in order to build tanks for the oil extracted from the seals. Likewise plaster for fire-proof roofs for the stores. The 1,800 tiles, of which many are broken, will only cover a very small store room.

We shall not be exposed to such distress again now that we may draw our supplies from the ships arriving here, that is if they do touch here, for many, if not compelled by necessity, pass by for the sake of obtaining the premium—a heavy punishment should be attached to the passing by of the Cape—but we have provided ourselves so well from the *Haes*, *Winthont* and *Muyden* as regards meat and pork that we may get on for 8 or 10 months. Bread and rice however, will not last longer than five months at the furthest, as the ships could not spare more. About that time we shall be looking out again for ships, but whilst we have bread we will keep the men well at work, so that when bread fails there will not be much left to be done.

The *Muyden*, with many sick on board, refreshed itself here nicely and left with a healthy crew on the 28th April. We took from her about 22 or 23 sick men to replace those despatched to India and Holland, because our supplies were running low and we did not know how to feed them, and most of them were hardly worth their salt. We have now 114 paid men with 16 on the galiot, total 130, besides women and children exactly 20, so that the number of eaters here is 150, besides this we require extra food to attract the natives

In our former we asked for 50 plates of yellow copper and as much wire as we brought with us from Home, but as we expect our trade to become more extensive we would like to have, besides the plates, 36 or 40 rolls of wire, assorted, and fully the quantity of tobacco asked for. Little will be left, for all the copper brought with us came to an end last Sunday the 27th, and was exchanged for cattle. We have now only the wire obtained per *Haes*, which is not taken as well as thick wire and plates. We are therefore afraid that from the present we will be at a loss, which is a pity. Therefore it will be necessary to be annually supplied with a sufficient quantity of assorted copper and garden seeds, as the ships from Home and India use a great deal of produce for refreshments.

1653.  
—  
4th May.

The journal will show the Resolution of the Council here that the two ships (*Oliphant* and *Provintie*) were delayed to wait for the *Enckhuysen* until the 8th May.

Obtained two horses from Batavia—expect one more per *Enckhuysen*. Wish we had a dozen to be used for exploring the country, and finding what may be of profit to the Company. As we have written to Batavia for that number, we request from you a few light English saddles and bridles, with holsters and light pistols, as the two saddles from Batavia are thoroughly used up.

Having written thus far, the *Enckhuysen* arrived (1st May). It was resolved that the three vessels should leave on the 5th together. The *Enckhuysen*, besides what it used whilst lying here, took on board four head of cattle and some cabbages, &c., to have fresh supplies at sea for some time longer. The ship's accounts will tell you at what we valued the cattle and the sheep. Would like to know whether the garden produce supplied is to be charged for; have hitherto not done it, though the seeds sent from India have been charged against us. We are with 114 paid men in the fort, and as the English, for the sake of capturing your return fleets, may attack the fort with large numbers (one day or other), we have decided to bring our number up to 150 by drafts from the ships, that we may have 60 or 70 men to despatch among the bushes along the shore to prevent the English or other enemies from landing in boats. To keep the roads clear, we necessarily require two or more first-rate copper guns of 24, and iron ones of 18 lbs. The preservation of this excellent refreshment station for the ships is of the utmost importance to you.

In the Fort Good Hope, 4th May, 1653.

(Signed) J. A. VAN RIEBEECK.

List of papers sent to Holland, for the Chamber Amsterdam, per *Oliphant*.

- No. 1. Original letter to the Chamber, dated 4th May, 1653.
2. Copy of journal since 9th March, 1653.
3. Copy of letter from India Council to the Commanders at the Cape, dated 24th Dec., 1652, and Jan. 31st, 1653.
4. Invoice of goods received from India.



1653. 5. Letter of Riebeeck to the India Council per ship *Muyden*, dated  
 4th May. 26th April, 1653.  
 6. Ships' accounts.  
 7. Copy of receipt for stores taken from the *Muyden*.
- 

NO. 15.—INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE OFFICERS OF THE “ZWARTE  
 VOS,” PROCEEDING TO ROBBERN ISLAND.

13th May. 13th May, 1653.—As the rainy season is unsuitable for killing seals about Saldanha Bay, the skins not drying properly, and the dry season is to be waited for, which commences about October, and as the men of the galiot should in the meanwhile have something to do, we have decided to send you off and on to Robben Island for shells to be burnt for lime, which is much required here.

Weather permitting you will leave to-morrow, but before collecting shells, you must see whether there are as many eggs to be had as formerly. Dividing your men into two sections, one for each side of the island, you shall as quickly as possible collect as many eggs as you can get and bring them over to serve as food for the labourers here.

You will likewise receive 6 sheep, 4 ewes and 2 rams, to be placed on Robben Island, to see whether they will thrive there, and at the same time find out how the rock-rabbits are progressing which were some time ago placed there. Would like to be informed on these matters. Nothing more to order you to do; only be on your guard against English and other enemies and trust nobody. Do your best. Wish you a safe voyage. Amen.

In the Fort Good Hope, 13th May, 1653.

(Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK.

---

NO. 16.—PERSIA OR SURAT—TO THE OFFICERS IN GOMBROON OR  
 SURAT PER THE GALIOT THE “ZWARTE VOS.”

9th June. 9th June, 1653.—From the enclosed letter of the Masters you will notice the war between Holland and England and the orders in consequence. Though you may have heard the news through another channel long before this, we have decided to send the galiot to make assurance doubly sure. The cause of the delay has been the long voyage of the *Koode Vos*, which left Texel the 19th Sept., 1652, and arrived here on the 2nd of this month.

Arrived here safely this year under Hon. Demmer the return ships *Parel*, &c., which were thoroughly refreshed with cattle, sheep, carrots, turnips, cabbages and all other Dutch vegetables grown here. Left on the 17th April. Waited in vain for the others. Before their departure, we handed them the secret instructions received from Home.

The *Oliphant*, &c., under Hon. Frisius likewise left on the 6th May, after having been thoroughly recruited.

The *Haes*, &c., also arrived here. The orders brought by them you will gather from the annexed copies.

The state of defence to which our fortress has been brought and our trade with the natives, &c., Skipper Gerrit Abels : and the bookkeeper Pieter van der Helm will describe to you. The latter is a good fellow and clever, consequently fit for office work ; he kept the pay books here, &c. We therefore recommend him to your notice, being assured that if he continues to conduct himself as hitherto, the Company may expect in course of time good service from him.

Before closing we cannot refrain from communicating to you private intelligence received from home by the yachts mentioned that our Admiral Tromp with about 100 ships, and another squadron of 30 first-rate ships of war under De Ruyter (the first news having been somewhat distressing in consequence of the loss of so many ships captured by English privateers), had conducted themselves so valiantly in various encounters with the enemy, and with such advantage to the country (according to the private news received) that an Englishman hardly dares to show his face outside of his ports but is immediately driven back by Tromp, De Ruyter and our other brave naval heroes. We hope and pray that the following ships will bring even better news, and that God will be the helper and stay of our beloved country in this fiery war, which has positively been forced upon us. Amen.

In the Fort Good Hope, 9th June, 1653.

(Signed) J. V. RIEBECK.

1653.

9th June.

#### INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE OFFICERS OF THE "ZWARTE VOS" PROCEEDING TO GOMBROON IN PERSIA OR SURAT.

9th June, 1653.—Although because prevented by the long voyage of the *Roodle Vos*, which left Texel on the 19th Sept., and only arrived here on the 2nd June, we have been unable to forward these despatches as ordered ; and although the officers in Persia or Surat may already through other channels have received information of the war, we have nevertheless considered it advisable, by Resolution of the 3rd instant, to despatch you to the places named and with the despatches mentioned.

9th June.

You shall therefore leave to-morrow, and steer your course so that you take the shortest route to Persia or Surat as God's wind and weather may enable you to do. We give you no special order on this point, as the Masters have left it to your own judgment. At whichever of the two places you may first arrive, you shall immediately deliver the despatches to the officers in charge there. For this, and for no other purpose, are you sent thither. In case you encounter on the voyage any English or other enemies and see no chance of escaping, you shall, before falling into their hands, sink into the sea all our despatches, attaching heavy weights to them, that the Company's secret plans may not be divulged.

1653.

9th June.

In case anything happens on the voyage the Council shall be summoned by you, and consist of Gerrit Abels, Skipper; Pieter van der Helm, bookkeeper; Cornelis Jans: Swart, junior mate; the boatswain and gunner.

If anything is to be decided regarding change of course, touching at places or otherwise, the Council shall be called upon to do so. Trust you may be spared and have a safe voyage. Amen.

(Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK.

In the Fort Good Hope, 9th June, 1653.

List of papers sent to Persia per the *Zwarte Vos*.

No. 1. Original despatch of the Chamber of Seventeen dated 24th July, 1652.

2. Original despatch of Riebeeck to the officers at the places mentioned, dated 9th June, 1653.

3. Copies of letters of the Chamber of Seventeen and the Chamber Amsterdam, successively written to the India Council and the Commander and officers of the Fort the Good Hope, per the *Zwarte Vos*, and the yachts *Haes*, *Winthont* and *Muyden*.

No. 17.—ADDITIONAL INSTRUCTIONS, DATED 13TH MAY LAST, FOR THE OFFICERS OF THE “ZWARTE VOS,” AND TO SERVE FOR THOSE OF THE “ROODE VOS,” NOW READY TO LEAVE FOR ROBBER ISLAND TO FETCH SHELLS FOR A LIME KILN.

14th July.

From the instructions of 13th May, given to the *Zwarte Vos*, you will sufficiently gather our intentions which you are to carry out, and remember that you are also to observe the increase of the sheep and rock-rabbits placed on Robben Island, and do your best to collect as many shells as possible for lime. Wish you good luck and a prosperous voyage.

(Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK.

In the Fort Good Hope, 14th July, 1653.

No. 18.—INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE OFFICERS OF THE “ROODE VOS,” PREPARED TO LEAVE FOR HOUT BAY.

26th July.

26th July, 1653.—Whereas it was resolved by Council yesterday to postpone the voyage to Robben Island and send you to Hout Bay, to examine what timber and fuel may be obtained there, you shall leave with the first favourable wind, and having safely arrived in the little bay, immediately send us notice overland with two or three armed men, that we may join you on foot or horseback, that together we may inspect the facilities of the place and see whether anything more may be secured for the benefit of the Company. The more so as it is not unlikely that the Saldanhars, after having traded with us, may proceed thither with their flocks. The galiot may therefore be employed to trade with them for some time longer.



In case it is impossible to obtain any good timber there, you shall, that the voyage may not be profitless, commence to collect fuel, which is procurable in abundance near the shore, and very necessary for our kilns.

1653.  
—  
26th July

(Signed) J. VAN RIEBEECK.

In the Fort Good Hope, 26th July, 1653.

No. 19.—HOUT BAY—TO THE OFFICERS OF THE “ROODE VOS,”  
—SENT OVERLAND.

4th August, 1653.—As the Hout Bay affords no convenience for getting timber towards the beach, and we have found fine and large woods about two hours on foot distant from the fort and comparatively easily transported, (and for this purpose we have to-day sent 14 men to make a wagon road), you must do your best to take in as much fuel as possible and return with the first good breeze. Fish is more easily obtainable at Saldanha Bay and more abundant there. Will therefore postpone the salting until that time. We require the men for other work and have as yet sufficient food for them. Waste as little time on fishing as possible, that the galiot may the sooner be filled for the kilns.

Your good friend,

JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

In the Fort Good Hope, 4th Aug., 1653.

No. 20.—TO THE INDIA COUNCIL, BATAVIA.

13th August, 1653.—Wrote on the 26th April per *Muyden*.

13th August.

The journal will afford information regarding everything which has occurred here, in which we have carefully noted down everything. It will also show you that since our last letters very little has been done in trade, &c., because of the departure of the Saldanhars, who are expected again in October or November, when we hope to be able to obtain more cattle than last season, if only provided with copper plates and tobacco, of which at present we are entirely destitute. If any plates are to be had at Batavia we would like to get some. We hope to obtain a good quantity of ivory, but have not found that there is as much musk among these people as we expected. Time will make us wiser. But do not doubt that you will at all times find sufficient refreshment here for the ships; as with God in the van, we are already so far advanced that the whole year through we shall have abundant supplies, as may be seen from the journal.

The *Salamander* takes this. Its consorts have not yet arrived. It had some sick on board and scurvy patients, who are already convalescent. Twenty we have kept here, in order to be better able to ward off an attack of English or other enemies. We are now 130 strong, and hope to draft 20 more men from the following ships, and with this number to be able to defend our fort success-

1653.  
--  
13th August.

fully against all comers. Our receipts will show what stores we have taken from this ship. We were already in want of bread, &c., and if she had not arrived we would, like last year, have again been suffering from the want of bread. We therefore require to be provided by you annually with at least 30 tons of rice, 6 tons beans, 4 tons cadjanghai, and 25 leaguers arrack. All these things are necessary here for liberally treating the natives, if we are to derive any benefit from them. We also require some black and white sugar and wax for candles like last year.

About the end of this month the time for seal killing will be there, which we intend to take in hand with the *Roode Vos*, until we receive further advices from home and yourselves, regarding the market for skins in your parts. Hope to hear soon—also whether the sea cow and elephant tusks are saleable. With the bread drawn from this ship and what we had, we shall be able to get on for three months fully, and should the *Phoenix* or any other ships not arrive in the meanwhile, we must again run short. But in spite of this we have not decided to open the chamber of reserved stores in this ship, trusting that we may be supplied by other arrivals. Should this hope be futile, it would have been wiser if we had supplied ourselves now. But we live in good hope, and therefore will not deprive the *Salamander* of its reserved stores.

We kept the *Roode Vos* here because its crew was suffering severely from scurvy and the vessel was somewhat helpless, so that to forward the despatches as soon as possible, we were obliged to send the *Zwarte Vos*. For the clothing of the men we shall require this season 2 packs guinea linen, 1 pack mouris, 1 pack salampouris, 1 pack coloured ginghams for upper clothing, some cotton and silk knitted stockings, buttons, thread and sewing silk, also 1 or 2 parcels of red cloth, asked for ere this, in case we are ordered by the Masters, according to our proposals, to make a commercial voyage round the point towards Sofala. For this purpose we would much like to have back here again our yacht the *Good Hope*, which took the news of the war to your parts, it being very suitable for the purpose. It might likewise bring from India some bricks, lime and other necessaries, and so relieve the return vessels from doing so. The galiot here at present is unfit for such a voyage. We also request to be provided with sulphur and saltpetre for making fireworks to be used in cases of need, also with 10 or 12 horses to be used for travelling inland to explore the country better than has been done hitherto, and find out what benefits may be secured for the Company. The *West Vriesland* has not yet arrived. We trust that it has made its appearance safely at Batavia before receipt of this. We trust to have the fort finished, and in a proper state of defence during this month. We also hope to have everything besides in such good order before the arrival of the return fleet, that our successors will only have to walk on the road prepared for them, that in accordance with our humble request we may look forward to being relieved. It appears from the letter of the 21

October that our application would be considered at the first meeting of the Chamber of Seventeen, hence we are anxiously awaiting the result in order to take steps accordingly. Nevertheless we recommend ourselves unto your favour for such work as we may then have to do, and which will offer us more favourable opportunities to strive for our promotion in the course of time.

1653.

13th August.

J. VAN RIEBEECK.

Dated at the Fort, 13th August, 1653.

N.B.—We would have liked to take out of the *Salamander* two long cannons to keep the roads clear, but the officers were afraid to part with them because of the English war, not knowing what might take place in the Straits of Sunda, and for other reasons moving them. In the meanwhile we remain dreadfully in want of them, as the safety of this place greatly depends upon our having some. We would therefore be glad to get a few from you, also some light metal carronades to be mounted on the flanks of the fort and loaded with grape. All of them, if possible, should be provided with carriages, or models of the same should be sent, that they may be made here from wood out of the Cape forest.

List of papers sent to Batavia, per *Salamander*, 13th August, 1653. Nos. 1—5.

#### No. 21.—TO THE INDIA COUNCIL PER “VOGEL PHENIX.”

22nd August, 1653.—By the *Windhond*, *Haes* and *Muyden*, and 22nd August. also the *Salamander*, which left this on the 15th last, we gave you full particulars, so that we have now very little to add.

As in consequence of the war with England the times are very anxious and dark, we have arranged with the captain of the *Phoenix* a small code of signals for the use of the Company's ships, in order to be able on both sides (from sea and land) to know whether friends or foes are near. The code is enclosed for the use of every skipper and officer, that they may be warned in time, as at present the ships are afraid of sending boats on shore, and we likewise do not like to risk a vessel or any men by sending them to any new arrival. This difficulty will be removed by the code.

It would be surprising if about February next we did not come in contact with the English, a probability which the Masters fear. They might take possession of the fort, and so more easily capture the return ships expected about that time. That is if they gain the victory over our navy at home. But we trust that the Lord God will dispose of everything for the best. We made use of the opportunity, however, to increase the garrison to 150 men and provide ourselves with the supplies required. We are always doing our best to make our position as strong as possible, that we may be able to withstand a powerful attack. If we had sufficient and serviceable store-rooms, we would have provided ourselves with more stores, in order not to run short of food.



1653. Our plan is now to draw from every new arrival whatever is necessary to supplement our supplies. Having here only one sergeant and two assistants, who are still very young, and cannot, in case of our absence or death, be entrusted with the command of this settlement, we: convinced of the fitness of the junior merchant Jacob Reyniersz, have resolved to appoint him as our second in command, that in case of our death things may not go wrong for want of a proper head, but be kept in good order for the advantage of the Company, as may be more fully seen in the Resolution of the 19th specially taken for the purpose, copy of which is annexed.

The provisions, war ammunition, &c., taken out of this ship, the *Phœnix*, for the fort, you will gather from the receipts given to the skipper.

We request to be supplied with some bunting, as we have only one old flag, which will soon be broken.

Signal code for warning the Company's ships calling at the Cape, that they may know whether or not this place is in the hands of the Company's servants.

Those of the fort shall as soon as they become aware of the presence of one or more ships at once hoist the Prince's flag on the Northern Point called the "Reijger," and fire a cannon. The ship shall answer by likewise firing a gun and hoist the Prince's flag, that those at the fort may know that the vessels belong to the Company.

(Signed) J. VAN RIEBEECK.  
DOUWEN OUKES.  
JACOB REYNIERSZ,

Dated in the Fort, 22nd August, 1653.

List of papers sent to Batavia per the *Vogel Phœnix*, dated 22nd August, 1653.—Nos. 1—6.

No. 22.—TO THE INDIA COUNCIL, SENT PER THE "KONING DAVID."

5th August. On the 29th the *Koning David* arrived safely, but, like the former ships, without any letters from our principals. The officers of this ship will tell you how the *West Vriesland* is circumstanced at Pernambuco in consequence of bad discipline, &c.

Like the former one, this vessel was well filled with bricks and planks, but as they lay under the cargo instead of ballast, and could only be taken out with great trouble, we did not wish to delay its departure, and request that another quantity may be sent, besides the provisions asked for, &c. They are urgently needed.

This vessel was pretty full of scurvy people, who were fairly recovering after the fresh provisions obtained here. We trust with the help of God to have sufficient on hand for the coming return fleets, being very busy with the gardens, and expecting that within

6 or 8 weeks the trade in cattle with the natives will recommence. Upon all which matters we trust God the Lord will grant His blessing. Amen.

1653.  
—  
5th August.

We respectfully request to be supplied with one or two casks of linseed oil, for painting our wooden houses. We have enough paint, but not always oil.

This having been written thus far, the Saldanhars unexpectedly put in an appearance with five young and old head of cattle, which we bought more cheaply even than last year. They tell us that they were every day on the point of coming on with large quantities of cattle—certainly a good thing—but it is to be regretted that because we are without copper plates, it will be very difficult to obtain any cows, which can only be got for plates. We have enough wire to buy sheep in abundance, but no cattle will be obtained with it. If therefore you can spare any yellow copper plates they would be of great service here, also such Dutch tobacco as was formerly supplied to the return fleets, to be used here for barter. We have only 300 lbs. left, and if the trade commences and also ivory is brought on, this quantity will be soon consumed, as we observe that the tusks are mostly sold for tobacco and thin wire.

We humbly request to be furnished with some Indian wheat, for it is a pity to eat this beautiful delicate Cape butter with ship's bread. In order to furnish the Governor-General and Councillors of India with butter as the ships arrive, you will please oblige us with some pots, as we hope that in course of time much will be made. And if the cabbages packed in tubs likewise arrive in good order, we will take care always to send you some.

J. VAN RIEBEECK.  
JACOB REYNIERSZ.

Dated in the Fort, 5th August, 1653.

List of Papers sent to the India Council.—Nos. 1—4.

---

NO. 23.—INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE OFFICERS OF THE “ROODE VOS,”  
PROCEEDING FROM TABLE BAY TO SALDANHA BAY.

From the accompanying extracts from our instructions from time to time given last year to the officers of the *Good Hope*, you will gather our intentions to search for trade and profit for our Masters. You will act in accordance with them, besides paying attention to what is written in this, and leave with the first fair wind according to the Resolution of the first of this month, proceeding direct to Saldanha Bay, without touching at Robben or Dassen Islands. On your arrival you must find out whether the natives are there, and inclined to trade. For this purpose you take with you 58 lbs. thin copper wire, 144 lbs. tobacco, and half a gross of pipes. Only sheep must be bartered for, as cattle will be too big to be put on board the galiot. You must also carefully enquire whether there be any amber, gold, or musk there, and do your best

3rd October.

1653.

—  
3rd October.

to encourage the natives to bring on to you a number of tusks of elephants and hippopotami. You shall likewise do your utmost to prevent your people from doing any harm to, or molesting the natives, and treat them in as friendly a manner as possible, that they may not become afraid, but more and more accustomed to, and inclined towards us. And as we observe that the men are not deterred from giving for ostrich eggs, tortoises and other rubbish, as much tobacco and beads as we give for whole oxen and sheep, by which the trade is seriously injured, and the natives are made indifferent about bringing on an abundance of cattle,—as they get as much as they require for their rubbish and come to think that they need not be under the necessity of parting with their cattle, like last year, when it was found that as long as they could get for eggs and tortoise shells, tobacco and copper, they did not bring any cattle,—you shall take special care that no one, great or small, exchanges with the natives anything in the world, of whatever little value it may be, that we may be able to trade with them under the most favourable circumstances and as speedily as the interests of the Company require, and though some may grumble at this order, because what they exchange is but rubbish, you shall nevertheless not allow it, but strictly forbid and prevent it, as it spoils the Company's trade here; for as long as they can get anything for eggs and tortoise shells, it will be impossible for the Company to procure the quantity of cattle required, or anything else. Hence all barter on the part of the men must be strictly forbidden. The bookkeeper Verburgh alone shall be allowed to trade, and he shall be your second in the Council, which shall be composed as follows:—Elbert Cornelis Kes, skipper; Frederick Verburgh, bookkeeper; Jan Symontse, mate, and the boatswain if necessary.

Should you find the Saldanhars, and that your trade with them is prosperous, you shall also catch and salt down as much fish as you will be able to stow away, besides the sheep obtained, that it may be used for the men here. You therefore take with you three casks of salt. On your return voyage you will touch at Dassen and Robben Islands, and on each you shall place some sheep for breeding purposes, to be used by us in case of necessity. From the Dassen Island you must bring some rock-rabbits to be placed on Robben Island, and bring hither 50 or 60 alive if possible. You must also try and get as many young wild geese and ducks as you can, to multiply here and be tamed. This seems to be possible, judging from the seven brought from Robben Island.

You will also catch many sharks with fine skins. You shall bring some with you, that we may examine them, to know whether they are of the kind sold in Japan. This order was last year given to, but not observed by, the skipper of the *Goede Hoop*. We trust that in these and other matters you will be more diligent for the Company. We shall be glad to know it in time.

You shall proceed hence between the islands and the mainland, continually sounding in order to obtain a thorough knowledge of



the bottom. For this purpose you are to have proper charts made of the coasts, bottoms, bays, rivers and bends, according to our instructions of last year, extracts from which you receive with this, for your guidance.

1653.  
—  
3rd October.

The shells found by you in the said bay you are also to take on board for the limekiln here. The salt given you for the fish must be economically used, for though obtainable here, the task of collecting is troublesome, and the distance great, whilst not before December or January a fresh supply will be possible.

For the rest you are to be guided by what the interests of the Company require, and opportunity places in your way. From our daily conversations and intercourse you will have gathered that it is our object to promote those interests. We therefore depend upon your diligent discharge of the duty entrusted to you; and wish you a happy voyage. You must try whether the seeds which you take with you will grow at Saldanha Bay or on the islands mentioned, that some refreshment and luxury may be found there also.

J. VAN RIEBEECK.  
JACOB REYNIERSZ.

Dated in the Fort, 3rd October, 1653.

List of papers given to the officers of the *Roode Vos*, proceeding to Saldanha, &c. Nos. 1—3.

---

NO 24.—TO THE OFFICERS OF THE “ROODE VOS,” AT SALDANHA BAY, SENT OVERLAND.

13th October, 1653.—Monsieur, Reyniersz having arrived safely from Saldanha Bay overland the day before yesterday, and having informed us that the French vessel there was ready to leave for France in five or six days, we decided to send you overland our despatch to the Masters at Amsterdam, that Verburgh, who is well acquainted with the French language, may deliver it to the officers of that ship. You are also to give them our greeting, with the assurance that if they had touched here, we would have supplied them with sheep, cattle, fowls, geese, ducks, partridges, and all kinds of game, besides salad, cabbages, carrots, turnips, and all kinds of European garden produce, and which we were also inclined to send to him if we had had a vessel at our disposal. At the same time recommend to his especial care our letters to the Directors. As Reyniersz reports that many of the Frenchmen, because supplied with nothing else than penguins and seal's flesh, are unwilling to return to France by that vessel, and would consequently prefer to remain with us, we have decided to inform you that in accordance with the orders left by Reyniersz you are to tempt as many of the Frenchmen as possible to desert, and as secretly as you can, that in this way the captain may become so helpless that he may be induced to sell his ship and cargo to the Company. And that none of his men may be found in the galiot,

1653.  
—  
13th October.

they are all to take to the shore and accompany our men hither overland. They are all to be well provided for the journey with bread, pork and arrack, as the road is difficult. In this way good service will be rendered to the Company, and the Frenchman will be deprived of every inclination to return for seal skins. At all events do your best to obtain some of the men, in order to learn from them the proper manner of preparing the skins, as much depends upon this. In the first place you are to take the three convicts with you from the island for pure charity's sake and at their request, and which you have a perfect right to do. These instructions are, however, to be kept secret from the Frenchman. It would also be a good thing if you could get all his men away to this place overland, to prevent the captain from continuing his voyage, and so obtain persons able to teach us how to prepare the skins, as Reyniersz has verbally instructed Verburgh to do. This order we now endorse, trusting that you will carry it out to the best of your ability. You must promise good pay to the men, also liquor in abundance, and what more may tend to draw them.

You are also to find out in what manner the skins are prepared, what tools are used for the purpose, and whether the French have taken in anything besides seal skins and train oil. This you may gather from the crew. Much depends upon it for the benefit of the Company.

This will reach you with four men under the Corporal Willem Muller, by whom you must endeavour to persuade the crew of the French vessel to leave overland for this place, giving a glowing description of all the comforts to be had here, that as many men as possible may be obtained.

Your friends,

J. VAN RIEBEECK.  
JACOB REYNIERSZ.

Dated in the Fort, 13th October, 1653.

---

NO. 25.—TO THE DIRECTORS, SENT BY A FRENCH SHIP VIA  
SALDANHA BAY AND FRANCE.

13th October.

13th October, 1653.—The natives having informed us, and the galiot having verified the statement, that a French vessel was lying in Saldanha Bay, which for six months and during the whole rainy season had been employed on the various islands in catching seals, and had collected about 5,000 skins and much oil, burnt in large iron boilers; also that it was on the point of again leaving for France without any possibility on our side of persuading the captain to come to Table Bay, notwithstanding our promises of a good reception, &c., we have no desire to forego the opportunity of forwarding to you a letter, sent overland to Saldanha Bay and to be taken charge of by the said ship. 'The junior merchant, Reyniersz, with six soldiers and one boy, walked the whole distance from Saldanha Bay to this in 84 hours.)

We doubt not that our letters sent by the return ships have safely arrived, in which we have informed you of everything. We also sent you as a sample 4,105 seal skins, and trust soon to hear the result, and your orders regarding the continuance of this industry and the preparation of train oil.

1653.

13th October.

The appearance of this Frenchman and his statement that soon two or three others of his nation will be here for the same purpose, show unmistakeably that large profits are to be derived from seal fishing, therefore we trust soon to hear your opinion on the subject. It would be advisable if 20 or 30 men were stationed on Elizabeth Island, and a fort built there, somewhat smaller than the one here, with two or three cannon, that all may be cured of their inclination to return to that spot for killing seals.

We did not venture to attempt anything against this vessel because it was a Frenchman, but if it had been an Englishman we might easily have captured it, as it had only 40 men on board, though our people say that the number is not above 30. We have ordered our men to do their best to draw the men away to us, that the ship may become helpless, and incapable of prosecuting its voyage. We also promised good pay and good food and liquor, &c.

What the Frenchman has told us, the notes of Verburgh accompanying this will tell you. Further particulars also regarding other matters we will send you with the return fleet.

The words written in a strange language will be interpreted to you by Bronckhorst, Bylevelt, or Alexander van Harten, who learned the language in the North, where they were together in an office. They are able to speak, read, and understand it.

After the departure of the *Olipfant*, *Provintie* and *Enckhuysen* on the 6th May, the long-expected *Roode Vos* arrived on the 2nd of June from Hoorn. The skipper, mate and others had died on the voyage, and the junior mate accordingly earned his promotion by the death of his superiors. As the long voyage caused a great deal of sickness and scurvy among the crew, we sent your despatches to Persia with the *Zwarte Vos*, keeping the *Roode Vos* here, which is at present at Saldanha Bay catching fish. After this we intend to use it for catching seals, trusting that it may be profitable. These galiots are so difficult to manage that they can only be used on the coast with great danger; we would therefore like to have a couple of light Vlieland galiots, which may be propelled with oars in case of calms; also a yacht fit for sailing along the Eastern coast and for the seal fishery. The ships here are not subject to destruction from worms, and a yacht, as mentioned, would be serviceable to find out everything about trade beyond the point, and if unsuccessful, might cross over to Madagascar and obtain slaves and rice in the bay of Antongil. The rice might be kept here, and the slaves forwarded to Batavia by the outward bound vessels. But for this some tin would be required. . . .



1653.

13th October.

We have also fortified ourselves and are daily continuing to do so, that with the help of God we need not be afraid of any English or other enemies, so that you may be quite comfortable about us; for whether they come in February or thereabouts to surprise the return fleet, and for that purpose first to overpower this garrison, we can assure you that they will catch a Tartar, as besides the fort, we trust to have so many ambuscades along the beach, &c., that with the help of God we shall be able to keep their feet from land. We are, however, greatly in want of two good brass long guns or far-reaching ordnance to command the roadstead, and make the enemy's ships harmless—This would benefit us greatly. Please think of it as highly necessary. Also do not forget to send us the required timber, lime, cement and bricks, to make the oil sheds and troughs, and the huts and ceilings for storing the skins and sheltering the cattle. Here we have fine wood in sufficient quantity two or two and a half miles away from the fort, but so difficult and tedious of transport, that we can hardly wait for them. We are also very much in want of the wagons asked for, also the gun carriages, or a man able to make them.

The trade with the Saldanhars has recommenced. For the first time we obtained the day before yesterday 17 sheep, but the thin wire received by the *Haes* does not take so well as the thick sort and the plates, which are all spent, and of which we are in great need. Without this we cannot obtain any cattle. The tobacco should be stronger, better and thicker, and not subject to rotting.

We succeed with all kinds of vegetables and are getting a good supply of milk, butter and cheese from the cattle, but are still in want of the necessary utensils, which we hope to receive soon. In course of time a prosperous place will grow out of the Cape, and your ships will always find sufficient refreshments here. It is a sight to see how full the gardens are with fine produce; they cover about two morgen of land. We daily give to the men cabbage-lettuces weighing one and a half lbs. a piece, radishes and other vegetables, that they may eat of the best; also buttermilk, &c. The return ships will find so much here, that not only during their stay will they have abundance, but they will be able to take a large quantity away for the voyage. If you send us the required seeds, we hope to feed ourselves in one or two years' time. To gain this object, no time is wasted.

Last year we dissuaded you from starting a whale-fishery because of the heavy winds; but now we find that it can be taken in hand, as this year's season was a very mild one, so that evidently one year is not like another. We would, however, require some more whaleboats and their belongings. A good quantity of oil will be drawn from theseals, but the whales would bring in much more heavily.

The *Koning David* had heard on the coast of Brazil, from a pirate, that the *West Vriesland* was lying helplessly at Receiffe, and that the officers were frightfully on the loose. We trust that God may still bring her safely into port.

Would like to have one or two dozen good firelocks for use on land journeys, where they would be of great service ; also some flints for our guns, which are all without any, and therefore useless ; one or two aums of linseed oil, some paint for painting our wooden houses to preserve them, and some steel and smith's coal, &c.

1653.  
—  
13th October.

J. VAN RIEBEECK.

Dated in the Fort, 13th October, 1653.

List of papers sent to Holland per French ship lying now at Saldanha Bay. No. 1—3.

---

No. 26.—INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE OFFICERS OF THE "ROODE VOS,"  
READY TO PROCEED TO SALDANHA BAY AND THE NEIGH-  
BOURING ISLANDS.

Though the French have very much denuded the Dassen and other islands of seals when you left those places, so that at present very little would be obtainable there, still as the four Frenchmen whom you brought, are of opinion that the old seals bring forth about this time, and that the finest skins are taken from the young ones, we have decided by Resolution of the 6th to send you and 29 men with the galiot and decked boat to see whether you may not get together a fair quantity, in time for the return fleet.

December

You will therefore, wind and weather being favourable, proceed to-morrow straight to Saldanha Bay and touch at Robben Island, to find out whether the seals have not retreated thither after having been frightened away by the French from the Saldanha Bay Islands. Should this be so, you may leave the boat there with 14 men to kill seals, and proceed straight to Saldanha Bay, without calling at Dassen Island, to see whether any skins have been left behind by the French, which you are to take on board and bring hither for the benefit of the Company. You shall likewise carefully inquire whether any Saldanhars with cattle are in the neighbourhood.

For this purpose you may use the little cargo still on board. On meeting the natives you shall treat them as kindly as possible, assuring them that we are unwilling to do them the least harm because of the crime of Herry, but rather desired to show them as much friendship as possible ; and that we are here abundantly supplied with copper and tobacco ; adding whatever may further tend to draw them towards us. For the Company is much interested in being on friendly terms and in kindly intercourse with these natives.

Should you find any Saldanhars there and have no chance of getting seals at Robben Island, the Bookkeeper Verburgh shall, according to the previous instructions, alone be authorised to trade ; whilst the men of the boat under Corporal van Gulick are to be stationed with the four Frenchmen on the islands for catching seals.

1653.  
—  
December

Should you obtain any sheep you may place them on one of the islets until the time of your departure, when you shall bring them with you, with the skins found. The boat's crew under command of Verburgh, is to be left on Dassen or any other island for seal catching, and with the necessary stores.

Should the French have left no skins, and there be no opportunity to trade with the natives, you shall let the crew of the boat take to seal fishing on one of the islands, and whilst still at Saldanha Bay, make the men catch and salt down as much fish as possible for their food, without purposely delaying, as there will be a lot of birds for them on the islands. You will then, having arranged everything, proceed direct to Hout Bay without calling here; and there take in fuel for the lime-kilns here. Of your arrival you must at once inform us overland, that we may consider, whilst you are there, whether we shall make an expedition against Herry, as the party sent out would be better provided with provisions from that place than could be done from this. For the rest you can gather our purpose from the conversations held in the Council and also outside of it. We therefore depend upon your diligence and wish you a prosperous voyage. Amen.

J. VAN RIEBEECK.  
JACOB REYNIERSZ.

Dated in the Fort, December, 1653.

---

No. 27.—TO THE INDIA COUNCIL.

31st Dec.

By our last per *Koning David*, dated 5th August, you were informed of our incipient trade with the Saldanhars and the prospects of success—copy annexed. Since have arrived the *Naarden*, *Breda* and *Lam* on the 21st and 22nd December with a short letter, of which copy is annexed, from the Amsterdam Chamber, The *Vreede*, *Draak* and *Kalf*, their consorts, have not yet arrived. They may have passed on. It would have been better if they had called like these, who were full of scurvy patients and have been refreshed satisfactorily, so that they will no doubt arrive at Batavia with healthy crews, to the great relief of the hospital there. At present sufficient refreshments are to be had here, whilst no doubt next year we shall have such an abundance that we will be at a loss what to do with it. . . .

From the journal you will see how Herry, our interpreter, who with his people had always been under our protection and received many favours from us, robbed us of our cattle on the 19th October, during the Sunday service, and murdered the young man left in charge by the herds, and that we failed in capturing either himself or any of his. The consequence has been that the Saldanhars, informed of it, were afraid to come near the fort, thinking that we would revenge ourselves upon them. We have not been able to obtain a single animal from them since the 20th. Informed however of this fear of the Saldanhars, who would not approach



nearer than half a mile, we assured them by personal visits to their encampments, unarmed, that they had no reason to be afraid; and by persuasion finally induced them to come to the fort, where they were royally treated and a new alliance with them was formed. They declared that they had no share in Herry's doings. What the truth may be, and whether by bribes they may be induced to deliver Herry to us, time alone will show. We do not broach the subject to them, but confine ourselves to treating them well, to find out what their intentions really are. In the meanwhile the ships had to be satisfied with cabbages and other vegetables abundantly supplied. They had to do without fresh meat, but not without greens, and we hope when the return fleet arrives, to have with God's blessing sufficient cattle again, to supply all; and that the churn will also be going, which is now standing still; for the Saldanhars are again visiting us without fear. Would that we were supplied with plate copper, upon which the barter of oxen chiefly depends. At present we do not possess a pound's weight, but for sheep we have enough wire.

The fort at present is in a proper state of defence and well provided with outworks. We are still adding to the defences, and making the embankments stronger; they have been raised a few feet higher, or 16 Rhineland feet in height, capable of withstanding a severe attack from Englishmen, whom, should they come, we expect in February. We trust, however, that they will find enough to do at home to delay thinking about us for the purpose of capturing the return vessels. We, however, remain on our guard, as we have been told by the officers of the ships that 20 well armed English ships are cruising, no one knows where.

The stores and other necessities asked for we hope to receive by the following return fleet, but in order to be prepared for emergencies we have landed stores from the ships, as our receipts will show.

(Signed) J. VAN RIEBEECK.  
JACOB REYNIERSZ.

Dated in the Fort, 31st December, 1653.

N.B.—Each ship takes some cabbage-lettuce, cabbage and turnip seed, won here every day, to see whether fresh Cape seeds will not be better for India than the old Dutch seeds sent to you.

List of papers sent to Batavia per *Naarden*. Nos. 1—6.

List of papers sent to India per *Breda*. Nos. 1—5.

List of papers sent to India per *Lam*. Nos. 1—2.

### RESOLUTIONS.

Sunday, Jan. 19, 1653.—See journal of the same date.

Friday, Feb. 21.—See journal of the same date.

(N.B.—The young shepherd David Jansz, murdered by Herry and his comrades, is here described as having had a hand in

1653.

31st Dec.

19th Jany.

21st Feby.

1653. slaughtering and eating the sheep stolen by Jan Blanx and others.)
- 21st Feb. — Tuesday, June 3.—See journal of the same date.
- 3rd June. Thursday, June 5.— do. do.
- 5th June. Friday, June 6.— do. do.
- 6th June. Friday, June 6.— do. do.
- 25th July. Friday, July 25.— do. do.
- 19th August. Tuesday, Aug. 19.—The Commander having with him no other person of rank than a sergeant and two assistants (the latter both young men) and therefore no one to whom, in case of his absence or death, the government could be entrusted, so that serious loss might result to the establishment here; it has been found necessary to appoint a proper person for that purpose. Hence the Council, strengthened by the skipper and merchant of the ship *Phoenix*, and convinced of the merits of Jacob Reyniersz, junior merchant on the said vessel, elect him to the office of *Secunde*, to act as Administrator in case of the absence or death of Commander J. van Riebeeck; subject of course to the approval of the Board of Seventeen and the High Government at Batavia. Such a measure is required for the safety and good government of the residency, as matters have already so far advanced that the ships can always be well provided with refreshments, so that it would be a pity if, for want of able persons, these advantages are again lost.
- 30th August. Saturday, August 30.—Permission granted to Adolphus ten Bengervoort, bachelor, and Janneken Willemsz, spinster, both of Amsterdam, and now on board the *Koning David* and on their way to India, to be united in wedlock. There being no lawful impediment, it is ordered that they shall be married the day after to-morrow (Monday) before the Council, that the ship's departure be not delayed.
- 1st October. Wednesday, October 1.—See journal of the same date.
- 3rd October. Friday, October 3.—See journal of the same date.
- 11th October. Saturday, October 11.—Jacob Reyniersz: arrived with his eight men this evening from Saldanha Bay. He states that many of the French crew had been very civil, and begged to be accepted in the Company's service, because they were only fed on seals' flesh, penguins, &c., which they are besides to catch themselves. Nor did they get any bread whatever to eat. They promised to do their duty faithfully and teach us everything they knew. Reyniersz had therefore ordered Verburgh to accept them, because it would be to the advantage of the Company. This might also make the Frenchman so short-handed, that his return home would become impossible, and he might be compelled to offer his ship and cargo to the Company for sale, or to ask our help. In the latter case he would be placed under great obligation to us, and his owners deprived for good of every wish to return hither. The French sailors would also do good service in seal hunting, teach us how to cure the skins properly, and perhaps give us much other valuable information. It was likewise considered that it would be a deed of compassion to take the men because of their pressing request and

lamentations, and that four men should return overland with orders to the *Rode Vos* to use their best endeavours, not only to take into service those who voluntarily offered themselves, but to tempt as many as possible to come to the Cape overland, that the French captain might be hampered as much as possible, his employers for ever deprived of the wish to come back, and a proper knowledge regarding the curing of seal skins obtained from the men. The three convicts were also to be taken from the Islands, on which they had been abandoned by the French officers, a work of mercy to which no one would object. For in 1642 some of our people, banished on Robben Island by the Hon. Caron, of the *Rotterdam*, were taken off by the English, when still our friends, and carried by them home *via* England. We may therefore do the same to these three convicts. The French captain will take the letter to be prepared to-morrow. He intends leaving about the 25th inst. The four men already mentioned will convey the documents to him overland, and every attempt is to be made to induce him to come to Table Bay, that such steps may be taken as shall be most advantageous to the Company.

1653.

11th October.

Tuesday, October 21.—All our cattle, 44 in number, stolen last Sunday by the Watermen during Divine service. The thieves have always been protected by us since our arrival, and we have shown them much kindness, especially the interpreter Herry, who daily dined at our table, and was clothed with Dutch clothes and adorned with a copper chain, a stick and plates. The others likewise were always well fed, and consequently always prepared to fetch water and fuel, to milk the cows and take charge of the calves. We were as kind to them as if they were our own people, and we believed that they were as favourably disposed towards us. We find that we have been deceived. The common people, who are the greatest sufferers, are very much embittered against them, and vowing vengeance. This course however, would cause great irritation, and for good put an end to all intercourse with the Saldanhars, the chief object of the Company here. The Saldanhars, we fear, will, for some time to come, hesitate to approach us with their cattle, dreading that we intend to take vengeance. We have accordingly resolved, notwithstanding the murder of young David Jansen, who herded the cattle at the time, and because the rogues were not captured red handed, to publish an order, forbidding all and every one to do the least harm to the natives, whether Beach-rangers or Saldanhars, when they show themselves at the fort; yea! not even to Herry, who is evidently the sole cause of the crime; but to show them as much kindness as possible; yea! more kindness than was shown them before, in order to remove the fears of the Saldanhars, and convince them that we do not desire to revenge an injury, and certainly not without cause; also that we do not attach any importance to any vengeance taken upon the Beach-rangers, as it would interfere with our intercourse with the Saldanhars, which is of much importance to the Company. We

21st October.



1653. might also punish the innocent with the guilty, and the last error would be worse than the first. And in order to ensure safety on the road to the forest, the foresters shall always be together to the number of ten, whilst six wood carriers, always armed, shall attend the wagon. The men within the fort shall be divided into four companies, each one to have its place, in case of surprise, and also to appoint men under the gunner to work the cannon.

21st October.

23rd October.

Thursday, October 23.—A few of the musketeers guarding the woodcutters in the forest hastily arrived with the news that some Saldanhars—among them a Captain from whom last year we had bartered much cattle, and had caught and returned one which had strayed away—had brought the information that Herry was lying in False Bay with the stolen cattle and had requested the Saldanhars to be allowed to live with them; but the latter had refused, knowing that his cattle had been stolen from the Dutch. The said Saldanha Captain had also stated this to us last Saturday evening, adding that he had seen the animals, and making signs to the carpenters that more men with fire-arms should be sent for, and that he would bring them to Herry to recover the cattle. Having heard this news, and considered that the Beach-rangers, Herry's allies, were the cause of all the injury hitherto sustained by us, and that the Saldanhars had shown us unbroken kindness, as was again proved last year; and that they preferred to trade without the intervention of Herry, who never dared to venture among them unless accompanied by some of our men (one troop excepted, who seemed to be somewhat friends of Herry, though even these he and his allies approached with fear, always fleeing whenever any Saldanhars visited the fort, Herry alone remaining under our safe protection), it became more and more evident that, in accordance with the opinion of all who have visited the Cape from time to time and also those of the wrecked ships *Mauritius* and *Haerlem*, that the Saldanhars and Watermen were always hostile towards each other; that the Watermen prevented trade with the Saldanhars, and that therefore we would do a service to the Saldanhars by following Herry and his tribe,—the Saldanhars signifying that we should kill both Herry and the Watermen in order to trade with us more peaceably. It would not be necessary to do this only for the Saldanhars' sake, but Herry and his confreres have given us cause sufficient to take revenge for the murder of the boy and the theft of the cattle. It was finally resolved, after mature deliberation, to send 17 strong soldiers, victualled for four or five days, towards False Bay, under command of Corporal J. v. Harwarden, a prudent and careful man. They were to remain during the night in the forest with the carpenters, and on the following morning to proceed with the Saldanha Captain, or without him, to wherever Herry might be with the cattle. Finding him they were to endeavour to recover the animals and capture him and his people by fair or foul means, being

particularly careful that they were not tempted, deceived or killed by the Saldanhars or Watermen.

1653.

—  
23rd October.  
8th Nov.

Saturday, November 8.—Jacob Reyniersz, junior merchant, stationed here as second person, and Elizabeth van Opdorp, spinster, born at Charlois, and ward of Commander van Riebeeck, desire to be united in wedlock. No impediments existing, the first publication of banns shall take place to-morrow. After the third publication, at the end of the Sunday's service, the ceremony shall be performed by the Secretary Verburgh—no minister being here—in public in the Council Chamber.

Monday, November 17.—The four French sailors having stated that their captain had left them on an island in Saldanha Bay without the prospect of being again taken off, and that therefore they had so earnestly begged of us to be taken on board of the galiot—the captain of the French ship not wishing to assure them that he would again remove them—the Council, mindful of the service which the Company might derive from their knowledge of curing seal skins, and of the coast and trade with Madagascar, &c., resolves from sheer compassion to take the said men into the Company's service, viz. :—Nicola Raine, a healthy man and well acquainted with the Madagascar coast and trade, as arquebusier at 14 gl. ; Martin Cordie as arquebusier at 13 gl. ; Louys Raine and Daniel Mulot as boatmen at 2 gl. per month for three years commencing from October 22nd last, when they came on board.

17th Nov.

Sunday, November 23.—After the reading of the sermon this afternoon, no impediment having occurred, the marriage was solemnised between Jacob Reyniersz, junior merchant, and Elizabeth van Opdorp.

23rd Nov.

Friday, November 28.—Marcus Robbelaert, corporal, and Jan Matyse, quarter-master, disgraced by sentence of the Court :—Robbelaert to be cadet with 10 gl. a month, because having been drunk when on guard he had stabbed the cadet Symon Huybrechts, and committed other mad pranks. He was likewise condemned to pay as compensation to said Huybrechts three months' wages. Jan Matyse was reduced to the rank of common sailor at 9 gl. per month, and is also to receive 100 lashes at the pole, because having been drunk the night before yesterday, he had withstood the Corporal Willem Muller and drawn his knife on him when told to go to bed and make no noise. He would also have stabbed the latter, who had fallen, if the sentry had not interfered, as he had jumped on the prostrate Corporal to repeat the stroke. The sentences are to be carried out to-morrow.

28th Nov.

Wednesday, December 3.—Cornelis Ulricx, junior barber on board the *Vos*, is condemned to be suspended from office for six months, to receive 50 lashes, and to apologise to the skipper and mate, for having libelled them among the crew, greatly to the defamation of their character, causing some mutiny among the men and incipient disobedience, &c. Likewise the butler, Roeloff

3rd Dec.



1653. Direksz, is to receive 50 lashes and to apologize as above for having spread the false reports he had heard from the barber, and for charging the skipper with being a ring thief, &c. Both sentences are to be carried out to-morrow in order to maintain the necessary discipline.
- 3rd Dec.
- 6th Dec. Saturday, December 6.—See journal of the same date.
- 

### ATTESTATIONS, DECLARATIONS AND AFFIDAVITS.

- 4th October. 4th October, 1653.—The undersigned, summoned by the Court to declare in what manner Juriaen Willeke was drowned, testify that they had, with permission of the Commander—thirteen in number—gone out fishing. Some had proceeded in the sloop, others had walked along the shore towards Salt River, at the mouth of which the boat had encountered such a heavy current that it could not enter. The gunner had then said: "Let us throw a line to those on shore, that they may pull us in." This was done, and Jans Gabrielsz: and Gerrit Hermens endeavoured to get hold of it, but in consequence of the quicksands did not dare to go in deeper than to below their knees. Juriaen Willeke then came, saying: "I will run for it, I can swim," passing at the same time the others and standing a hand's breadth above his knees in the water. He caught the line, but before he could gain the shore with it he was thrown down by the heavy current. He threw up his arms, cried out and disappeared at once. The other two who were about a yard behind him, had enough to do to gain the shore, declaring that the sand was in such motion, that being only up to their calves in water, they could hardly keep their feet. Whatever trouble those on land and in the boat took to recover the body of Juriaen Willeke, they could get no sight of him again or assist him in any possible manner.—Signed on the 4th October, 1653, by Bartel Schacht and the others, 17 in number, and confirmed by oath on the 14th October, 1653.
- 19th Nov. 19th November.—The undersigned declare that they heard and seen that Adriaen, the Provost Marshal, being drunk, had wished to go to bed above the guard-house, in which, as he stated, he was prevented by the men who were upstairs, and that having complained to Marcus, the Corporal, who was likewise drunk, and had the watch, the said Corporal went upstairs and with his cane commenced beating the men indiscriminately without knowing who had prevented the Provost from going to bed. That the men, seeing that they were being beaten without cause, commenced to cry out and ask what it meant, as they had not done it. That upon this the Corporal went down again and the Provost went to bed without being molested by anybody. That a little while after Gerrit Fagels went down for some business—he had been innocently beaten by the Corporal upstairs—and that when going through the passage he was again beaten by the Corporal, who said: "There is



Gerrit Fagels, who believes that nobody dares to thrash him." That upon this Fagels said: "You beat me unjustly as you did to Febus upstairs." That upon that he went outside, and on his return, went to bed, thinking that everything was at an end. That then the Corporal again commenced with his cane. That upon this the Cadet Symon Huybrechts, roused by the improper proceedings of the Corporal, who had no cause to continue beating Fagels, kindly took the Corporal round the neck and said: "Do not beat the man any more, as he is innocent." That the Corporal, however, would not listen, and continued beating Fagels, who, being in his shirt, could stand it no longer, and after a severe struggle managed to get outside. That the Corporal then dropped his cane at the door, which Symon returned to him, but that he was angrily asked: "What have you to do with my cane, do you wish to usurp the command?" The Corporal at the same time lifting it on high in a threatening manner. That Symon, fearing that the Corporal would strike him, seized it by the end, but that the Corporal forcibly wrenched it out of his hand and at the same time drawing his sword in great wrath endeavoured to stab Symon, but missing him, the weapon stuck fast in a pole standing near; that the Corporal had to draw it out with great force, and that thereupon lifting it again he struck Symon with it, who cried "Holloa! Corporal! you are not in earnest!" That the latter again struck out and wounded Symon, but that in consequence of the darkness and the number of the men who rushed towards the spot we could not see the wound given. That many then came near, and that the Corporal Jan van Gulick and Dirck Gerrits, Lance-corporal, also approached and with sweet words calmed down their comrade. And that Symon finding himself wounded, quietly slipped outside to have his wound dressed by one of the surgeons. —Signed by Johannes Claassen and three others. Declaration affirmed by oath on the 27th November, 1653.

1653.

19th Nov.

19th November.—The undersigned declare at the request of Marcus Robbeljacht, Corporal, that they have heard the Sergeant, after having made the rounds, order the Corporal not to allow the Provost to leave the Corps de garde. That the latter, wishing to go to bed, was consequently prevented from doing so by the men upstairs, and went to complain to the Corporal. That upon that Marcus went upstairs, and standing on the ladder, beat all indiscriminately, amongst them Fagels, who was descending to go outside for some reason, but whom the Corporal would not allow to go, again beating him. That Fagels having returned, said: "You beat me without cause, as I am not the one who prevented the Provost from going to bed." That the Corporal answered: "You may go to bed," but nevertheless did not cease from thrashing him. That upon this the Cadet Symon Huybrechts left his bed, and asked the Corporal why he beat Fagels, as he was innocent, and wishing to take hold of the Corporal the latter's cane dropped. That it was picked up and restored by Symon to the

19th Nov.

1653.  
19th Nov. Corporal, who cried out: "Keep off, whoever touches my cane touches me." That thereupon drawing his cutlass he made a plunge at Symon, but missing him, the weapon stuck fast in a post standing near. That Symon seeing that the Corporal was in earnest, wished to escape, but that the Corporal having wrenched the cutlass from the post wounded him in the thigh.—Signed by Gabriel Luyenwolt and three others. Above declaration confirmed by oath on the 27th November, 1653.
- 27th Nov. 27th November.—The undersigned declare that they have heard and seen that the Quarter-master Jan Matthys being drunk was lying asleep on a box outside of the guard-house. That when he awoke, he began to sing and make a noise, which Corporal Willem Muller forbade him to do, telling him to go to bed and keep quiet. Upon which Matthys said: "You gallows bird! I won't be ordered by you to go to bed." That at the same time drawing his knife, and holding it in a sinister way, he tried to stab the Corporal, who becoming aware of it retreated backwards and so fell over the boxes. That thereupon the sentry raised his pike, and prevented Matthys from approaching the Corporal. That Matthys was then pulled back by Gabriel Anwol, who with the assistance of Muller took the knife away from him.—Signed by Gabriel Luyenwolt and another. The above declaration confirmed by oath on the 27th Nov., 1653.
- 28th Nov. 28th November.—The undersigned, officers and sailors of the *Roode Vos*, declare that they have never heard such things of their mate Jan Symonsen as our surgeon (barber) Cornelis of the galiot the *Roode Vos* has declared and said; nor that they had heard it from any other person.—Signed by Adriaan Jorisz and eight others. Confirmation of the above by oath on the 29th November, 1653.
- 28th Nov. 28th November.—Surgeon Cornelis has told us in the first place that the mate borrowed an inherited new testament (erf testament) from the gunner Cornelis Gerritsen. In the second place that Surgeon Cornelis Oldrichsen fetched an inherited key (erf sleutel) belonging to Surgeon Aryaen to commence his operations. In the third place that the mate read from the said testament out of the Gospel of John the first chapter, where the words are thus: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God." That then he stuck the said key in the said testament and asked: "Has Cornelis Oldrichsen taken or mislaid my ring? if so, turn thyself round in God's name!" but the testament remained immovable. He then again asked: "Has Cornelis Jorissen taken or mislaid my ring? if so, turn thyself round in God's name!" but the said testament again remained immovable. For the third time the mate said: "Has Elbert Cornelissen Kes taken or mislaid my ring? if so, turn thyself round in God's name!" and then the said testament turned round of itself. The surgeon becoming frightened said: "Mate, has this not been done by your own will?" And then he did it over again and said: "Look well," and then he repeated the words mentioned and the

book turned again. Then the surgeon said: "I wish for a Rixdollar that I did not see it!" But the mate answered: "You see who has been pointed out, but who dares to reveal it?" These are the words which the Surgeon Cornelis spoke to us, as the witnesses show.—Signed by Isebrant Aryaansz Krycher and two others. The above declaration confirmed by oath on the 27th November, 1653.

1653.  
—  
28th Nov.

27th Nov.—On the the 23rd November, 1653, I, Cornelis Oldrichsen, sat on a Sunday evening with the mate in the hut at dinner. After dinner the mate commenced speaking about the skipper, how he had heard on shore that the Commander knew of it, and that it would be revealed. The mate asked me if I would maintain my words, for he said: "If you den't, you will get into trouble." I, Cornelis, then answered: "Mate Jan! neither for you nor for anybody else will I burden my conscience, and oppose the truth, for you know that you have done so. In the first place you asked me 'what is your name?' which I told you, and then you stuck the key into the testament and spoke the words: 'In the beginning, &c.,' but the testament did not move at all. Secondly, you asked the name of the cabin boy, which I also gave, when you uttered the same words without any movement of the testament. Thirdly, you asked the name of the skipper, which I gave as Elbert Cornelisz and then you spoke for the third time: 'Elbert Cornelisz, have you been in my chest and taken the ring from it or mislaid it? if so, turn round in God's name!' Upon that the book at once commenced turning. All this I related to him, upon which he answered: 'If you say so, I will say that you lie like a rogue, for my lie will be as good as your truth, and nobody will believe you, as you have before denied it, and if you say so, I will bring much trouble upon you, and make it hot enough for you.' I answered: 'If you give me the lie, you will do so as an impious man; I took you for another man, not believing that if you appeared before the Commander, you would deny such true things.' I did deny the above and say that I knew nothing about it, because I did not like to have anything to do with other people's affairs, not thinking that they would take such a turn, and also because I feared that you would deny it, as you are already doing, and your words would be more readily believed than mine."—Signed by Tys Jorisz and another (sailors). The above declaration confirmed by oath on the 27th Nov., 1653.

27th Nov.

29th November.—The men of the *Rode Vos* declare that, at the request of Jan Symons, mate of the said galiot, they have heard and seen that Cornelis Ulrichs, surgeon of the said vessel, had said to the mate mentioned: "You are a lying rascal, your statements are villainous, and so are all your witnesses."—Signed by Jurgen Roode and three others. The above declaration confirmed by oath on the 29th November, 1653.

29th Nov.

29th November.—Declaration of the undersigned, that Surgeon Cornelis had said in their presence loudly: "I wish that this day had

29th Nov.



1653.  
29th Nov. already come to an end, and myself were at liberty with 50 cuts on my posteriors." That we had replied: "Surgeon! if you are not guilty, you need not fear a thrashing for uttering any truth whatever." The Surgeon replied: "The mate would do well by saying that he (the mate) had done it, when he would get off, and the mate could well say so without incurring any risks." We replied: "If he is not guilty of it, he cannot say that he is, with a clear conscience."—Signed by Frederik Cloetas and another. The above declaration confirmed by oath on the 29th Nov., 1653.

29th Nov. 29th November.—The undersigned declare that they have heard the butler saying that "he would help the mate to the devil and bring him into all possible trouble," and also other similar things, in order to create great quarrels among the officers and men, trying as he does every day more and more to do. Great mischief is accordingly caused by the butler, and that secretly, so that the mate can have no idea of the abuse to which he is subjected.—Signed by Adriaan van de Pavert and two others. The above declaration confirmed by oath on the 29th November, 1653.

---

### EDICTS (PLAKKATEN).

#### EDICTS ISSUED BY JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK AND COUNCIL.

21st October. October 21, 1653.—Murder by the Hottentots of the cattle herd David Jansz, and the theft of 49 head of cattle by the murderers. Ordered, that, for various reasons in the interest of the Company, no natives, including even the thieves and the late interpreter Herry—the apparent cause of the outrage—should be molested, but on the contrary most civilly treated, not only for the sake of procuring more cattle, but likewise to travel about with a greater degree of safety, this being the best course in the interest of the Company, and for the growth of the settlement.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

Dated 21st October, 1653.

21st Dec. December 21st.—First attempts successfully made to sow some Dutch garden seeds. Gardens open. Precautions necessary to save the crops from being destroyed by the sailors and soldiers, and prevent unpleasantness with the natives, whose cattle is necessary for the health of the crews of the passing ships. Consequently ordered that neither the gardens nor sown lands shall be entered by anyone, in order to take of the fruit without the consent of the Commander. The offender to be treated summarily according to the necessity of the case and to remain two years in irons. It was further decided to order all to do no harm to or frighten the natives; to treat them kindly, to gain their confidence, and to be able to trade with them and find favourable opportunities for exploring the country and for the profit of the Company obtain what may be serviceable; moreover salt and wood are distant about one or two miles from this, and cannot be procured with

safety should the natives around us be unfriendly. Offenders to be punished with 50 cuts in presence of the natives. No one allowed to barter with the natives, whatever it may be, as such a course would be injurious to the Company. All are to regulate themselves according to the general articles (articul brief)—offenders to be punished severely. No one shall go on board or remain on shore during the night without the knowledge of the Commander. The provost shall take offenders in charge, who shall receive 100 cuts; and the provost is likewise ordered to pay particular attention to this order to prevent irregularities. Those compelled by valid reasons to remain on shore during the night shall report themselves to the guard in order to prevent improper occurrences from drunkenness or otherwise. Offenders shall be apprehended and punished and compelled to pay half a real to the provost for lock-up fees (sluit geld). Commanders of ships shall assist in carrying out these orders for the benefit of the Company.

1653.

Done at the Fort Good Hope, this 21st December, 1653.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

## JOURNAL (*continued*).

1654.

January 1st.—Fine weather. Gave the men each a tankard of Spanish wine for the New Year at their mess. The carriers of the palisades having very heavy work to do, receive an additional supply of tobacco, and every evening likewise an additional half quartern of arrack and Spanish wine to keep up their courage; also landed the shoes from the *Breda*, and distributed the same among them, as hardly one had a pair of shoes to his feet. Death of the cadet Marcus Pouwelsz.

1654.

January 3rd.—Hottentoots without cattle arrive at the fort, boldly stealing whatever they can lay their hands upon, not hesitating to deprive our people even under the fort, when unarmed, of their property, and coaxing the children aside to rob them of their brass buttons, though they are so well treated. The carriers of the palisades report that daily some 50 armed Hottentoots are loitering about the forest without approaching the fort. Do not know what to make of it. Decided to protect the carriers with 20 musketeers, and the carpenters there with 2 additional soldiers, and besides the 5 soldiers to guard the gardener's house outside the fort, to have 5 musketeers for the gardens, the fowl, duck and geese houses; also to add 2 musketeers to the armed herds in the pastures, in order from our side to avoid all estrangement of the natives, which can only be avoided by taking good care of our own, for if they have stolen anything, they are at once afraid to come near to the fort where they are much wanted, if only to

1654.

fetch fuel for the cook, which assistance is beginning to be rendered to the great relief of our people; likewise also for the re-opening of the cattle trade, which, as yet, hangs fire. Accordingly we intend soon to visit them in person to try and persuade them, but fear that Herry breeds mischief among the Saldanhars, and may treacherously conspire against us, for which we hope to be prepared.

January 4th (Sunday).—Fine weather.

January 5th and 6th.—Arrival of the *Vreede*, having left the *Vlie* on the 23rd August in company with the *Naerden* and *Lam*, also the *Dracck* and *Calff* not yet arrived. Had 60 sick, many of scurvy; sent at once on board some big bags of cabbage and other vegetables. 4 men dead. Received duplicates of letters per *Naerden* and *Lam*, also authority from the 17 to be provided with all necessaries from the arriving vessels.

January 7th.—Some of the men of said ship being on shore, the wife of the Catechist delivered to us papers referring to a quarrel, and signed by the chief mate, &c., charging the skipper and junior merchant with bad government on board, and stating that the vessel had been in danger of never arriving in harbour.

January 8th.—Went on board for more information. Council members with us. Appeared that said officers cordially hated the skipper and merchant, stating, contrary to their charges, that the skipper had behaved properly as regards the management of his ship; also discovered that the butler (steward) and quartermaster had stolen wine from the hold and committed other improprieties; also that the junior merchant had treated the Catechist very badly, who was very ill from scurvy, and brought on shore to be cured and made comfortable. Reyniersz and the skipper of the galiot authorized to make further inquiries, and to take notes. Reported at night that more irregularities had been revealed, and the said officers had conducted themselves very insolently towards the skipper, so that the case required further investigation. Decided to go on board tomorrow with the Council, to enable the ship to proceed after the restoration of order. The skipper ordered to be quick with taking in water to prevent delay from that quarter also, whilst we did what we could to refresh the crew.

January 9th.—Commander and Council proceed on board for inquiry; found things so bad that it was difficult to know what to do. Officers would not give evidence regarding the sobriety of the skipper and his ability to discharge his duties, though kindly urged to do so as will appear from the evidence.

January 10th.—Resolved in Council to demand the evidence required of the witnesses in order to be able to proceed with the case in the interest of the Company. Some Hottentoots—Strantloopers—and their wives at the fort, who had helped Herry to steal the cattle. Showed no signs of recognizing them, but treated them as well as we could, with bread, arrack, tobacco and pipes. Told us that Herry had gone far inland, and had frightened the



Saldanhars by saying that if they came with their cattle we would deprive them of it and kill them, but seeing our friendly ways and that, as last year, we had bought 3 or four beasts, their fears had vanished, and they would soon return with all their effects to exchange some cattle for copper. Treated them as well as we could, but the mischief is that the men of the ships can with difficulty be prevented from coming in contact with the natives; yea, some skippers (discreet persons) even dare to say that, not being able to obtain enough cattle to their liking from us, they desire with hundreds of men to proceed inland to shoot cattle, and to take them if the Hottentoots do not wish to part with them, and such talk more, which can be proved by evidence. Commission returns from board ship, and reports that the officers had reluctantly given evidence, but at last had declared and subscribed that they had seen the skipper drunk on the 14th December, and also before, but that he had been unfit for, or neglected his duty, they could not say. Commission convinced that these persons were strongly prejudiced against the skipper and intended to get him under their thumb, acknowledging him as skipper but allowing him no more authority than they liked. Time will produce stronger evidence of this; necessary consequently that though they would not like to render the necessary obedience, the indispensable discipline is to be restored; they also stated that the chief surgeon had been carelessly treating the medicine chest and some patients; consequently had this matter investigated by the surgeon of the fort and the sub-surgeons of the ship, who reported that 2 patients had been carelessly treated, the one with a broken arm and the other with a tumor on the knee. The arm broken since the ships departure from the Vlie and not yet healed, causing great agony; other improprieties of his also came to light, viz: that he had most insolently treated the skipper when asking after the patients as appears from the evidence.

January 11th (Sunday).—More declarations brought on shore from the boatswain, boatswain's mate, chief carpenter, corporal and lance-pesade, that they had been deceived into signing certain charges against the skipper, and that their only object was to testify to the troubles between the sub-merchant Born, and the Catechist, but not to accuse the skipper, who had conducted himself as he ought. Some are therefore withdrawing, and it is becoming plain that the 1st and 2nd mate, sergeant and constable, have resolved to become the masters of the skipper, and so obtain the chief command. To be further inquired into.

January 12th.—Council resolves to have all the evidence verified in order to make further enquiry, and proceed as may be necessary. Journal brought ashore by the deputation and kept chiefly by the mate and sergeant, in which, since their departure from the Vlie, they had written down everything. Were very unwilling to part with it. From the journal the animus against the skipper plainly appears. But it is not clear that the skipper is quite innocent. Case consequently requires settlement. A pity that there are not

1654.

more ships in the bay, in order to distribute the malcontents among them. Obtained two young bulls. Natives state they will soon be here with more cattle, but we shall not obtain more cattle unless provided with copper-plate. We have enough wire for sheep, but the cows go a longer way for the common people.

January 13th.—Wind prevents intercourse with the ship. Presented the palisade carriers with 50lbs. tobacco and 15 tankards of Spanish wine.

January 14th.—Wind still bad. Sent the men to prepare a morgen of ground for a garden. Will require more garden, as the sick consume a great deal.

January 15th.—Resolved, in order not to detain the ship, to end further enquiry, and that the Commission shall ask the parties whether they have any more charges to bring, or defence to offer, as appears in our Resolution. Caught in one haul 4 or 5,000 harders; sent 1,100 on board the *Vrede*; the rest were salted for daily use.

January 16th.—Skipper and officers of the *Vrede* ordered on shore and the mate of the galliot sent on board to take temporary charge; the former again questioned as yesterday. They would answer but little, and the Catechist would say no more than that he would take counsel from wiser men at Batavia, making the Council understand that he did not consider it sufficiently able to settle his dispute with Born, who is very humble, and, acknowledging his offence, desires a speedy adjustment, &c. Interrogated the officers of the *Vrede* on every charge, and found that the journal had been kept by the sergeant Jan Regencamp, since their departure from the *Vlie*, and that many had ignorantly signed and been misled.

January 17th.—Council resolves, in order to prevent further delay, to stay all further inquiry, and to send the evidence with the vessel under cover to Batavia, leaving the decision to the Governor and Council of India. The chief mate, sergeant, second mate and gunner to proceed with the vessel, but to do no duty; also the junior merchant, Willem Born, because he had beaten the Catechist without cause and otherwise ill-treated him, and to appoint for the safe voyage of the vessel Jacob Reyniersz, as chief in command, to assist the skipper in his duty, &c. The steward and the two quarter-masters, also the cooper, are condemned to fall three times from the yard-arm, and receive one hundred lashes before the mast for having stolen the wine from the hold.

January 18th (Sunday).—Calm fine weather.

January 19th.—Sentence carried out. Heavy S. Easter.

January 20th.—The same. No communication with the ships; quiet at noon, as bad as ever in the afternoon.

January 21st.—Ditto.

January 22nd.—Ditto.

January 23rd.—Fine weather. N.W. breeze preventing the ship from leaving.



January 24th.—Same weather. At night S. Easter so that the *Vrede* was able to leave, and was out of the bay before dark.

January 25th (Sunday).—South-east till noon when the wind became Westerly at sea but in the bay variable.

January 26th and 27th.—The woodmen reported that a certain troop of Saldanhars with 11 or 1,200 head of cattle and sheep were about a mile away from the fort, among which mostly all the stolen cattle were, and also those who had a hand in the theft, excepting Herry, whom they had not seen. The Saldanhars calling out to us to come with copper for cattle; not certain whether no treachery planned by Herry is intended; quite convinced that they would think nothing of killing us for the sake of the cattle. Destitute of copper plate, and thick wire so scarce that we could not buy more than 5 or 6 cows, as they will give nothing but sheep for the thin wire of which we have at present not much; our going to them would therefore be of little advantage, as we are obliged to be somewhat liberal with our terms; consequently will keep away from them for the present, and treat all coming to the fort with, or without cattle, very well to remove their fears, and so gain time for the arrival of copper plates, which, if we had a supply, would have enabled us personally to visit them in order to draw them to the fort with their cattle,—at present afraid to come in consequence of the theft and the murder, which however we pretend to care little about.

January 28th.—S. East. No work on the fort possible, so sent the men to the forest for wood for platforms for the guns. Sent, in consequence of their repeated requests 19 armed soldiers and the Catechist Willem Barentsz: to the Saldanhars with some wire to obtain as much cattle and sheep as possible; also some bread, wine, tobacco and pipes to treat them. Set a silversmith at work to discover whether he can extract silver from a certain mineral found. —Has been so far successful that he has obtained a better species than tin. The Catechist returned in the afternoon with 2 head of the stolen cattle. The Saldanhars not at all willing to trade, very likely, as last year, influenced by Herry who is allied with the Captain, as we found at the time and now see as clearly as daylight; neither saw Herry nor the Captain, but the latter's father, an old and very stout man who had last year lived with Herry under the fort and now appears to be Chief of the whole gang, and among whose cattle all our stolen beasts were; also all the watermen and one of Herry's wives, who is very deaf, and all his children, among them a girl who had lived with us and whom we called Eva. Said old man had come to the fort with a wife, to bring the news that the Catechist had obtained the two beasts, and to get some tobacco which was given him with as much wine and bread as he could consume. Could only gather from him that Herry was far inland, but our opinion is that he and the Captain were hiding in the bushes, afraid of being caught; assured them that such would not take place, though it is as much as can be borne to see our cattle

1654.

—



1654.

and the thieves, and show them friendship instead of taking vengeance and paying ourselves for the losses and insults suffered, and the shedding of Christian blood, which could easily be done as they have about 12 or 1,300 head of cattle and 5 or 600 sheep which by breeding would provide the ships and the garrison abundantly as they are not more than 50 persons whom we might catch with 14 or 15 men. Of this they were very much afraid, though having 20 armed men among them, continually asking whether we intended to seize them or their cattle; they were told that such were not our intentions. We shewed them copper and tobacco with which we intended to buy, treating them likewise with bread and wine. As they came of their own accord, we decided not to do them any harm this time, though we suffer much annoyance from them as they meet no one that is unprotected without robbing him, and in case of his showing any opposition, they threaten to murder him with the assegai on his breast; cannot bear this much longer, it would pay better to punish this guilty gang, taking their cattle for our support and their persons as slaves in chains to fetch fuel and do other work to relieve our men, who have unceasingly to suffer much from them, and daily beg us to pay them off. Not one Councillor who would object, consequently dare not moot the subject at the Board as we would be outvoted, though that would not trouble us much as we would at once obtain sufficient cattle. The natives are too lazy to trouble themselves with ivory or musk, those which they bring being found on the road. It is the same with musk, what they carry around their necks they take from cats found dead or caught in snares, not keeping them alive, but feeding on the flesh. It is the same with feathers, a saleable quantity will hardly be gathered in 100 years, so that if we revenge ourselves on this troop the others would know the reason and not mind it; would therefore like our masters to weigh this matter, as next season we will have the same opportunity for revenge as now, and in the meantime we will continue to bear the nuisance, and do our best to keep our men away from them. Went before dark to the mountain where the mineral had been found, with picks, crowbars, &c.; dug up some stones and found said mineral in large quantities apparently, and took various samples home, shining most extraordinarily, to see what is in them. Feared the South-easter would blow down all the houses during the night.

January 29th.—Commenced with the redoubt at Salt River, made with bush like the wicker work dikes on the Rhine, for more defence, and preventing an enemy from landing with cannon between the fort and Salt River, also, by having soldiers behind in ambush, to observe the boats landing. Wind too heavy to proceed, sand blown into the workmen's eyes. Sent the men to clear ground for gardens. Sent the Catechist to the Saldanhars to try and buy cattle and if possible obtain some pots from them to melt the ore, which seems to contain silver and gold, which God grant for the reimbursement of the Company. Amen. Catechist returns with

two head of cattle, and reports that the Saldanhars would not allow them within the circle of their huts because they were not allowed to enter the fort, which in consequence of their faithlessness could not be allowed. Would hardly trade, pointing to the mountains where there were many natives with cattle ready to come.

January 30th.—Redoubt works proceeded with. Sent for a lot of salt at the pans—salt is white and so abundant that a couple of “flutes” could be filled with it.

January 31st.—Men sent for salt; could not buy 2 cows from the Saldanhars as we had no copper plate or thick wire; bought one in the afternoon with difficulty for some thin wire.

N.B —Wind and weather regularly noted every day.

1654.

February 1st.—Fine in the morning; hard wind in the afternoon.

February 2nd.—Galiot despatched to Robben Island to recall the bookkeeper Verburg to assist us in various matters, his place to be taken by provisional assistant Jan Woutersz: who is to look after the seal killing and to bring as many skins and shells as they can carry. Natives and cattle visible by hundreds about a  $\frac{1}{4}$  mile from the fort. Have no intention to sell for wire and possess but little sheep which they do not apparently like to part with, trade consequently at a stand still, and unless we get copper plate soon there will not be a single animal at hand for the return fleet, whilst the garden produce is so scorched by the continual drought and heat that we fear that it will also be very little. Galiot leaves at night.

February 3rd.—Warm and calm in the morning, at night hard S.E.

February 4th.—The same wind and extreme drought, no work on fort or redoubt possible; men sent to the wood for small beams for the platforms of the guns, which have hitherto been placed on loose planks, consequently many have been already broken.

February 5th.—Redoubt works proceeded with, the gate fixed and the batteries being finished; wind too heavy in the afternoon to go on—had to send for fuel, difficult to be got, delaying much work.

February 6th.—Proceeded with the redoubt. Obtained from a stone about the size of a child's head 1 mace and 5 candareens of fine silver, the value of about 10 stivers—hope to obtain better ore deeper in the earth. The specimen obtained is a stone above ground just taken for trial; will take further steps. Ordered to make the tools required for pottery in order to be able to make crucibles; also to have coal burnt in the bush.

February 7th.—Sent 5 men to the mountain to make a hole in the ground and see about the mineral below the surface. Hottentoots visited the redoubt at night thinking that there was nobody

1654.

—



1654.

and intending to steal the iron off the gates, &c. Detected by the guard they ran away. All are allies of Herry having with them our stolen cattle and Herry's people. We suffer so much annoyance from them that it is becoming unbearable. Not strange therefore if this lot were disposed of—not killing them but taking their cattle and using them as slaves to work on the islands for seal catching, &c.; would then be able to get on nicely with the rest who are very simple minded. These however do nothing but steal, and are unwilling to sell a single beast (of which they have many fine ones) excepting the sick, lame or halt. Return of the Galiot with Frederick Verburg and 6 firkins of oil, also 5,373 skins. Verburg reports that the work could not last longer than 3 weeks as the seals were disappearing fast; the people grumble because of the dirty stinking work, and he had great difficulty in keeping order.

February 8th.—Calm weather, succeeded by strong S.E.

February 9th.—Three silversmiths at work to experiment on the minerals again found. Hard red earth seeming to be full of the scrapings of gold or silver. Of the first kind found, it is difficult to get any more, it being so hard and very difficult to get out of the ground. The newly found stuff is more manageable; can go into it as deep as we like; will see what there is in it; will get from it more in one month than from the other in a whole year. Some natives arrive belonging to other tribes with 3 sheep and lambs—bought the animals, these people very simple and pleasant to associate with; filled their bags with bread, and gave each a glass of wine. Arrival of the *Calff* which had left Patria with the *Naerden*, &c., brought letters d.d. 31st May from Amsterdam—duplicates of receipts per former ships. Had touched at St. Jago; 8 had died, and at present 20 sick were in bed, but the *Draeck*, which it had seen on Friday for the last time, had already 20 dead and almost all its people sick, including the skipper, so that the ship was almost helpless—trust that it may still arrive. Good lookout kept, so that if seen succour may be sent.

February 10th.—No signs of the *Draeck*. Natives—friends of Herry—arrive at the fort, in consequence of the firing by the ship; wish to go on board to fill their stomachs; told them to bring cattle and sheep. Answered that others were coming with oxen, &c., and they did not wish to barter theirs. Told them in a laughing and playful manner, palavering with them, that those who sold us cattle would go on board, but not the others, &c., &c. Would have enough cattle if we only had plate copper. Nothing found in the new mineral (potclay?). Ordered to try the other hard stuff again. Fine rain during the night—the first in 7 weeks—the plantations wonderfully benefitted.

February 11th.—Had great trouble in obtaining a cow for some time, in consequence of some watermen and friends of Herry prejudicing the natives' minds. No signs of the *Draeck*.

February 12th.—Ship in sight behind the Lion Mountain, supposed to be the *Draeck*. Sent the sloop full of men with the skipper



of galiot to its assistance. Wind too heavy to reach the roads—anchored at Robben Island.

February 13th.—Wind still prevents approach of ship. Silver-smiths report that they could, in spite of their best exertions, get nothing out of the mineral, and what they had found the first time was not real silver, though it appeared good when tested at the touchstone but not so on the “steek,” emitting smoke and becoming black when brought into contact with fire. Nevertheless sent for a large load of the substance to be examined at Batavia—don’t think we have the right sort of mineralogists here.

February 14th.—Heavy wind—all threatened to be blown under foot. The *Draeck* still at Robben Island.

February 15th (Sunday).—Arrival of the *Draeck* full of sick and scurvy patients, almost incapable of managing the sails; had obtained some penguins and eggs at Robben Island. The six sheep there had increased to 11—one ewe still to lamb, and all so fat that they could hardly walk. Resolved, as sheep die here more than they increase, to make a permanent pasture of the island. The Biscayan sloop wrecked when the vessel was tacking—without any boats now.

February 16th.—The *Draeck* towed nearer to the shore.

February 17th.—Cloudy sky—some rain.

February 18th.—Hard dry S. Easter.

February 19th.—Ditto.

February 20th.—The chief mate of the pinnace, the *Calff*, disrated by the Council and ordered to be keelhauled and sent without pay to Patria with the return fleet, because he had treacherously and without cause at dinner stabbed the second mate under the arm-pits, nearly resulting in death. See sentence. Galiot despatched to Dassen Island to bring all the skins and oil at hand there, to be forwarded to Patria per return fleet. The men also to be brought back to enable the seals to increase again, &c.

February 21st.—Galiot leaves.

February 22nd (Sunday).—Morning, S.E.; afternoon calm.

February 23rd.—Drought and wind injurious to the gardens. The mate undergoes his sentence.

February 24th.—Return of the galiot with 2,000 skins and 3 casks of oil. Would have obtained more oil but cannot keep them in the old casks. Cement and clinkers required from home to make underground tanks. Enough of those bricks in the *Draeck* and *Calff* under the cargo upon the keel, but we did not amuse ourselves with taking them from that position, as the ships would require other ballast, which would cause too much delay. Caught on board the *Calff* half a boatful of fine herrings—about 1,000 were salted—making the finest pickled herrings in the world. Never caught so many together, generally only found 3 or 4 in a shoal of harders, which, when salted, were found to be very delicate, and will be a great treat for the officers of the return fleet.

February 25th.—Warm and calm in the morning, rain at night.

1654.

February 26th.—Great benefit to the gardens from the rain.

February 27th.—In the morning fine garden-weather and rain; during the night heavy S.E.

February 28th.—Council convened, and proposed by skippers of *Draeck* and *Calff* to confirm the temporary appointments of those promoted to the vacancies caused by death and bad conduct, and to do so by giving them the additional half-pay. Meyndert Harmanz, of Amsterdam, third watch, drawing 26 guildens per month on board the *Draeck*, to be made junior mate with 29 guildens per month from the 1st March. Jacob Buy van Baert, gunner's mate, receiving 14 gl., to be third watch, *vice* Harmanz, promoted, and to have 20 gl. . Pieter van Delft, boatswain, at 8 gl. on the *Calff*, to be cook's mate, *vice* Reyger Pietersz, deceased, with 11 gl. . Gerrit Hansz, of Swol, boatswain, at 12 gl. on the *Calff*, to be gunner's mate, *vice* Symon Cornelis van Ossanes, with 13 gl. . N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted every day.

1654.

March 1st (Sunday).—A dead whale washed on shore, about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles from the fort.

March 2nd and 3rd.—Death of a sailor, Gerrit Bruyne. Found the fish to be in size and shape a Northcape whale, fairly provided with blubber and whalebone. Found the latter too small to be of use. Had no casks to hold the oil, otherwise we might have melted the blubber. The Hottentoots buried various pieces of blubber in the sand.

March 4th.—Calm weather, a little rain.

March 5th.—Strong S.E.

March 6th.—Heard from the woodmen that Herry's allies were squatting on the mustard grounds about a mile away. Sent the Catechist with copper and tobacco, bread and wine, to see whether they would trade, found they only had about 200 head of cattle and 150 sheep, saying that all their cattle had been robbed by the Fishmen (called by them Soaqua), and pointing to wounds on many of them obtained in the battle. Could therefore not part with any stock. If copper-plate could be had, some cows might have been obtained. Would only give sheep for wire. Could only obtain a calf for about two lbs. wire. These Hottentoots hard at work boiling oil from the dead whale, which they preserved in dry "sea bamboo," drifting everywhere about the Cape, and washed ashore. They told us they rubbed it on their bodies, and if we gave them bread they soaked it in it.

March 7th.—Injurious S.E. . Catechist and armed men sent out to other natives to barter cattle. Could not find them.

March 8th. (Sunday).—Heavy S.E.

March 9th.—Skippers of *Draeck* and *Calff* take their leave for Batavia and our letters for India.

March 10th.—Ships not able to leave. Allies of Herry arrive with a captain whose knee had grown crooked in consequence of a

wound ; requested to be healed by the surgeon who believed it possible ; told to do his best to win the good favour of these people.

March 11th.—Fine, and rainy.

March 12th.—Fine, and rainy ; S.E. in the afternoon. Departure of *Draeck* and *Calff*.

March 13th.—Reported that the *Draeck* lay becalmed under the land and the *Calff* was out of sight. Went to sea and found it so. What is the use of waiting for each other so long in the bay, when as soon as they are out and fit they part company ? Return of the *Draeck*—had during the preceding night been in great danger of being wrecked upon the rock between Robben Island and this ; before daylight it had lost sight of the *Calff* and had in consequence of the high sea determined to put back.

March 14th.—Gave notice with a gun to the *Draeck* that as the wind was favourable it had to go, which it did.

March 15th.—Same heavy wind. Very dry.

March 16th, 17th and 18th.—Resolved to place all the ewes on Robben Island, and keep the rams here for the ships, excepting 3 or 4 for breeding, as they thrive there better than here, where they become bilious and sick in consequence of the abundance of water, and die faster than they increase, many are also destroyed by wild beasts in spite of our care. To prevent Company's ships from taking them away, as some have threatened, 4 or 5 men will be left in charge to collect likewise seal skins and boil oil—F. Verburg to arrange the whole, and see whether there be good ground for cultivation, and opportunity for a well as on Dassen Island, also to provide a good shed for the men and the sheep, for which purpose reeds and wood were provided.

March 19th.—Warm, sunshine.

March 20th.—Warm, sunshine, evening hard S.S. East.

March 21st and 22nd.—The same.

March 23rd.—Fine, sunshine.

March 24th.—Galiot leaves for object mentioned with 19 ewes and a young ram, still a suckling, and some reeds and wood for the shed.

March 25th.—In the morning heavy S.E., in the afternoon warm and calm.

March 26th.—Warm sunshine in the morning, at night heavy S.E.

March 27th and 28th.—The same.

March 29th (Palm Sunday).—Quiet sultry weather ; in the afternoon rather heavy thunder, lightning and rain, also hail ; about night quieter.

March 30th.—Arrival of the Galiot bringing for show a ram of 10 months old, 4 ewes and one old ram left by us on the island. The former was so remarkably fat that it was surprising ; it was as large as a year old calf with a tail weighing about 30 lbs., the whole sheep weighing 170 lbs. Of the 6 placed there ten months ago, 13 had been reared, whilst three had died, so that in that short time we had produced 410 lambs, consequently



1854.

=

worth while to place a battery of 2 six pounders and 7 or 8 men on the island, to breed sufficient stock there for supplies, though not a single one be obtained any more; sheep growing so beautifully there, whilst dying here in consequence of the wet ground and wild animals, from which evils they are altogether protected at the island where there are only snakes, which do them no harm; our people ordered to destroy them had also after long search and trouble dug a well near the shed, the ground being a bare rock about 7 feet deep, whence the water oozes from all sides and so abundantly that in cases of necessity ships may be supplied, but in consequence of its sandy nature the ground is unfit for agriculture. Seals not so abundant as to repay the trouble of collecting skins or oil; had however placed a small ship's boiler there with orders to get as many skins and as much oil as possible, and if every day only 10 are caught, six times the expenses required for the garrison would be obtained, even if a skin be only worth a guilder. With these 20 sheep on the island we have there altogether 33, and 10 rams on the continent, to be placed there at the first opportunity; kept here they remain small and poor whilst there they become large and fat, and can be taken away when required: the increase will be of inestimable advantage for the ships. The sheep took shelter in one part of the shed whilst the men inhabited the other side. Shed to be enlarged if the sheep multiply. Verburg gave the corporal Marcus Robbeljaert in command orders as follow:—All things being arranged, on Monday the two Frenchmen must be set to catching seals, you being at hand to maintain order and regularity. Seals having been killed and flayed, Louys shall cut off the blubber and collect as much as will gradually fill the boiler in the way often explained to you. As the sheep are rather wild and keep aloof from those now brought, the shepherd must collect them together every four or six days, when they shall be counted and a report made about them; no ewes to be milked, as the lambs would be in danger of perishing, and would not thrive so well as with a full supply of milk. To keep the sheep clean and fine, the herd shall every day carry dry greens into the stable, cleaning it 2 or 3 times a week, collecting the dung and bedding for manure to have enough for a few plots of ground, in course of time to be cleared. In this manner all discomfort will be warded from the animals and their deaths prevented. To take care also that they are not beaten or injured that they die, which might be done by the herd or someone else anxious to eat meat. Any sheep dying from one or other cause, the carcase is to be buried and shown to one of the fort when occasion offers, so all roguery will be prevented, &c. To have all things certain, a journal is to be kept and a register of the number of sheep, and their increase; what skins and oil have been obtained are to be communicated to the Commander by letter. Good watch, day and night, to be kept lest any of the crews of the ships unexpectedly seize the sheep which

might easily be done by the "Oranghlams" or homeward bound, who are light fingered, the good ones excepted, and neither care for the devil nor his dam, and who would take them by force if you would not give them willingly. These people are to be dissuaded and reasoned with as much as possible, nor are you to be satisfied with assurances that such is done by order of the Commander, or bribed with arrack; but according to your honour and oath you are to do your duty. Hence you are to inquire from what ships the boats have come, to inform the Commander at the first opportunity and enable him to act in time. If anything has been omitted in this order you are left to your own good judgement to decide and act. Confide you to the care of the Most High. Robben Island, 28th March, 1654. By order of Commander Riebeeck.

(Signed) FREDERICK VERBURG.

March 31st.—Rainy. S.W. breeze.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted every day.

1654.

April 1st.—Wind and weather as yesterday.

April 2nd. — Resolved to put the rams also on Robben Island, because they get so fat and big there, and do not thrive here in consequence of the wet ground caused by the rivers. Likewise the rabbits, of which we have 9 in a hutch, confident that they will increase in the sandy soil there; our trouble here with them is in vain. As food for the pigs is scarce, and they consequently get on badly, to see whether they will thrive on seal or penguin meat; shepherds to be told to dry some seal's meat and send over penguins to be mixed up here with vegetable scraps and boiled for the pigs\* as the ships cannot supply a tithe of the quantity of barley or peas required for the garrison, who, for the greater part of the time, are to be fed twice a day with garden vegetables, mixed with some salt pork and meat, as they would otherwise with their ordinary rations not be able to do the hard work daily required of them, or be prevented from starving. This being a new place, said work will for the present not grow less, whilst our seins are too bad to be able to use them much longer. Would annually require 3 or 4 new ones for our necessities; and if we had rice instead of bread the men's stomachs could be cheaply filled. Full stomachs necessary for Netherlanders if they are to work, but if it could be understood so, it would be much less expensive to have all the work of cultivation, seal catching, &c., done by slaves who might be fed

\*" Old Manuscript— Ende omme te proberen off men de verckens (door manquement van cost oock niet wel voort willende) met robben off peguijns vleijs souden cunnen voeden; is den schipper van't galjot gelast mitsgaders de schapenwachters op't eijlant aangesz: partye robben vleys tot apostelen te laten drogen, en de peguijns meede te brengen, om alhier met 't affval van coolsbladen, loff van wortelen, rapen ende andere groente voor deselve dagelijcx te laten cooken, alsoo van de uyt Patria aencomende schepen, soo veel gort off erten niet cunnen becomen dat op een thiende deel, &c.



1654.

on the common food of rice and fish, or only on seals' or penguins' meat, and without pay. Might be easily and cheaply obtained at Madagascar, together with the rice, so that the European garrison might only be used for defence and making expeditions, &c. Hitherto they have not been exempt from labour, neither soldier nor sailor.

April 3rd.—Rams and rabbits proceed to Robben Island.

April 4th.—Fine, very warm weather. Boat returns from Robben Island. Rabbits took kindly to the downs; sheep had multiplied to the number of 44. Some of the rams castrated; of others the tails were cut off by Hottentots taken thither for the purpose—made fine dripping of it to serve for butter. Brought also some penguins' and seals' meat to see whether the pigs can be fed with them. If the return fleet is much longer delayed the garrison itself will have to fall back upon penguins, as peas, beans and rice are all gone, and barley will only last for another fortnight; a lot of cabbage consumed in consequence, so that the fleet will not have as much as it might have had—will have more though than last year.

April 5th (Easter).—Warm weather, &c.

April 6th.—Found on examination that our rice, barley, beans, and cadjanghai were all gone. Bread we have still for about 2 months; meat and pork for 6 or 7 months. Thoroughly unable to provide the hard working men with some additional food; decided to despatch the galiot and boat to Saldanha Bay to obtain on the islands some birds, penguins, and fish, as the men are commencing to starve. As they cannot subsist on their allowance of bread and meat, we have consequently to add what we can get, viz., penguins or other birds, which otherwise they would hardly touch. In the meanwhile the boat is to proceed to Robben Island to fill 4 or 5 casks with penguins to save the cabbages. Might distribute more meat and pork, but it would be too expensive for the company. We have, therefore decided to give an additional allowance 3 times a day of penguin meat to keep hunger away from the men, and continue the work. The sheep left on the Saldanha Island to be likewise removed to Robben Island. The second anniversary to-day of our arrival here. God has blessed our labours hitherto, consequently resolved to set apart this day as a day of thanksgiving—the 6th of April—and for ever henceforth make it a day of thanksgiving and prayer, that our posterity may never forget God's mercies shown to us, but always keep them in grateful memory. The decked boat to proceed to Robben Island at once, the galiot to follow when the breeze comes, both to proceed to Saldanha Bay, and the penguins to be fetched from the island by the other boat.

April 7th.—The galiot leaves and proceeds with the first boat to Saldanha Bay; the second boat despatched for the penguins. Went in search of natives with cattle. Found behind the mountain, about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles away, various troops of sheep in a little bay, and about 100 natives, and as some who had been away had seen our



approach with armed men, they rushed forward to stay our progress, armed with assegais, bows and arrows. Location consisted of 16 good-sized dwellings, built in a circle, and connected with rushes as a fence, with two openings for the cattle to go in and out, to protect them from wild beasts. Found, as we came nearer, the approaches guarded by 30 strong fellows, quite naked, and well provided with assegais, bows and arrows. Most of them were the thieves of our cattle, of which we recognized 3 quite plainly. Coming nearer we held out our hands, upon which they kissed theirs and held them out also. We thereupon embraced, as if we were the greatest friends in the world, and again spoilt a suit of clothes in consequence of their dirt and the train oil with which they had besmeared themselves, glittering in the sun like a looking glass, the fat dripping from the head over the whole body, apparently their greatest ornament. Within the encampment the embracing was repeated, but they were afraid that we would take their cattle. We told them that we did not look upon them as guilty of the theft, but only on Herry as the thief, offering to buy cattle for copper and tobacco, but not having any with us, told them we would send men for the purpose to-morrow. Do not believe they will trade, only promised through fear. Saw Herry's wives and children among them, and the stolen cattle. Pretended not to be aware of it, and that we only came to strengthen our alliance with them, which was confirmed by two or three glasses of wine all round. They returned the compliment with milk and honey. We spent about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  hours with them, and parted mutually well contented. Some accompanied us to the forest where we found many bitter almond trees, apparently fit for food for pigs, like acorns, which they completely resemble in taste. They were much eaten by the natives, who first peel them, then dry them in the sun for a few days, and finally roast them in the fire. Will try them.

April 8th.—Sent the Catechist, Verburg, and 12 musketeers with copper, tobacco and pipes towards the natives, but instead of being kindly received, seeing their small numbers, they were jeered, shoved back, and told to return. And though our men remained friendly and expressed their desire to trade, they insulted them the more, striking the Catechist a good blow on the chest, and giving Verburg another on the head, so that, if they had not been patient, a new rupture in the alliance would have taken place. To prevent this, our men preferred to bear all, and return without even giving as much as a bit of tobacco to the natives, quite convinced that being good and doing good to this faithless herd are of no avail. Another course shall have to be adopted, and revenge taken for the Christian blood shed by them, for though we are curing two of their wounded, and continuing being kind, they grow more audacious every day. Last week, when the garrison was in the fort, some of them endeavoured to murder a herd in charge of 4 Dutch sheep. They would have succeeded if somebody had not

1654:

approached from the side of the garden and seen them, when they released the boy and made as if they had only been playing with him. Added 3 more men to the guard at the forest, and also strengthened that of the cows.

April 9th, 10th 11th.—Heavy S.E.

12th (Sunday).—During service some strongly built Hottentoots with assegais endeavoured to steal the cattle, thinking to find only 2 or 3 men in charge; when however they saw the others who had been hiding behind a bush, they pretended only to have come to beg some tobacco; every day it becomes more evident that this faithless crew of Herry cannot be trusted; in spite of our kindness they offend and insult us on all occasions; necessary therefore to leave our 12 head of cattle in charge of 5 musketeers under the fort where there is enough for them to eat, and protect the woodmen with 5 soldiers, to prevent unpleasantness so long until they have again about a thousand head of cattle together, and then get them with wives and children and all in our power. There would then be enough by breeding, for the purpose required. As they have at present only 300 head of cattle and as many sheep, it would not be worth our while to show our dissatisfaction, but more expedient to treat them well and so gain their confidence, that on a suitable occasion our revenge may be complete. Might already begin to make up our minds to it if they had cattle enough for breeding, and instead of making slaves of the natives, use them on the islands for flaying seals, &c. the meat of which would be sufficient food for them. It must happen one day, or we will derive no benefit from them. They are commencing to believe that we are afraid of them,—no other native dares to come whilst they are here. Would be able to trade fairly with others as was done last year, but if we offer copper or tobacco to these rogues they laugh at us. Boat returns with 4 casks of salted penguins and 4 or 500 living birds for food for the men. Two sheep had died on the island. Galiot and boat at Saldanha bay to salt more birds and fish.

April 13th.—Fine weather.

April 14th.—Ditto. A cask of penguins only lasts a day. As the galiot may remain away some days, the boat is again sent to Robben Island with orders to salt as many birds as possible and bring as many alive as the boat can hold. Resolved in consequence of the large consumption and in order not to clear the island of all birds, to distribute the food twice instead of three times a day, at 10 a.m. for breakfast, with cabbage and greens and some pork boiled in them to flavour them somewhat, and at night  $\frac{1}{2}$  a penguin for every man, until we are relieved with supplies from India. Ships from Patria only bring bread, meat, pork, oil and vinegar, whilst their supply of barley or peas, which are the best food, is generally so little that they have none to spare for our fowls and pigeons which are breeding finely. Rice from Batavia a fine food and ten times less expensive for the Company.



April 16th.—Some complain of the distribution of the food only twice a day, especially Gerrit Fagels, of Oldenburg, sailor, and Evert Barentsen, of Groningen, soldier. They told the officers, "You can order us to the work but should see that we get more food," Barentse adding, "let us all lie down flat or break the necks of 2 or 3, then they will not vex us any more, &c." As such words would lead to mutiny they were at once put in irons.

April 17th.—Fine weather.

April 18th.—Boat returns with 5 casks of penguins. Arrival of the galiot *Tulp*, from Texel on the 23rd December, having sailed *viâ* the back of Ireland and touched nowhere. Heavy weather at sea, lost its bowsprit and masts, and consequently arriving soundly patched and clamped. Letters from the Masters that no return ships are to be expected this season; bad news indeed, as we have not above 5 or 6 weeks' bread, and nothing besides. Fear that if penguins fail, we must take to seals' meat. Hardly an anker of wine in store to give to the men. Most of the work will stand still to let the men search for food. The two casks of barley and peas received per galiot will hardly last 3 weeks, as the barley is required for the fowls, already 200 in number, otherwise it will be necessary to kill them, likewise the ducks and pigs, which are breeding famously; it would be a pity.

April 19th (Sunday).—*Tulp* ordered to discharge its stores as soon as possible in order to be able to leave.

April 20th and 21st.—Weather too boisterous to allow a boat to approach the galiot for cargo.

April 21st, 22nd and 23rd.—Weather so bad as it never was the whole year—heavy rain and violent gusts of wind. Galiot only provided us with some stores and tackle, which were at hand. Left the rest on board to enable the vessel to meet the return fleet with the despatches (without putting on board any skins) at St. Helena; also our own papers were sent with her for Patria. Left this evening, with orders to return when the despatches, &c., have been delivered. Also sent Verburgh to request that the fleet may send for the garrison as much rice, cadjangan, beans and arrack as can be spared, as our supplies are almost exhausted.

April 24th.—S. East, favourable for the galiot to meet the fleet at St. Helena, which God grant. Amen. To-day was found in the mountain the carcase of a bush mannikin, called at Batavia orangh outangh, as large as a small calf, having hands and feet exactly as a human being, with long arms and legs, hairy and dark grey. Men, forced by hunger, ate it; greens do not nourish them.

April 25th.—Herry's allies depasture their flocks about  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile from the fort; would not part with one. Had enough to do to restrain our people, who were desirous of recovering the stolen beasts, forced by hunger and angered by the murder committed on the boy. They were prepared to take just vengeance on that faithless lot instead of suffering any longer the pangs of hunger; but were restrained by promises that the return fleet would send



1654.

relief; fed them with cabbage, &c., from the gardens, and penguins, to keep them fairly obedient and at work, but not without murmuring on their part. Boat returns from Saldanha Bay with a cask of salted birds, caught on a certain island there, finer and of better flavour than the penguins. Had, in consequence of the wind, been lying 8 days off the land. The galiot, still becalmed, under Robben Island, had 20 casks full, and a thousand spotted birds in the hold, which will be welcome, and help us on for a few months. In the meanwhile will consider whether the galiot shall be sent to Madagascar for rice and arrack, &c.

April 26th (Sunday).—South-east detaining the galiot.

April 27th.—Galiot arrives with its cargo and reports that 7 or 8 Hottentots, but without cattle, had been seen at Saldanha Bay. Resolved, in consequence of the want of stores, the danger of the supply of birds becoming exhausted, the long time to elapse before supplies can be obtained from India or Patria, the heavy expense to the Company and the inconvenience to India by drawing wine supplies from the ships, to send the galiot to Madagascar for rice, beans, cadjangan and arrack; and as we have no goods on hand, to find what the people can muster of the clothes given them last year on account, and refund the same to them afterwards. The vessel to proceed beforehand to Saldanha Bay to be scraped, where the facilities are better than here.

April 28th.—Fine N.W. weather.

April 29th and 30th.—Ditto, heavy mist.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted every day.

1654.

May 1st and 2nd.—Dark, rainy, cold—worse at sea.

May 3rd (Sunday).—Sunshine, drifting clouds, N.W. wind.

May 4th.—Ditto. As it pleaseth not God to permit the galiot to proceed to Saldanha Bay, and as the time is fast passing, victuals are running low and the necessity apparent to kill our poultry, it was resolved to do so, to clean the ship here and despatch her as soon as possible in the name of the Lord, provisioned for 4 months and manned with 19 or 20 men. Resolved, further, as all were unacquainted with the Island except the Frenchman, who is not to be trusted, and as the French there have a powerful garrison, to despatch the yacht to Mauritius to obtain information there from the Commander and officers, and also goods besides what we can send for the purposes of trading. Jan Wouters, for his faithful services, restored to the rank of assistant with 20 gl. per month and to serve the Company 3 years longer.

May 5th.—The soldier Hessel Jacobs, of Souttin, ordered to receive 100 lashes for stealing from the garden, leaving the fort during the night and abandoning his post as sentry; also to be kept in chains for 6 months with confiscation of one month's wages to the Provost Marshal, according to sentence of Council yesterday. Natives give notice of 2 vessels near Table Mountain.

May 6th.—Looked out for the ships even as far as the point of Cape Falso, but not finding them, sent for the Hottentoo called by the men “cook’s mate” (scullion) who had given the information and who undertook to show the vessels. Sent the drummer and provost with him; they remained out all night.

May 7th.—Heavy mist, men reported could not see beyond a mile on the sea, Hottentoo persisted that he had seen the ships, which might have been here with these westerly winds, if they intended to come—conjectured that they may be English homeward bound, which had run into False or Hout Bay; resolved to send a corporal and 4 men to look about carefully and at once report to us.

May 8th.—Heavy S.E. Sent the men away. In the afternoon fine quiet weather. Despatched the galiot with our despatches to Mauritius, will leave as soon as the wind is favourable. Leaves two hours after midnight.

May 9th.—The four men return, and report that they had seen no ships anywhere.

May 10th (Sunday).—Boat despatched to Robben Island with food for the men there.

May 11th.—Morning fine; during the day drizzling rain, which cleared up. Heavy S. Easter the whole night.

May 12th.—The first brick kiln with 60,000 bricks set on fire. Bay full of whales—every day so, since beginning of March. Boat returned with a ram weighing about 150 lbs., the worst of the lot—the other sheep thriving well. No seals—for a month had hardly seen one.

May 13th.—Fine; many whales.

May 14th.—Ascension Day.

May 15th and 16th.—The bay every day full of whales. Sowed this week a good quantity of seeds which are showing well, and promising a good supply for the ships and the garrison; and if we had rice we might almost get on.

May 17th (Sunday).—N.W. wind and weather.

May 18th, 19th, and 20th.—The first brick kiln left to cool, and another commenced to be ready before the heavy rains. Woodmen report that Herry’s friends are commencing to move inland, without having sold a single animal, but endeavoured to rob and insult us whenever they could—are quite satisfied with their departure. Trust that others may come with whom we may succeed better. Yesterday a Hottentoo woman was, without any assistance, delivered of a child near the fort on the banks of the river, just like any dumb animal, herself cleaning the child and rubbing it well with cow dung; also blackening it; otherwise it was like the mother, as fair as a brown Jewess. Placed it at once in a skin at the breast; father and mother begging from us; and to-day coming into the fort for bread and tobacco and a glass of wine, which we gave them. Left in good spirits for their hut, not in the least protected from the weather.

1654.

May 21st.—Too wet to continue making bricks; men set to clearing ground for gardens. Wife of the gardener delivered of a son.

May 22nd and 23rd.—Sowed this week garden seeds. Bay full of whales—pity we have no means of catching any, fine time for doing so.

May 24th (Pentecost).—Dirty weather.

May 25th and 26th.—Fine. Garden produce getting scarce, very little left for the ships; little fish caught; necessary to fill the men's stomachs. Went inland to see whether the sorrel and mustard have sprung up, to prepare some twice a day with barley and meat for the men; the salted birds are given at noon; and in the morning and evening cabbage and other garden produce. On Sundays and Thursdays ordinarily turnips and carrots, which are getting scarce. No doubt in 3 or 4 months, with God in the van, we will have as much again, as what is sown thrives famously; busy sowing in the gardens which now cover fully 4 morgen of ground from one end to the other, and also preparing more land for the seeds expected from Patria. Found the sorrel beautifully growing in many places, but not yet the mustard: two men therefore ordered to fetch some sorrel every day, and add to it enough from the gardens, until the time of relief.

May 27th.—Fine, sunshine.

May 28th, 29th and 30th.—Fine weather for making bricks and preparing land. Cleared and prepared  $\frac{1}{2}$  morgen of ground; sowed it with new corn won here last year, altogether 2 bushels. Reported to Riebeeck that Gysbert Jansz van Haverbeecq, of Haarlem, boatman, and nicknamed Schout, had on the 7th said that he knew of a man prepared with two knives for the Commander, who had also said that "if we get as little food and have to work as hard as last year, I will settle the Commander," &c., Jan Matthysz; and Adriaan Leerbrouck, sailors, had also heard it, also Jan Jansz: Van Nijkerk, soldier; all declared before the Council that they had heard Schout speak as above. Haverbeecq examined, acknowledged that he said it to the other two and briefly stated that the man was Jan Danielsz: of Veurne Arquebusier who arrived here in 1652 with the *Good Hope* and was nicknamed Doctor, who ere this had for a reward been prepared to travel with the natives inland to learn their language, but when requested to do so, had refused. Haverbeecq had with others some 6 weeks ago been sent for cow dung, and on his return resting with Danielsz: a little in advance, and seeing 2 knives in his belt, had asked him why he carried 2, he answered, "They take care of the Commander." Doctor called in, denied that he had ever carried a knife, much less two, and that he had no reason to be offended with the Commander; acknowledged when reminded of the time, that he did carry 2 knives with him when sent for the dung, which he had in his belt since his return from Dassen Island where he had used them for flaying seals. The Schout had asked him about the knives but he had never answered that they were



minding the Commander; would not say that the Schout lied, but believed that he might have meant that the knives were at the Commander's service when he went out to cut asparagus. Asked again whether the Schout lied he persisted in giving the same answer; asked again and finding that things would go wrong he replied, "he lies like a rogue, we were only two of us and why should I not be believed as well as he is," this prevarication causing suspicion that he might be guilty, he was imprisoned for further examination in a cellar under the battery.

May 31st (Sunday).—Fine; many whales; high springtide. Launched our boat 32 feet long and 8 feet broad to carry salt, wood manure, &c. from the river to the fort.

N B.—Wind and weather carefully noted.

June 1st.—Hard at work brickmaking, preparing garden ground, and surrounding it with canals. Leaked out that the Doctor had said to the Quartermaster Jurien Roode, "that if he was again pressed as hard on Dassen Island, he would rather knock down one or two or they might do it to him."

June 2nd.—Fine, W. S.W. breeze.

June 3rd, 4th, and 5th.—The same—bay full of whales.

June 6th.—Stormy—no work possible—calmer at night. Juriaan Roode declares on oath that having asked Danielsz why he had libelled and cursed him behind his back, had been answered amongst other things that if he was vexed again at Robben Island as he had been, he would bowl over one or two; Roode saying that he did not believe it, was answered "I name nobody." This evidence Danielsz denies, though acknowledging he had been addressed by Roode. States that he had spoken in the barber's house where somebody may have heard him, but neither the surgeon nor his assistants knew anything of the matter.

June 7th (Sunday).—Good weather.

June 8th.—Took in hand a plot of ground 34 by 24 roods square to be cleared and enclosed with canals. Too rainy to make bricks, nice weather for preparing ground—too hard in summer.

June 9th.—The pantry (butler's) of the Commander robbed in the night of wine, ham, butter, cheese eggs &c. Could not discover the thief.

June 10th.—Jan Danielsz van Veurne, threatened with the rack, declared that he had said "these knives wait upon the 'Heer'" but not to threaten the Commander—had meant that they were for the service of the Company; also that he had said that he would knock over a few, but this had been in consequence of the treatment received from the drunken Corporal Jan van Gulick who had continually beaten him, though he had worked as the others. Had spoken so when thoroughly dejected but without the slightest idea of committing such evil. Begs forgiveness.

June 11th.—First attempt to mason with the bricks for the dwelling on the right hand of the battery—fine red bricks like

1654.

Leyden brick. Arrival of the *Tulp* from St. Helena, left that island on the 20th last month, did the voyage in 3 weeks, which is extraordinary quick; brought rice, 2 boxes white sugar, 2 small bales wheat, 28 lbs. wax and some spices, also some clothes and shoes for the garrison, old sails and tinware. Had expected more rice, some beans and cadjangan, also arrack, but the Commander Kemp could spare nothing more so that with what we can procure ourselves our supplies will not last longer than 2 months. Return fleet consisted of *Phoenix*, *Orangie*, *Salmander*, *Leeuwin*, *Cunningh Davidt* and *Avondster*, and had left Batavia on 19th January; sighted the Cape 27th March and arrived at St. Helena on the 18th April, when our galiot which left this on the 23rd April found them on the 6th May and delivered despatches and secret orders which greatly pleased the officers—Fleet well refreshed with pigs, apples, oranges, greens and water, waiting for the *Prins Willem* and *N. Rotterdam*, until the end of May. Verburgh returns with the rank of junior merchant given him by the consent of the fleet, and likewise as Secunde for this establishment. Received by him as such in consequence of his zeal and faithful service. Being much in want of provisions, and finding that the skipper of the *Tulp* draws rather heavily on his pantry, Verburgh and the Sergeant were ordered to examine carefully into this, and make better arrangements for the distribution of the food; also to order the skipper at once to discharge his cargo for the Cape.

June 12th.—Galiot commences to discharge.

June 13th.—Galiot examined, found it ill-supplied, as the skipper had been too liberal at St. Helena in his distribution of provisions, which made the officers of the fleet suppose that we were not so ill-supplied here as Verburgh had stated; had given as much bread to the return fleet as would have kept the crew of the galiot for 3 months. Has now no more than 2 casks of bread and other provisions in proportion. Would have been better if the provisions given to the return fleet had been left here to fill the stomachs of the hard-working men. Proved that he was a bad manager; gave him therefore orders to guide him in order to calculate how long his supplies will last. If he had to proceed to Batavia, we would hardly manage to fit him out.

June 14th.—Same weather.

June 15th, 16th, 17th and 18th.—Council resolves that as only  $2\frac{1}{2}$  tons of rice have been received from the return fleet, which will not last longer than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  or two months, also to send this galiot to Madagascar for more rice, so that, if an accident befalls the *Rode Vos*, we may somewhat depend on this vessel, but with the order to examine beyond the point all harbours, bays and rivers, what trade may be opened up, including Riò des Reys in  $25^{\circ}$  lat, for the information of the Masters. From Riò des Reys to proceed to Madagascar for the purpose mentioned in the instructions.

June 19th and 20th.—Fine weather for building the new dwelling-house with our Cape bricks.

June 21st (Sunday).—Fine weather for the gardens in which this week various seeds have been sown. Last bread rations distributed,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. for a whole week, quantity given during the last 3 months, and if the galiot had not made such a quick passage, we would have been at once and suddenly at the end, as will soon be the case with the  $2\frac{1}{2}$  tons of rice, which cannot last longer than 5 or 6 weeks, so that, unless relieved, a miserable time awaits us.

June 22nd.—Jan Danielsz van Veurne sentenced by Council to be keelhauled and put in irons for 6 months with confiscation of 3 months' wages.

June 23rd.—Sentence carried out.

June 24th.—Good weather. N.W. wind, during the night increasing in force with rain.

June 25th.—Wind and rain too severe to be able to deliver the despatches to the *Tulp*.

June 26th.—Officers of that vessel take their leave.

June 27th.—Dirty weather preventing departure of galiot.

June 28th (Sunday).—Ditto.

June 29th.—Reported, that a soldier, Evert Barentz, of Groningen, had last night, during prayers, stolen some barley from the stores—denied it at first, but promised his liberty, he confessed that Hendrick Juriaensz, of Swartsluys, had urged him to do it. See his confession. Various others had eaten of the barley, but all declared that they did not know whence it came, only that said Juriaensz had stated that he had obtained it from the *Tulp*. Being called he confessed everything and shewed the place where more had been hidden; consequently apprehended with Eldert Jansz, of Oost Friesland, who had mounted guard to do the deed.

June 30th.—Dirty weather. Reported that Juriaensz had persuaded Dirk Haesjes to bribe his mate, the fowl-keeper, to steal a portion of the barley given to the fowls. Said Haesien acknowledged that a few times they had boiled of it for themselves, but would never have dreamt of doing it if Juriaensz had not put it into his head. See confession. Sum total is that Juriaensz is the chief instigator of all the thefts.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted every day.

July 1st.—Dirty stormy weather; gardens deluged and rivers incapable of holding the water. Lots of trouble and loss. Many young plants washed away or spoilt.

July 2nd.—Council sentences H. Juriaensz to be keelhauled and thrashed; Eldert Jansz to fall three times from the yardarm, and receive 100 lashes before the mast, and Frederik van Loenen, Isaac Sybrantsz and Mens Jansz, to have 50 cuts on their dry skins for the theft of the barley. See sentence. Sentence carried out. Weather prevents galiot from leaving. Victuals getting scarce, causes us great anxiety.

July 3rd.—Galiot leaves for the object stated. If the ships remain 5 or 6 weeks away we will have great distress. All the



1654.

garden produce so completely consumed that hardly any more can be scraped together.

July 4th.—Galiot leaves the anchorage at Robben Island and gets well to sea.

July 5th.—Some of Herry's allies come with the news that some natives from the far inland were approaching with cattle to trade; time will show whether this is not one of their ordinary lies. Not having copper plates we will not be able to get cattle, will only be able to procure sheep for our thin wire; so it does not matter whether they come or not. Looking out anxiously for ships.

July 6th.—Continued the masonwork and commenced packing the bricks for the new kiln; wood for the purpose at hand. Hottentoots stole yesterday all the tackle and the keedge of the boat lying in the river full of reeds, their usual course. Not desisting from their roguery, in spite of the good done to them. But not to fall out with them we must look after our property better, for if ill-treated, they would get so afraid that they would never again return with cattle, &c. Pretended consequently that we knew nothing of it, to convince them of the good nature of the Netherlanders but awaiting our opportunity for a suitable revenge when we will no longer be in want of cattle from them. It must come to this one day, if we are to live in peace, for hundreds of them, well armed, were loitering about the cows at the side of the mountain to steal them; but as the latter are protected by 7 or 8 Musketeers they did not dare.

July 7th.—Fine, sunshine: hard frost last night—ship in sight behind the Lion Mountain, becalmed.

July 8th.—Vessel found to be a small English ship named *De Coopman* of 70 tons, captured by the *Goutsblom* at St. Vincent on the 15th April; had only 42 asses on board which the English intended to take to Barbadoes; but they were all landed there excepting 3 which, with a horse, they thought of bringing to the Cape. Had however died on the voyage. Had liberated all the English and let them go to Barbadoes, excepting 4 or 5 who had taken service under the Company. *Goutsblom* had left with the *Botterblom* on 28th January; at St. Vincent, on 20th April, vessels parted company in a heavy storm. Feared that the *Botterblom* had perished. Found very little refreshment at St. Vincent; consequently full of sick and scurvy patients. *Goutsblom* seen yesterday by the English prize near the land. Latter vessel supposed to be serviceable here because of its sailing qualities; is manned with 17 men. Safe at anchor now; not much bigger than the *Good Hope*. If it had arrived eight days sooner it might have proceeded with the *Tulp* on a voyage of discovery. *Goutsblom* sighted, becalmed. Letter from Commander as follows: "Becalmed four days already—miserable condition—no refreshments, voyage has been long, only 6 quarters of water daily for every one, 30 dead, 4 died yesterday, one of them Sieur Willem Willemsz: Bennex assistant; requests refreshments as soon as possible, will do his best to get into the

bay as soon as he can." Had at once a good basket of salad and 2 good bags of cabbage prepared which were sent on board the *Goutsblom* with the following letter: "Received yours for water and refreshments, had intended to proceed to you with all men to tow you in, but prevented by the weather, wind at present favourable for you to come on; if the wind ceases will come to help you; send you in the meanwhile salad and cabbage, and a can of butter-milk, hope to see you here soon. 9th July, 1654. P.S.—The English ship will carry a light to direct you in case you come on during the night."

July 9th.—Arrival at noon of the galiot; at once provided with cabbage, &c. Received with her many tools, &c., which were much required, but little food—so we continue to be in straitened circumstances especially as regards barley and peas; only obtained 4 casks of barley; peas won't last 4 days longer; refreshments for this ship consequently not abundant, and if we get other ships without supplying us with the articles named, it is clear that they will be poorly refreshed, as the garrison is living on what we have in store, so that very little is left for fresh arrivals. Skipper had sighted some days ago a ship near shore trying for the bay, and supposed to be of Zealand; worked its sails with difficulty, gathered that it must be full of sick.

July 10th.—Some of Herry's allies arrive with 4 meagre head of cattle, could not come to a sale. Wished to go on board to fill their bags and stomachs with bread and wine; but as they had often played us the trick to walk off with their cattle after their return from the ships, we told them that we would treat them well on board if they sold their cattle. Left with their cattle, whether they will return, time will show. Will continually place before their eyes, samples of the copper, tobacco and beads, brought by this vessel, as soon as landed. Some of our people, sent for wood and sorrel, were molested by the Hottentots and forbidden to gather any; in short they are getting more audacious every day; will soon have to show our teeth, but must wait until they are here with thousands of cattle; in the meanwhile we must strengthen their self-conceit not only to find a better opportunity to revenge the murdered Christian blood, but to repay ourselves for the stolen cattle, &c. The sick (60 in number) landed and placed in a tent within the fortification to be refreshed with vegetables so as to be able to leave again with their ship.

July 11th.—*Goutsblom* discharges: English prize repaired—called by us *Caap Vogel*. Discovered that Jan Pieterz: Scenwater had robbed the chest of Pieter Borgers, superintendent of the sheep at Robben Island; acknowledged the theft and apprehended.

July 12th (Sunday).—Gloomy, windy wet weather.

July 13th.—The same. *Goutsblom* cannot discharge.

July 14th.—The same. Willem Huytjens stole 8 pints of brandy from the powder magazine in the redoubt, belonging to the officer in charge.

1654.

July 15th.—Fine weather. *Goutsblom* discharging rapidly.

July 16th.—Soenwater condemned to be scourged and placed in irons for the theft—Huytjens having been the only man at the redoubt and found drunk in the evening, also having offered to repay Harwarden for what he had lost, but unwilling to confess, and having been a thief last year, is sentenced to receive 100 lashes, and refund the value of the brandy to Harwarden.

July 17th.—Sentence carried out. Vessel sighted—becalmed—boat pulled on shore; proved to be the *Haes*, *via* Mauritius from Batavia on the 7th March, with rice, &c., for this station; sent 3 boats to tow the yacht into the bay. God be thanked for the success obtained. Sent the boat to Robben Island with provisions, picks and shovels to prepare some ground, for wheat, &c., by way of experiment. S. East not so heavy there—it is supposed therefore that the wheat will thrive there better.

July 18th.—Officers of yacht land with despatches from India and Commander of Mauritius; gathered from them the kindly care of all of them in providing us with rice, arrack, &c., for which we had longed so much. Bartered 5 cows from Herry's allies for a higher price than ordinary to draw them on; allowed some to proceed on board, requested the skipper to treat them well with bread, rice, arrack or wine to make them inclined to bring more cattle; sent one animal to the *Goutsblom*,  $\frac{1}{2}$  a one to the *Haes*, and another  $\frac{1}{2}$  to the *Caap Vogel* with greens, &c.

July 19th (Sunday).—Same weather.

July 20th.—Vessels hard at work discharging.

July 21st.—Wet, serviceable weather for the wheat, carrot and other seeds sown last week. Discharge of vessels continued; 35 or 36 of the sick from the *Goutsblom* quite well again, the rest almost all recovered; hope they will be themselves again before the week is out.

July 22nd.—Observe to-day the day of prayer appointed by the India Council by Resolution of 10th June, 1653, and also thanked God for His special mercy in sending us deliverance per *Goutsblom* and the *Haes*, saving us from famine, for all which mercies and the success of our enterprise here the Triune God be eternally praised. Amen.

July 23rd.—Arrival of the *Botterblom* after a perilous voyage; had only touched at St. Jago, where only 2 casks of water were obtained, the Portuguese allowing no approach. Received duplicates of despatches per *Tulp* and *Goutsblom*, also 6 casks meal and 2 do. bread. Skipper complained that the galiot was thoroughly unmanageable, and though destined for this station, quite useless for it. Will send it to Batavia, and retain the *Caap Vogel* and *Tulp*. The *Roode Vos*, likewise a bad sailer, also to proceed to Batavia when returned from Madagascar.

July 24th.—Dirty boisterous weather.

July 25th.—Ditto.

July 26th (Sunday).—Very heavy rains.



July 27th.—The *Haes* discharges rice.

July 28th and 29th.—Wet, dirty stormy weather.

July 30th.—Ships taking in ballast: *De Haes* discharging. Skipper of *Botterblom* told to prepare for the voyage to Batavia.

July 31st.—Same boisterous weather as on 29th.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted every day.

August 1st.—Ships hard at work discharging and taking in ballast.

August 2nd (Sunday).—The Point named the Walvis fell in to-day, also the embankments in some places in consequence of the succession of heavy rains; built rather hurriedly in consequence of the English war. Will repair the damage with rushes and branches: will take about 6 weeks to do the work.

August 3rd.—Commenced to build new dwellings and stores with the bricks of the 2nd kiln. *Haes* completely discharged; found wanting 5 lasts at 3,000 lbs. per last.

August 4th.—Rainy.

August 5th.—Fine, dry westerly weather.

August 6th.—The same; serviceable for our mason work which proceeds rapidly. Ice on the water last night the thickness of a rixdollar. Woodmen report that Herry's allies were on the side of Salt River with their cattle; some brought us a tusk which we bought, told us to come to-morrow with copper and tobacco to them: would like to trade with us.

August 7th.—Proceeded with the skippers of the 3 vessels and 30 armed men  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles inland towards the Hottentoots, who had some 3 or 400 head of cattle and as many sheep with them—the same who had squatted about here the whole of last year without selling us any cattle, but preventing all others from coming; insulting us whenever they can. Will show them our teeth, but not before we have received advices from the Masters. The natives are here with such a number of cattle that the increase would be sufficient to depend upon. Seeing our numbers they were very friendly. Could only obtain 1 ox, 1 cow, 1 calf, and 1 sheep for a very high price. Gave them some tobacco, arrack, &c., and soon returned home and gave the cow to the ships.

August 8th.—A soldier named Van Edene, of the *Goutsblom*, condemned to fall three times from the yard-arm, and be thrashed for disobedience and violence towards his superior officers. Pieter Martensz Abbekerk, provisional skipper of the *Caap Vogel*, confirmed in his rank with 54 gulden per month, and the disgraced first mate, Lieut. Lievesz, for want of a better, restored to his rank. Jan van Harwarden for his faithful services at the fortification raised from corporal to capitaine des armes, with 20 gl. per month.

August 9th (Sunday).—Windy weather.

August 10th.—Sentence carried out.

August 11th, 12th, and 13th.—The vessels despatched with our letters for India. Vessel sighted about noon; proved to be the yacht *Angelier* from Hoorn which had left Holland with the

1654.

Amsterdam vessels *Parel*, *Princess Royal*, and the yacht *Ter Schellingh* on the 6th April; had touched nowhere, and parted from the others at the Canaries with the resolution that each should do his best.

August 14th. — Yacht anchors and brings despatches from the 17, dated 15 April: had many sick; sent vegetables on board; sick to land to-morrow.

August 15th. — Despatches of *Angelier* for India entrusted to the *Goutsblom*. Arrival of the yacht *Vlielandt*. Left 19th May with news of the peace made with England on the 18th May. God be praised, Amen. Had communicated with the *Parel* 3° north of the line. The Hon. Hulst still quite well, but many of the men sick; must come here to refresh. Van Veurne, Juriaense and Soenwater released from their chains at the request of many, and because of the happy news of the peace, to receive their pay again from to-day.

August 16th (Sunday). — Hon. Hulst arrives in the *Parel* with damaged bowsprit.

August 17th. — Hon. Hulst lands. *Goutsblom* and consorts leave, taking also letters from Hulst and the articles of the peace made.

August 18th. — Sent our boat to Robben Island with 1 Dutch and 1 Cape young ram for breeding, and also with provisions; two of the fattest rams to be brought thence for the ships.

August 19th. — Despatched the *Vlielandt* for Batavia.

August 20th. — *Vlielandt* leaves.

August 21st. — Return of the boat with 2 rams; increase of sheep, and condition of garden satisfactory. Letter from the Superintendent, Pieter Borgers; "all well on the island; six born; send you 2 rams, the rest number 46. Would like to have seed for the garden; cabbage plants grow well; wheat growing nicely; send you 49 goose eggs. Must send us one or two scarecrows to keep the crows and geese from the lands, also some powder and matches; have been digging a well and setting a few fowls to hatch goose eggs. A few hand-barrows to carry manure, and 2 or 3 buckets. No more than many thousand good nights for the 'heer.'" 20th August, Robben Island. Signed by Marcus Robbeljaert, Corporal, and Pieter Borgers.

August 22nd. — With trouble obtained one animal from the natives.

August 23rd (Sunday). — Fine, cloudy weather.

August 24th. — Ditto. Sent a boat to Robben Island with some seeds, &c.; brought back two more rams.

August 25th. — Hon. Hulst exchanges from the fleet 42 sick for others on shore in good health, and takes leave for Batavia. The *Roo de Vos* returns from Mauritius without having proceeded to Madagascar, as the Commander de Jongen believed that it would be unnecessary, as the *Haes* had been despatched with provisions for the Cape. But what would have been the case if the *Haes*

had not turned up? It would have been well if steps had been taken to open a trade at Madagascar. as according to De Jongen, some rice can be obtained there. This will have to be done, and might have paved the way for the *Tulp*; but we trust that Verburgh, after discovery of the coasts beyond this point, will show more zeal for the trade with Madagascar.

August 26th.—N.W. weather; prevents the *Parcel* and *Angelier* from leaving. In the afternoon the latter, by tacking, managed to get away.

August 27th.—Same stormy weather; the one anchor of the *Parcel* breaks, also a cable of the *Cayp Vogel*; both commenced drifting towards the beach, but, fortunately in time got two other anchors down. The second boat of the *Parcel* washed on shore.

August 28th.—Somewhat better weather. Sent the Catechist to the Hottentoots, 3 miles away, who returned at night with 2 sheep and 1 cow, also a calf, the latter sent on board for Hon. Hulst.

August 29th.—Became fine weather. Sent a cow on board the *Parcel*, which left early, with a S.S. East breeze.

August 30th (Sunday).—Arrival of *Henriette Louisa* from Zealand the 22nd April. Had touched at St. Vincent on 27th May. Left 3rd June without obtaining much refreshment, the *Mars* having on board the Hon. Dirk Ogel as Commander, would leave two or three days after, destined to proceed to Recife de Fernambuco to fetch the ship *West Vrieslandt*; full of sick, stiff and miserable from scurvy. Sent vegetables on board; sick ordered on shore.

August 31st.—*Roode Vos* commences to discharge. Arrival of the *Dolphyn*. Had, with the *Gideon*, left on 26th May. Touched nowhere. Separated from the *Gideon* in the Channel. *Walvis* and *Prins*, from Amsterdam, to follow shortly.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted every day.

September 1st.—The *Dolphin* has only 3 or 4 sick on board. Provided with greens. Died a boatman of the crew of the *Parcel*, named Abraham Jansz: of Amersfoort.

September 2nd.—Sent the Catechist to the Hottentoots to endeavour to buy some cattle for the sick of the *H. Louisa*, who are above 100 in number, and miserable to see. Said ship had 25 or 26 deaths. Catechist obtains 2 animals. Killed for the sick. Ten others added to the number from the *Dolphin*. Sick and sound refreshed twice a day.

September 3rd.—Case of tobacco marked 75, and obtained per *Vlieland*, opened and found rotten. Obligated to throw the whole lot away, as will appear from the declarations. It stunk like —.

September 4th.—N.W. storm.

September 5th.—Better weather. The *Dolphin* takes leave for Batavia.

September 6th (Sunday).—*Dolphin* takes 30 men of the *Parcel* and *Angelier*, and leaves 2 sick. Detained by the absence of its boat.



1654.

September 7th.—Leaves to-day.

September 8th and 9th.—Sent provisions to the island, also 2 ewes, the boat to bring back 2 rams for the sick. Resolved to send the *Caap Vogel* to Batavia with the *H. Louisa*, because it was found that the *Roode Vos* was better suited for the Cape storms.

September 10th.—The junior merchant, Pieter van Duyn, allowed to marry the chaste maiden, Sebastiana van Opdorp, residing in the fort, and not to detain the vessel, the first banns will be published to-night, the 2nd and 3rd to-morrow and the day after, that the marriage may be solemnized on Sunday, in the Council Chamber, by the Secretary, there being no minister.

September 11th and 12th.—Same weather.

September 13th.—Marriage solemnized.

September 14th, 15th and 16th.—Wind the same. Vessels prevented from leaving. Received our despatches.

September 17th.—Vessels leave.

September 18th.—The *Roode Vos* being despatched to Saldanha Bay to see whether any natives might be met there, from whom cattle might be obtained. Can get nothing from Herry's allies. Vessel leaves.

September 19th.—The three vessels anchored at Robben Island.

September 20th (Sunday).—S. East. Ships sail away. Another ship sighted.

September 21st.—Arrival of the *Gideon* with many sick, and 16 deaths. Touched nowhere. Sent refreshments. Ordered the sick on shore.

September 22nd.—Went on board to affix on our placcaaten, again forbidding the sale of brandy to the garrison on shore, to prevent all dishonest bartering, with the promise that if any were landed, it would be confiscated for the public benefit, the informer beforehand to receive 2 tankards full for his pains, his name also to be kept secret, &c.

September 23rd.—*Roode Vos* returns; had seen no natives at Saldanha Bay. Heavy wind and rain at night. Death of the boatman, Jan Helmus, of the *Dolphin*.

September 24th.—Quiet, cloudy weather.

September 25th and 26th.—The *Gideon* prepares to leave for Batavia. Leaves 12 sick and takes 15 sound men left behind by other vessels.

September 27th.—The *Gideon* leaves.

September 28th.—Cold, wintry weather. S.S. East, with hard showers.

September 29th and 30th.—The same.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted.

October 1st.—Stormy weather from S.S. East, as before.

October 2nd.—The same, injuring the crops very much. Find that we will not succeed with grain, which cannot be gathered before the heavy S.E. season. All the grain on Robben Island likewise destroyed in consequence of the sandy soil and the

incipient drought. More and more observe that no grain or rice (which does not even come up) can be reared here, only abundance of cabbage, beet, carrots, and turnips, which are now so abundant that no ships of the Company can come in sufficient numbers to consume them. Even turnips are now boiled in the meat-kettle for the men. Things seem gradually to improve, so that a good living may be found here for the common people, if the place be annually provided with rice and arrack; other supplies may be yearly obtained from a vessel arriving from home.

October 3rd.—Sent men to the mountains for wood for those proceeding to Dassen Island to boil seal-oil, 30 men in all, with all appliances and provisions for 5 months.

October 4th (Sunday).—Gave the men  $\frac{1}{2}$  a leaguer of wine to console them for past privations and hard work done, also to encourage them, and by way of a treat to those about to leave for Dassen Island.

October 5th.—Men sent to the wood for clubs to kill the seals with. Ordered 20 scrapers to be made, and having no steel, used old picks.

October 6th.—The *Roode Vos* with Jan Woutersen and his men on board leaves, to return at once after having landed the men.

October 7th.—Windy S.S. East weather.

October 8th.—Fine calm weather.

October 9th.—Had moulds, &c., made for bricks, as the season for making them is approaching,—works of the fortifications completed—strengthened with rushes and buttresses to prevent another collapse. Daily busy cleaning land for watermelons, melons, cucumbers and other Indian fruit—some sown 18 or 20 days ago thriving well,—necessary to be well prepared for the return fleet.—a pity that the cabbage lettuces will be done then, which are now at their best, weighing 1,  $1\frac{1}{4}$  and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. and as hard as cabbage—they will however have abundance of cabbage, beet, carrots, melons, watermelons, &c., also parsnips, of which we tasted the first yesterday, as delicate as, if not better than those in the Fatherland — reared from seed gathered from one root which had alone grown of all the seed sown the first year of our arrival—sowed about 10 roods of land with it, besides the  $\frac{1}{2}$  morgen of ground sown with the Dutch seed obtained per *Goutsblom* and sown with carrots—Cape seed better than Dutch—generally so. Hope the same success with the cauliflowers, which are a sight to see; artichokes promise well—place apparently suitable for a refreshment station. Grain alone will not thrive in consequence of the heavy winds, and perhaps trees will also grow of which afterwards we hope to have more experience, especially regarding the St. Helena orange plants brought by the *Tulp* and which are fairly thriving, as well as some hazelnut shrubs grown from nuts obtained from home. Time will show whether they will stand the windfalls from Table Mountain. The Alder tree seed has not come orth, and the briar seed has not been found on board the *Goutsblom*.

1654.

—would like to try it, also currants and gooseberries, whose seeds had been damaged by salt water on board.

October 10th.—Western breeze, raining.

October 11th (Sunday).—Cold, windy.

October 12th.—Warm and dry.

October 13th.—Commenced to make bricks.

October 14th.—Caught about 8,000 harders with the sein near the fort.

October 15th.—*Roode Vos* returns from Dassen Island, had found few seals, the animals all at sea among the rocks bringing forth their young, after that they would come to the land, as was observed last year. Too early to kill any—resolved to send back 12 men; the rest busy preparing land for corn to see whether it will thrive—wind not so bad there—might be found to be a good granary—decided to place 2 cannons on the island—land in the meanwhile to be prepared for the seed asked by Woutersen. Copy of letter of Woutersen to Riebeeck. Had arrived at Dassen Island on the 7th, pitched our tents, landed provisions on the 9th, commenced seal-hunting, might at once have caught some but would have frightened away the rest which are now bringing forth—better to wait awhile. Returns 12 men with the galiot to be sent back in 3 or 4 weeks' time. In the meanwhile more useful at the Cape. Of the 16, 3 boys are ill; will have to live on the Company's stores, most economically distributed, until other food is obtained. Found good sandy soil for gardens, and made a nice little garden sown with salad, radish, water-melons, peas, chillies and fennel—planted also of the Mauritius oranges—would like to have some more seeds and 3 or 4 spades and shovels, and also some clothing for the 2 men taken from Robben Island. The journals of the galiot not yet in order in consequence of the work to be done; another set of books required to copy and forward them as the galiot leaves. Cannot get on with the Hottentoots who accompanied us of their own accord; will do as they like; would be of service if they stood under discipline as we Netherlanders,—do a great deal of mischief among the seals and have continually to be watched. Will keep one, to teach him Dutch which he understands pretty well. Dated 12th Oct., 1654.

Journal kept by Woutersen.—Resolution adopted. Not much to be done for 3 or 4 weeks more, 12 men therefore to return to the Cape where they will be of more service than here, the boat to remain here, as it hinders the galiot in its movements, and to be drawn on shore, till orders have been received from Riebeeck about inquiring whether anything can be done in Saldanha Bay for the service of the Company, when the boat can be fetched on the way, as it will be required there. Signed by Jan Symontsz, Jan Woutersen, Cornelis Jansz, and Jan Gulick.

It being found too early in the season to hunt seals orders were given to collect reeds and wood for a good lodge on Dassen Island, to shelter the men and protect the skins—in want of planks.



October 16th.—Had a good deal of reeds cut for Dassen Island and also for making mats for the kilns, for which daily fuel is cut and brought on.

October 17th.—Ditto.

October 18th. (Sunday).—Stormy. S. E. weather also

October 19th, 20th and 21st.—Blowing harder than we have ever experienced it—gardens greatly injured. No grain crops possible if it blows like this when the grain ripens. Will therefore try Dassen Island—where the S. Easter is not so severe and good ground has been found. Will send him wheat to try.

October 22nd.—Galiot laden with the things required for Dassen Island; after having discharged these, to proceed to Saldanha Bay to see whether there are any natives with cattle there—has on board copper and tobacco.

October 23rd.—Galiot leaves.

October 24th.—Arrival of the *Suurte Bul*, 30th May, from the Vlie, only touched at Torbay, has above 100 sick on board, including skipper and other officers, miserable with scurvy. Sent vegetables, milk and eggs on board—sick to be landed to-morrow—*Roode Vos* returns—wind contrary, could not reach the island, had met the ship and piloted it into the Bay.

October 25th (Sunday).—Sick are landed—many die in the boat in such a way that they could not be looked on without great pity—ordered to make them as comfortable as possible. Time that the ship arrived, for the crew of the galiot had to manage the vessel, to bring it into port—not one strong enough on board to go aloft—especially caused by their desire to touch nowhere, but having reached 42° the skipper likewise fell ill and was only able to give each man 4 quarter pints of water a day. They were obliged to return and touch here, where fortunately they found abundance.

October 26th and 27th.—*Roode Vos* again leaves.

October 28th.—A large ship before the bay.

October 29th.—Sloop sent to it with refreshments. Wrote letter as follows :—"Afraid you have sick on board and are short-handed, please let us know—will send you men to bring you to the anchorage—send you also some refreshments." Vessel proves to be the *Walvis*, had left the Vlie with the *Bul* and *Prins*—touched nowhere. Above 100 sick on board. Sent refreshments and ordered the sick on shore.

October 30th.—Return of the *Roode Vos*. Had landed reeds and wood at Dassen Island,—seals commencing to visit that place—attempts made by Woutersen to kill some—that quarter at once abandoned by them—resolved to wait till they had brought forth, when they generally come as far as the middle of the island by thousands. Ground prepared for grain and other seeds. Woutersen declared that though it did blow there from the 18th to the 21st, there had been no hurricane, which gives us good hopes of

1654.

obtaining our wheat and bread from the place, whilst the seal-catching and oil-boiling has to be taken in hand at once.

October 31st.—Obtained two beasts from Herry's allies squatting with their cattle  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles away—have heard of no other natives. The beasts were killed for the ships.

N.B.—Wind and weather every day carefully noted.

November 1st.—Galiot leaves for Saldanha Bay. The Minister Marcus Masius, a passenger on board the *Bul*, celebrates the Holy Sacrament. Two beasts and 3 sheep obtained from Herry's allies.

November 2nd.—Heavy S. E. wind.

November 3rd.—Third officer of the *Walvis* named Evert Jansz; Ryk, of Amsterdam, receives permission to marry the chaste maiden Magdalena Andries of Middelburg, daughter of Andries Arentsz, of Brussels, 1st mate of the *Bul*. The game shooter kills a lion at the request of the Hottentoots, who were unable to do so themselves—the beast was of the size of a cow; had been among the natives' cattle and wounded a Hottentoot. Beast killed by the first shot, to the great surprise of the natives who have been taught a wholesome fear of our firearms.

November 4th.—Heavy S. E.

November 5th.—Got an ox from Herry's allies; could hear of no other natives, more inclined to trade,—this lot not inclined to part with their cattle, but squatting near the Salt River with their beautiful herds. Two beasts killed for the ships.

November 6th.—Death of the soldier Hessel Jacobsz: arrived here with the *Draak*.

November 7th and 8th (Sunday).—S. East.

November 9th.—Fine. West.

November 10th.—Hendrik Vries, chief mate of the *Walvis*, for various improprieties and misconduct towards the Commander of the fort, sentenced by Skipper Jan Van Campen of the *Walvis* and Abraham Ariaensz: skipper of the *Bul*, specially deputed to try him, to receive 50 lashes. Sentence carried out at once in order not to detain the ships, which take leave with our papers for Batavia. Two men of the *Walvis* and *Bul* die.

November 11th.—The vessels leave. Sloop takes 4 ewes to the island and is to bring back a ram, 162 penguins and some goose eggs for the 60 sick men here. Ships becalmed outside.

November 12th.—*Rodee Vos* returns from Saldanha Bay, had seen no natives, though it had fired guns repeatedly to give them notice of its presence. Brought 700 bundles of fine long reeds for matting for our brick kilns—had touched at Dassen Island—few seals thereas yet, men busy preparing garden ground; water-melons, &c., coming up nicely. A loop-holed stone battery already completed for the 2 cannons; also building a stone house—good stone and clay found there. Sloop arrives from Robben Island—sheep had multiplied to 56—brought over 100 penguins for the *Walvis* and 60 for the *Bul*, also some eggs and one particularly fine fat ram for

both ships still anchored outside of the roads. Sent them also vegetables, milk, &c.

November 13th.—Galiot leaves for Hout Bay to fetch fuel for the kiln. If we had horses we might get a good supply from the forest 2 or 3 miles away, and not be compelled to send the yacht to such a dangerous bay.

November 14th.—Caught about 10,000 harders with the sein near the fort; gardener and some men leave to gather mustard seed about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles away from the fort.

November 15th. (Sunday).—South Easter.

November 16th.—Men sent to forest to saw planks and make carriages for the guns on the ramparts—the two horses used at the kilns. Would like to have more to bring wood and fuel from the forest, latter getting scarce, impossible to carry it the distance named.

November 17th.—Two men sent overland to inquire, reported that the galiot had anchored in Hout Bay, and the men very busy cutting fuel.

November 18th.—Heavy S. East wind, greatly injuring the gardens.

November 19th.—Wind continues, men sent to the mountain for fuel.

November 20th.—Wind not so strong.

November 21st.—Fine S. W. weather.

November 22nd.—Dark, rainy weather (Sunday).

November 23rd.—*Rode Vos* returns with fuel. Skipper reported the danger incurred by entering and leaving the Bay; had often been in danger of stranding; would not be advisable to send the vessel again. Hardly another cargo of wood there now. Some new Hottentots arrive with 3 beasts, accompanied by some of Herry's allies, who influenced them to such an extent that it was difficult to trade with them. Desirable that these rogues were put on one side, when trade with the others would be more successful. Obtained the animals for about 20 lbs. copper-plate and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. tobacco, also 4 or 5 pints of arrack and some bread—liberally treated, so that altogether joyful they went home.

November 24th.—Fine warm weather.

November 25th and 26th.—Heavy wind greatly injuring the grain fast ripening now.

November 27th and 28th.—Obtained two more beasts—Herry's allies present; appear to act as brokers—not profitable to the Company. These rascals are daily among and insult us.

November 29th. (Sunday).—Fine weather.

November 30th.—Arrival of the *Hoff van Zeelandt*—sent refreshments on board.

N.B.—Wind and weather regularly noted.

December 1st.—*Hoff van Zeelandt* anchors in the Roads; had left the *Vlie* with the *Olifant* the 6th Aug. Touched nowhere.



1654.

Only four deaths, and 20 or 30 sick. Had parted from the *Olifant* in a storm about De Sorles.

December 2nd.—Galiot takes 15 men for the seal-killing and oil-boiling establishment at Dassen Island—to proceed to Saldanha Bay to see whether any cattle may be obtained from natives—copper and tobacco given for the purpose—also to touch at the Islands and kill as many seals as possible.

December 3rd.—Galiot leaves.

December 4th.—Sloop sent to Island, with provisions and 2 ewes, to bring back a ram.

December 5th.—Sloop brings a lamb, 10 months old, weighing fully 150 lbs.; 58 sheep still left on the island. The Superintendent had only seen 8 rock rabbits and one rabbit alive.

December 6th. (Sunday).—Dark, cloudy weather.

December 7th.—The same. Rainy.

December 8th.—Found that Herry's allies had moved towards Cabo Falso.

December 9th.—Too stormy for the *Hoff van Zeelandt* to leave.

December 10th.—South-east frightfully violent, beating all the grain from the stalks—will hardly retain a fourth.

December 11th.—Commenced to mow the wheat; mostly all the ears empty.

December 12th.—Ship sighted under the land—shortly afterwards Verburgh arrives from behind Table Mountain, behind which he had landed from a Madagascar canoe—reported the ship to be the *Tulp*, on 26th October from Madagascar, where he had made a good agreement with the King of Antongil, viz.: that if we would call again and erect a station, he would provide us with slaves and rice, &c. Had not been able with such a small ship to touch on the coasts of this quarter at any harbours, the wind having been strong and blowing on shore; had been detained 3 days at Mossel Bay by bad weather; seen no natives there, and coming before the Bay of Os Medaor daos d'Auro had been met by a heavy storm; the waves so high that he did not venture to run into that bay. Consequently kept off the land and went so low that they had no wish to call at Rio des Reys, the more so, as arriving near the inside coast of Madagascar, they had observed 2 large ships, from which they had to escape. If they had had a well-armed yacht with them they might have made a good prize. Obligated under the circumstances to avoid every strange sail, and steer straight for the Bay of Antongil, where they were well treated by the king and his people; had been abundantly refreshed, and obtained 3 tons of fine paddy and 2 of white rice, though arrived out of season, and the supply was low. Verburgh and some Hollanders were for a whole month the guests of the king, well lodged and treated in separate huts—parted in friendship, and with the promise to return with an assortment of merchandise, whilst the king would collect slaves and rice; he would have been glad if some Netherlanders had remained there. This king had

been poisoned when Verburgh arrived and was in danger of dying. The ship's barber was sent on shore, who with the blessing of God cured him; consequently great kindness was shown them, and they were promised as much liberty in the country as they required; showed great sorrow at the death of Commander van der Stel, who had been there before, and had been much loved. If the Company likes it, a fine station could be made in that bay. The French on the Island occupied in collecting hides—about 200 in number—about St. Lucia—had found one of their little vessels behind the Island of St. Maria before the Bay of Antongil, busy with a small craft in company (called *barka longo*) to collect rice on the coast for provisions for the fort at St. Lucia. When driven by hunger they had made war on the natives, and taken much cattle from them to fulfil their wants. In five years they had had no ships to fetch their stores from or about Antongil, so that the inhabitants had lost faith in the French, and the opportunity offers itself to the Company to make such arrangements with Madagascar as to secure all the rice of that Island, and so leave the French in the lurch, which might cause their departure, as they only stay there to gather hides, and to have a refreshment station for their Red Sea pirates who go thither and also to Saldanha Bay for water, &c. Last year the Frenchmen lying in Saldanha Bay had told us that the chief masters of the Colony at Madagascar were the Cardinal Mazarin and Monsr. de Luyne, treasurer of the king, also some other Counts and aristocrats of France, who, because of the little profit, had given it up to a certain Marshal Miljerie alone; consequently the number had already dwindled down from 4 to 200, and if we could thwart them in their rice trade, and their pirates gained little booty, it must follow that they will abandon the place; so that we will get rid of this nation at the east of the Cape, which would not displease the Company. Verburgh had also gathered that the French were likewise established on the Island Mascarenhas. The officers of the *Hoff van Zeelandt* take their leave. The *Tulp* anchors.

December 13th. (Sunday).—*Hoff van Zeelandt* leaves.

December 14th.—Quiet, rainy weather.

December 15th.—Quiet and misty. S.E. after noon.

December 16th.—Busy threshing.

December 17th.—Fine weather.

December 18th and 19th.—Arrival of the English ship *East India Merchant*, Captain Nypoort (? Newport) with an open letter from the 17, declaring that hostilities had ceased, and that the bearers should be kindly treated. Had been five months at sea, and consequently there were many sick on board; promised to give them as much greens as required. Would liked to have had five or six cattle; explained that we were badly provided; promised to keep their men in order, not allow them to barter with the natives or shoot or hunt or otherwise disarrange the discipline existing, &c.

1654.

December 20th. (Sunday).—*Tulp* despatched to Das-en Island and Saldanha Bay, with orders to the *Roode Vos* to ship into that vessel all the skins and oil at hand, also the sheep which may have been obtained, and to remain there as long as seals are obtainable; the *Tulp* to sail to and fro to bring the skins and oil, also to call at Robben Island for the same purpose. Entertained the English officers at dinner; treated them so well that at night they went on board pretty sweet and jolly, and well pleased. Were very liberal in offering us anything which the ship might have, for which we were very grateful, telling them that we were well supplied, and only sorry that we could not supply them with cattle, to show them the kind heart we have towards them without any hypocrisy. The Captain sent the Commander a hogshead of good English ale, a case of distilled waters, a good English cheese, and six smoked tongues. Sent on board in return a large quantity of vegetables to be under no obligation, but rather to leave it on the other side.

December 21st.—The *Tulp* becalmed outside.

December 22nd.—Leaves. English officers again dined with us, and at night they were as jolly as before, dancing, jumping, rolling and happy when they left. Would also have liked to have paid the same attention to the Commander, who has hitherto positively declined.

December 23rd.—Sent for a fat ram from Robben Island to treat the English.

December 24th.—Ram arrives. Commander and some of his company persuaded to go on board, where great honour and hospitality were shown them.

December 25th. (Christmas).—Fine weather.

December 26th.—Sold the lot of Madagascar ebony, which was much torn, to the English, in order to get something for it; about 1,800 lbs. weight at 10 gulden per 100 lbs., taking two butts of English beer for table at 36 reals per butt. As the rubbish costs the Company only 20 gulden, we shall obtain a nice drink at table for it.

December 27th. (Sunday).—Set the kiln on fire, with 43,700 bricks, which will go a long way. More being made, to have more ready this summer.

December 28th.—South-east. Men sent for fuel for the kilns. Obtained twice the quantity sown from the wheat; the heavy winds will interfere with grain crops. Time will show what can be done on Dassen Island. Sown grain from seed raised here to see whether it will ripen before winter, as in that case the seed will not be interfered with by the wind. Continual supply of bread, barley or rice necessary in the meanwhile. Gardens full of vegetables; no dearth for the ships in this respect; the garrison so well provided that they are beginning to forget their former privations. The English came to bid good-bye and thank us for our kindness. Gave us some letters for their Masters in London; we gave them



some for ours in India. Before dinner was over, it began to blow so hard that they could not get on board.

December 29th.—Wind went down in the afternoon, when the captain and officers left and the ship sailed away.

December 30th.—Heavy S. East.

December 31st.—On this side of the bay calm, on the other side a heavy S. Easter.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted.

## 1655.

January 1st.—Fine weather.

January 2nd —Ditto.

January 3rd.—Ditto ; at night a little rain.

January 4th.—Drizzling weather in the morning.

January 5th.—Sent for  $1\frac{1}{2}$  leaguers salt, and had about three tons gathered on a heap out of the pans, out of which a return ship might obtain a full cargo.

January 6th.—Six men sent to heap up salt, to be sent for as opportunity offers ; always required for salting fish for the common people, and used with rice by them. *Tulp* arrives with 4,000 skins and three firkins of oil. More of the latter might have been sent, but the casks were so old and leaky that they could not be repaired ; necessary to ask for staves and hoops. Grain growing not successful, as may be seen from the following letter of Woutersen : "Have received the letters and the 14 men : send back three as incapable of performing any service. Gave the skipper, Jan Symonsz, 6 serape benches, 7 scrapers, 6 flaying knives ; the corporal, Jan van Gulick, as he is much too independent, will be sent on as soon as he returns from Saldanha Bay. Dirk Dirksz : Haesjes appointed overseer, a respectable person, getting on well with the men, from whom much work is obtained, send 2,000 skins and three firkins oil ; if I had had casks I would have sent 12 leaguers more. Require two large wooden troughs for oil, some empty casks, 50 long straight clubs, fuel, arrack, meat, rice and pegs, bread, oil, vinegar, and flaying knives. Provisions might have lasted longer but the steward had cheated ; will send you the evidence when Gulick returns from the bay. Garden not successful in consequence of the great heat and uncultivated soil. Had some sick, who are better now. Death of the boy Jacob van Zanten—left no property, &c." In the cabin St. Elisabeth, on Dassen Island, 5th January, 1655.

Symonsz : still busy killing seals at Saldanha Bay—would soon be finished. On the 19th Dec. Teunis Aukessen and Buijsman deserted with the big boat and having gone on board the galiot, only guarded by 2 men and a boy, had robbed the skipper's and mate's chest of victuals, copper, tobacco, wine, &c. The skipper made a raft of the scraping benches and tent poles and with another succeeded in reaching the coast, paddling along until he reached a small island where the galiot was anchored, swimming

1654.

—

1655.

—

1655.

—

towards the galiot from that point. The rogues becoming aware of this took to flight with the boat, but the skipper having come on board and put to rights the little boat of the vessel which the scoundrels had sunk, followed them closely—they then steered for the rocky shore on which their boat was smashed—the one perishing with all the stolen things, the other washing ashore and hiding in the bushes where he was found dead, very likely murdered by the Hottentots; he was bruised and blue over his whole body, and it appeared as if whole pieces had been cut out of his face. Declaration, &c., of skipper:—"Cleaned the galiot and lay 10 days on the beach waiting for the natives. Every day some beach rangers told us that the Saldanhars were all coming to trade. Bought one beast from them—they have no sheep. Went to the Island to kill seals; on the 19th, 2 sailors deserted with the boat leaving us on the Island without food or water—heard that Joachim Elbertsz is the cause of the mischief—would like to have him in confinement—sufficient evidence. Both deserters dead, one drowned—the other killed by the Hottentots, got the big boat back again, as will appear from the other letter—they plundered the galiot completely, nothing was left. I and the mate are so naked that we have not a shirt or a suit of clothes. I trust that Joachim Elbertsz will pay for all. Yacht arrived on 22nd December; gathered that it was to be cleaned and take in the seal skins; only got one cow, given to skipper Samuel,—seals too poor to gather oil from them; had no boiler and no pegs. Took 5 men from Samuel, as we are weakhanded—2 sick, 2 wounded, gave Samuel all the skins, viz.:—1,722, have still 550 not yet dry, cannot get on longer than 2 days and will leave with the first fair wind. Samuel leaves for Dassen Island for his cargo, &c. Declaration of the mate Cornelis Jansz. On the 17th sent the boat with 2 sick to the galiot informing the skipper that we were short of hands and I had been bitten by a seal and unable to leave my bed, and that he should send fresh hands. At night the boat came to us with 2 sailors, and the following morning altogether killed and cleaned 180 seals, at night all went to bed, one kept watch, also one in the boat to prevent it from going on the rocks. As before daybreak the cook would fetch the water from the boat, he called out that he could not manage it alone. Teunis Aukessen went to his assistance without orders, and as soon as he was in the boat he cut the cable, hoisted the sail and steered for the galiot. We then considered the condition, having no water and no one willing to swim to the opposite shore. Made a raft and manned it with the skipper and 2 men. Too much weight, raft sinks, and only Claes Bensengh attends the skipper, succeed in reaching the main land, draw up the raft in a sandy creek, followed the shore until we came abreast of the galiot, I could not swim, agreed with Bensengh that he should swim to the island near the galiot to find out what they were doing; and in case they stayed the night and spent it in drunkenness, Bensengh would swim on board and secure the boat; if he

succeeded in getting the boat, he would row back to me a while after, and if he mastered them he would fire a shot or show a light. When Claes reached the Island, they left the vessel and I signalled to him to do his best to get on board, when he found Abraham and the sailmaker and the carpenter, also the ship stolen bare of everything. The three got into the (?galiot's small) boat with Bensengh and came to me. I also got in—we passed them towards the Island, where fresh oarsmen were obtained, and followed them. When we approached they steered for the shore, where no landing was possible. Aukessen was drowned and Buysman reached the land; searched for him a long while, could not find him, turned back to look for the goods, found nothing except the big boat bilged on the rocks; repaired it and went on board. Next day fetched the men off the Island; resolved to have everything ready to start for the Cape with the first fair wind, having no provisions; next day went to look again for the goods stolen, found nothing, found Buysman stoned to death by the Hottentoots, who had pulled off all his clothes, beaten him most cruelly and cut pieces out of his face. Went on board and let him lie there.

Had Elbertsz apprehended, who acknowledged that he had spoken of stealing the galiot and taking it to Brazil or Angola, but denied that he was the author—the other two were—the *Roode Vos* will bring clearer evidence. Skins being discharged, to return for the other skins and take provisions to Dassen Island, &c.

January 7th.—Galiot discharging and we making brick kilns; if we had horses for fetching fuel we might in a short time have sufficient bricks and lime. Sent for fuel to the mountains for those at Dassen Island. Elbertsz acknowledges that it was discussed when the *Hoff van Zeelandt* was here, to seize the galiot destined for Hout Bay to fetch fuel. No opportunity had offered however. Might have overpowered the skipper and mate, but had no wish to kill anybody. If the skipper had landed they would have deserted with the yacht to the Brazils, whither Auckes would have brought them, he understanding navigation, and having been with Buysman the chief instigator. Prisoner had always held back (opposed), and if he had been willing, it would have happened long ago, but his opposition prevented them from taking action. Was glad when he was ordered on shore when the galiot left, to have no more to do with the two. Did not dare to tell Riebeeck, and thought the matter would drop, showing in his pale and sorrowful face great regret, and requesting that the case may not be taken up heavily against him. See confession.

January 8th.—The salt-gatherers shot a rhinoceros in the pans. Was still alive, and had sunk so deep in the mud that he could not come out. Went to see, and had him killed. Would not have been able to kill him on hard ground. Had more than 100 bullets fired into him before he was dead. Had a piece cut out of his side, and fired into the hole, so killing him. Lot of salt gathered.



1655.

January 9th.—Arrival of the *Geeroonde Leeuw* from the Chamber, Enckhuysen, with the senior merchant, Pieter de Goyer, on board. Had left in July. Touched nowhere. Fifty dead and 100 sick on board. Sent refreshments. *Tulp* despatched to Dassen Island to fetch the oil, to send it on with this ship to Batavia.

January 10th. (Sunday).—Galiot leaves.

January 11th and 12th.—*Roode Vos* arrives from Saldanha Bay and Dassen Island, with 8,000 sheep-skins. *Tulp* at Dassen Island taking in oil. Brought some news referring to the theft on board that galiot. De Goyer and Council of the *Leeuw* despatch the junior merchant, Lucas van de Dussen, to us to request that their sergeant, Lambert Steenhagen, put into confinement by them, may be sent for and tried, that the ship's Council may meet prisoner's objection against their fairness as judges. Request allowed. Skipper of the *Roode Vos* and a corporal sent to bring him on shore. See Resolution. *Tulp* arrives with 8 leaguers of oil, to be shipped into the *Leeuw*, for Batavia.

Letter of Woutersen, dated 12th January, 1655:—"The *Tulp* arrived on the 10th with provisions. Send you 9 leaguers of oil, lost by leakage about 4 leaguers, also 7,000 skins per *Roode Vos*. Skipper Symontsz would not help the other galiot with his large boat unless compelled, which was somewhat absurd. Send you the memoranda of the *Roode Vos*, not copied."

January 13th.—N.W. weather, dark sky and rain.

January 14th.—Obtained a large ox from some new Saldanhas; had trouble though, as Herry's allies were poisoning their minds. More and more evident that these scamps are the cause of the others not coming to us. What Herry himself tells them is difficult to know; as long as his friends were here, nobody would come, and now these new ones are unwilling to sell any cattle, though having about 15 or 1,600 in all. Our opinion therefore remains that these rogues should be deprived of their cattle, and removed with their families, which they have richly deserved, as they have helped to steal our cattle and murdered the young man, doing every day some mischief to our men.

January 15th.—Better weather.

January 16th.—Fine.

January 17th. (Sunday).—Heavy S. Easter; boat of the *Leeuw* capsized, but without loss of life.

January 18th.—Heavy wind.

January 19th.—Calm. *Draeck* arrives. Had left Batavia on 7th November, with the *Wesep*, *Muyden* and *Ter Schelling*, under command of Hon. Hubert de la Resse. Cargo, sugar, pepper, and Japan wood, valued at £379,034 19s. 11d. Brought despatches of 7th November that other ships would follow. Council, assisted by officers of the *Geeroonde Leeuw*, condemn Joachim Elbertsz to stand at the main-mast of the galiot with the rope round his neck, and to be banished 12 years in irons, and Hans Swansz to be keel-hauled, with 6 years in chains, and confiscation of their wages.

January 20th.—Sentences carried out.

January 21st.—Men of the *Leeuw* and the garrison together go for fuel for the kilns. Provisional sentence of the *Leeuw's* Council against Sergeant Lambert Steenhagen confirmed, said sergeant further suspended for 3 months from office and pay; after that to proceed to India, and reinstated in his rank and pay, as will be seen from sentence of court-martial of the fortress, strengthened with the chiefs of the *Draeck*. Heavy S. Easter. 150 men on shore, whom we had to provide for.

January 22nd.—Wind the same. The 150 still on our necks; happens often, and creates a larger consumption of victuals.

January 23rd.—Fine sunny morning; at nightfall heavy S. Easter. Officers of *Leeuw* compelled to remain on shore; might otherwise have gone to sea. *Tulp* despatched to fetch skins at Robben Island.

January 24th.—Arrival of the yacht *Ter Schelling*, with the Vice-Commander, Hubert Hugo. Had yesterday parted from the *Muyden*, having on board the Admiral. May be expected every moment. Parted from the officers of the *Leeuw*, who took our papers for India, also fresh Cape garden seeds, daily gathered, with which India can be plentifully supplied.

January 25.—Fine.

January 26th and 27th.—*Tulp* arrives with 3,800 skins.

January 28th.—The *Gecroonde Leeuw* leaves. Officers of the *Ter Schelling* and *Draeck* also take their leave to proceed to St. Helena to await the *Muyden* and *Weesp*, supposed to have passed. Gave them our letters for home. As we very much require the horses and saddles sent per *Muyden* and *Weesp*, it was decided that a galiot should accompany the ships to St. Helena to take over the horses there, and to see whether those left on that island by the Hon. Van Teylingen could be caught and also brought over. See Resolution. Both ships left this afternoon.

January 29th.—Arrival of the *Muyden* with Commander Hubert Lairesse and a fine healthy crew; at once informed them of the decision of the other two ships, and sent on board refreshments for the crew and the cabin, also about 12,000 harders.

January 30th.—Same weather.

January 31st.—Dark sky.

N.B.—Wind and weather every day carefully noted.

February 1st.—Death of a boatman, Jacob Jantsz. Arrival of the *Weesp*—prevented by the wind from anchoring and went on.

February 2nd.—Same heavy S.E.

February 3rd.—Somewhat calmer—death of the sailor Symon Broers.

February 4th.—Heavy S. Easter.

February 5th.—Calmed down.

February 6th.—S. East in the afternoon.

February 7th.—S. East.

February 8th.—Same.

1655.

February 9th.—Calm. Hon. Laresse, not seeing any traces of the *Weesp*, leaves with the *Muyden*; will wait at St. Helena for the *Weesp*. Death of the sailor Romer Romersz.

February 10th.—Woodmen report the place full of natives, but with little cattle, who molested them everywhere; require more soldiers to protect them and their tools, &c.; did not know how to hide the latter sufficiently from the Hottentoots, who had stated that they intended to come and attack the fortress in great numbers and take the copper there. Had been told that they would receive copper for cattle, and that we wished to trade with them on friendly terms; had answered that we were sitting on their lands, and building on very fast, never more to leave; would, therefore, not sell us any more cattle, as we took the best pasture for our cattle, &c.; this the bushrangers had often told us in broken English. Will henceforth have to take more care, as the theft of the cattle was the result of too great confidence on our part. Are getting so bold that we must hold the tools in one hand and arms in the other, or at least have soldiers everywhere to avoid their molestations. Last night some 50 of them wished to build their huts near the side of the canal of the fortress, and being told to do so a little further off, stoutly declared that it was their land, and would build where they liked, and if we would not allow it, they would come in numbers and kill us, showing that they could easily scale the walls and knew how to break the palisades. Evident that the rogues get worse by kind treatment. What Herry does inland to the prejudice of the Company it is difficult to say; it cannot be any good he is doing; will have to take care that we are not suddenly attacked. The fort will not easily be taken, but as all the men have their hands full, and hardly one has been spared to keep a separate watch, a large slaughter may take place among us. Have therefore divided the men into three watches, to watch every third night, fully armed, and nevertheless to do their work during the day; some to remain at the gate and examine all the bushes round about to see whether no Hottentoots are hiding in them, that those at work may not be surprised, of which we are more and more growing afraid. From the fires we gather that there are many natives about, and our people innocently suffer much from them. Do not dare to say too much, as we are still assisted by their fetching fuel, though they must be beseeched to do so, and if the whim seizes them they won't do it at all, and we have work enough to keep the kettle boiling, as the wood is scarce and far away. The horses very much needed from Batavia.

February 11th.—Extremely hard S. Easter.

February 12th and 13th.—The same; very dry. Much produce, especially melons, destroyed; a great pity, as they would have been serviceable to the fleet. There will be enough however, of all greens. Obtained, after much haggling, a cow from Herry's allies; told us they were going, and others coming with much cattle. Woodmen confirmed their departure. Particularly on our



guard not to be surprised, not knowing what Herry may have been brewing.

February 14th. (Sunday).—Hard S. Easter. *Tulp* despatched to St. Helena to fetch the horses and saddles out of the *Weesp*, and see whether Teylingen's horses can be caught; also to bring some orange trees, and pigs. Got a fine sheep from the natives.

February 15th.—Boat sent with men to salt pans to gather salt; so much required here to cure fish eaten with rice by the men, as there is often nothing else when fish is not caught.

February 16th.—Lots of fires on the coast towards the north—suppose there are many natives with cattle about Saldanha Bay; sent Verburgh with the galliot *Roode Vos* and with a supply of copper and tobacco to see whether any trade was possible; also to inquire at Dassen Island how seal-catching was proceeding there, and give the necessary directions.

February 17th.—Galliot leaves.

February 18th.—South-Easter still blowing; very dry.

February 19th.—A ship before the bay—South East too strong for it to enter; sent the sloop with vegetables; shipped anchors in the afternoon. The *Malacca*, having left on the 20th October with the *Wapen van Hollandt* and *Amsterdam*, brought despatches from the Masters of 6th October, and a closed letter for the Commander of the fleet still expected. A few sick on board. Had touched at Isle de May.

February 20th.—Fine weather.

February 21st. (Sunday).—The same. Arrival of the *Oliphant*, which had left on the 6th August with the *Hoff van Zeeland*; had been forced by storm into a British harbour, and afterwards, in consequence of the scurvy, touched at Sierra Leone, from which place to this, it had been five months on the way. Had a fairly healthy crew, but scurvy was beginning. Trust that the ship will be ready to proceed in eight or ten days' time to Batavia. Another ship sighted.

February 22nd.—Ship at Robben Island, arrived about noon—the *Wapen van Hollandt*. A few sick on board, well refreshed with vegetables.

February 23rd.—Fine weather.

February 24th.—A ship sighted.

February 25th.—Death of a young boatman, Carel Pietersz, of Heiligh Sondt.

February 26th.—Wind as before.

February 27th.—A preparation and confession sermon preached by Rev. Mus of the *Wapen van Hollandt*.

February 28th. (Sunday).—The Holy Supper served by the Rev. Johannes Campius of the *Malacca*.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted every day.

March 1st.—Resolved that the three ships shall leave in company, that the *Malacca* may have assistance when required, she being very leaky, and part of her money boxes to be taken on board the

1655.

*Oliphant*; to send also the big boats to Saldanha Bay to see whether any cattle had been obtained, and if not, to bring back birds and eggs.

March 2nd.—Fine weather.

March 3rd and 4th.—Great heat, scorching up the vegetables; hardly had rain for 3 months. If the drought continues the return fleet will only have carrots, turnips, melons, &c.

March 5th.—Boats return each with 15 or 1,600 fresh birds and 3 sheep. Verburgh also returns, and reports he had obtained 2 cattle and 10 sheep from the beach-rangers, who were not to be trusted. Had salted down 6 casks of birds in the galiot and taken 6,000 skins from Dassen Island, where a strange vessel with a red flag had anchored. A boat sent on shore returned when half way, and the vessel left; suppose it to be a Frenchman intending to catch seals; has no doubt voyaged in vain, as the skins are in the hands of the Company, from which the French must take them if they want any.

March 6th.—Marriage of the Junior Merchant, Jacobus van den Kerkhoven, with the sister-in-law of the Rev. Petrus Mus, named Elizabeth Statlanders van den Bos, all of the ship *'t Wapen van Hollandt*.

March 7th. (Sunday).—Hard S. East.

March 8th.—Galiot brings the birds and seal skins (7,000); had met a Frenchman full of men between Robben and Dassen Islands, coming from Madagascar. Letter from Woutersen. The galiot having taken in 6,700 skins, left for Saldanha Bay; 3 boats arrived here from Saldanha on the 4th for penguins. Galiot returns; gave her 650 more skins. Seal-killing will last until Easter at the furthest; require bread, arrack, vinegar and rice. A strange ship passing to the westward of the island, anchored in the bay in the afternoon; could not be a Dutchman, showed no signals. We therefore fired a gun, when it at once hoisted a red flag, and sent a boat to the shore, which when about half way turned back, very likely in consequence of the strong S.E. At night the vessel left. Who she was, God only knows.

March 9th.—Calm weather; vessels unable to go. Married by Rev. Petrus Mus the junior merchant, Frederik Verburgh, 2nd person of the fortress, to the chaste maiden Meynsgen Campen, sister of the Rev. Johannes Campius of the *Malacca*.

March 10th.—Ships still unable to leave.

March 11th.—Vessels leave with healthy crews, the *Oliphant* having lost 16, the *Malacca* 4, and the *Wapen van Hollandt* only 2; and only leaving 4 sick behind, being well provided for the voyage with carrots, &c.

March 12th.—Galiot despatched to Dassen Island with provisions. A Madagascar slave missing; Hottentoots, contrary to their habit, refuse to search for him; suppose that they killed him, as he was often quarrelling and fighting with them. Lubbert, Herry's mate, arrives, treated well; says Herry is far inland. May

be he may be tempted to come to the fort, though he is a clever rogue, and so is this Lubbert, the chief of the thieves.

March 13th.—Sent to the forest for the ribs of the sloop being built,  $51\frac{1}{2}$  Amsterdam feet long, 14 feet 10 inches broad, and 6 ft. deep, to be used for the islands and piloting ships into the bay; also made for rowing—the whole of Cape wood, excepting a few oaken boards, taken from the ships.

March 14th. (Sunday).—Warm and calm weather.

March 15th.—Seven volunteers provisioned for three weeks, leave for inland, under command of the cadet Jan Wintervogel, late captain of the Brazilians in Brazil, which land, he explored as far as the South Sea, helping to discover the silver mines of Chiera—a good explorer—hence entrusted with the command to see whether any other natives and better minerals than about here might be found. Takes with him for trade 6 lbs. tobacco, 6 lbs. copper, and some beads and knickknacks, &c. Is to persuade the natives to come and trade, as undoubtedly Herry has been frightening them; consequently expedient to have him with us again by friendly means and promise of pardon which may occur, as his friend Lubbert is already hanging about the fortress and being treated kindly.

March 16th.—Bad weather.

March 17th.—A vessel unable to enter the bay in consequence of S.E. Also sighted another ship between Robben Island and the main land, supposed to be the *Roo de Vos*.

March 18th.—Arrival of 't *Wapen van Amsterdam*: had left the *Vlie* the 20th Oct.: touched at Isle de May—had 7 deaths and not more than 2 or 4 sick—scurvy commencing—furnished with refreshments. The other was the yacht *Domburgh* from Zealand on the 20th November; had touched at Teneriffe, and been well supplied, and only lost 2 men; reports that the *Provintie* had left two days before its own departure, with the Hon. Starthenius on board, and fancies to have seen a ship near the land yesterday.

March 19th.—Galiot returns with 6,000 skins and assistant Woutersen with his men and tools, &c. Resolution taken by the officers of the galiot and those of Dassen Island. As there are no more seals, and since the 15th we have ceased hunting them, and as an attempt made on the 18th was completely unsuccessful, it was resolved to return to the Cape with all the tools, &c.

March 20th.—S. East and severe drought.

March 21st. (Palm Sunday).—Quiet and extremely dry weather.

March 22nd and 23rd.—The same.

March 24th.—Hard S. Easter. 25th the same.

March 26th.—Calm weather.

March 27th.—The salt meat of the *Domburgh* resalted, with salt from the pans. Not being able to obtain cattle for the sick, the long boat of the *Amsterdam* is sent to Dassen Island to obtain 1 or 2,000 birds and a number of eggs to be given to the men with greens.



1655.

March 28th (Easter).—Boat returns with birds.

March 29th and 30th.—Officers of *Domburgh* take their leave for Batavia and our letters.

March 31st.—*Het Wapen van Amsterdam* takes leave and our letters.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted.

April 1st.—Four vessels sighted.

April 2nd.—The *Domburgh* leaves. Arrival of the yacht *Koukerken* from Zealand on 10th Dec. Touched nowhere—no sick, only 2 dead—but crew commenced to complain of asthma and scurvy in consequence of the long voyage; provided with refreshments. *Phenix* anchors outside the roads, had left Texel on 10th December. The yacht *Blommendaal* also sighted—had left 4th Dec. Set fire to another kiln. Mason work progressing rapidly; hope next year to have all requisite buildings finished, nicely built of brick inside of the fort, now only made of light wooden material from the Fatherland and already decaying; necessary therefore that they be made of stone to have eternal and strong work, which does not require looking after,—gardens also zealously cultivated to provide the ships properly—fine ground everywhere for gardens, but hard to cultivate in consequence of the roots of the underwood; must choose this soil, as the land towards the sea during the dry season is too coarse, hard and dry, and consequently yielding but little.

April 3rd.—Arrival of the *Provintie* with Starthenius on board—Councillor of India—had left Zealand on the 18th Nov. and touched at Cape Verde; crew fairly well—had only lost 7 men. The *Phenix* had 10 deaths and the *Blommendaal* 2. The *Coningh David* and *Maagd van Enekhuyzen*, which had left on 7th Dec., had no dead, as is usually the case with large ships; excepting scurvy they have hardly any sick, only some scurvy patients—all the 6 ships to be well refreshed as long as they are here. Jan Winter-vogel and his men return, having left behind Jan de Vos who had died from eating too many bitter almonds—reported that they had been about 50 miles inland and met a native of very small stature, poorly fed, quite wild, and clothed with skins as the Hottentots, and almost talking as the latter do. Had also found some 70 or 80 Saldanhars in different troops about 15 miles away, with numerous cattle and sheep, anxious to obtain copper and tobacco but not desirous of coming to the fort because of Herry's friends being there. Had also met some Souquaas called fishermen and enemies of the Watermen and Saldanhars without any cattle, who had approached us fully armed; did not attack us, gave them some tobacco and beads. The large troop of apparently real Saldanhars with many cattle were very friendly, and by no means of a begging disposition, always at once giving something in return for what they received, very much inclined for trade, especially tobacco, but would not come to the fort because of Herry's friends—would come when they were gone—whenever they came to us they laid

down their weapons—we treated them well. These Saldanhars could give us no information about Herry, but the Souquaas laughed at us when we spoke of him, just as his friends here do, saying that he is far inland, though daily we see his wife and children among them.

April 4th. (Sunday).—Rainy windy weather.

April 5th.—Dry, windy weather.

April 6th.—It being the anniversary day of the settlement, the appointed day of prayer and thanksgiving was observed and the Minister of the *Phenie*, the Rev. Hermanus Bershoff, preached the Word of God.

April 7th.—Went a little inland with the Hon. Sterthenius to have a look at the Hottentoo encampments, four in number, having amongst them about 1,200 sheep and 400 head of cattle: all Herry's allies, who would not sell us a single animal, and when we returned from the forest which we had also gone to see, and to inspect the position of certain ground for cultivation, they offered us a sickly lamb, which we refused, telling them to bring other sheep which we would buy for copper, which they were not inclined to do. They were not at all afraid of us though we appeared with 50 or 60 soldiers, which is a good sign, and will be of service when it shall be resolved to seize them and their cattle, a fate which they have richly deserved.

April 8th.—Some thunder, but no heavy rain. Ship sighted off Hout Bay. Long boat of *Provincie* sent to inquire who she was, &c.

April 9th.—Arrival of the yacht *Kabeljouw*, which had left Batavia on the 11th February with provisions for the Cape and Mauritius, thence to proceed to Ceylon, according to letters received from India. Nine more ships had left for Patria under command of Hon. Van Goens, on the 26th January, viz., *Parel*, *Princess Royal*, *Dolphijn*, *Gideon*, *Coningh Van Polen*, *Tertolen*, *Louyse*, *Dort* and *Breda*.

April 10th.—*Tulp* arrives from St. Helena; had left 10th March; had on board 2 horses, one caught in the Church Valley, and the other obtained from the *Weesp*, also the saddles. Could not catch the other horses with the galiot's men. The United Council of the *Muyden*, *Ter Schelling*, *Weesp*, and *Draeck*, would not resolve upon giving any assistance. Are very much in want of 6 or 8 horses. Said fleet had left on 6th March—had obtained no pigs but much vegetables and fish, excepting the *Muyden*, which had hardly caught 6 or 7, so that its sudden departure from this has been of no service to it whatever; so they have run fast away from abundance to bad fare, each one trying his best to win the race; despising our abundant vegetables which they thought we would have sent after them, and which we might have done if we had not been led to suppose that we would be merely adding to abundance. Some of them when here pulled up their noses at our fruits, but if they had had them at St. Helena they would have licked their fingers and thumbs. Some ships' minds sometimes seem to be wiser



1655.

than their Lords and Masters, who on purpose went to the heavy expense of this settlement that the ships might be properly refreshed. The English yacht, *The Welcome*, had arrived at St. Helena from Surat on the way to England. Bought at a dear rate two beasts from natives far inland; had been influenced by Herry's allies.

April 11th.—Killed the two beasts and a calf for distribution among the 6 ships, supplemented with greens, &c. Arrival of the yacht *Goes* on 10th January from Zealand, touched now here, crew healthy. Sent refreshments on board. Another ship sighted.

April 12th.—The *Prins Willem* from Zealand, 1st January, had touched nowhere, 3 deaths, crew healthy. Sent refreshments on board, Hon. Sterthenius resolved in full Council to remain until the 15th and then start with the 6 ships for Batavia.

April 13th.—Obtained 2 ewes and a lamb from the natives, price high.

April 14th.—Hon. Sterthenius takes leave and our papers for Batavia.

April 15th.—The fleet leaves; the Woodmen report the arrival of 2 large troops of new people from the interior, and with much cattle, about a mile away: the same people met by Wintvogel's expedition.

April 16th and 17th.—Went with about 60 musketeers to the new natives, about  $1\frac{1}{4}$  mile from the fort; came upon 10 huts with a fair number of cattle, but as Herry's friends again obtruded themselves nominally as our brokers, under our protection, we could not get more than 2 lean kine, and very dear. Killed the animals for the ships.

April 18th.—Obtained a ewe and lamb from strange natives.

April 19th.—*Ter Goes* takes leave for Batavia and the *Kabeljouw* for Ceylon. Obtained a cow from strange natives.

April 20th.—Wind and weather as above, N.W.

April 21st.—In the morning dirty wet weather; departure of the 2 yachts; 3 other vessels sighted; a little while after 4 more; all safely anchor in the afternoon the *Parel*, *Tertolen*, *Princess Royal*, *Dordrecht*, *Gideon*, *Louyse* and *Dolphijn* from Batavia on the 28th January, under command of Hon. Ryckhoff Van Goens, Extraordinary Councillor of India. Said ships had been near the land 5 days ago, also the *Breda* and *Coningh Van Polen*.

April 22nd.—Van Goens and Council decide to take all the seal skins with them.

April 23rd and 24th.—Fine weather.

April 25th.—Rainy and windy.

April 26th and 27th.—Obtained 2 cows and busy shipping skins. Those of the *Prins Willem* take their leave.

April 28th.—A little rain. Went with the Hon. Van Goens to the forest and other places, observing a lot of Hottentoo camps with much cattle; bought a cow and sent it on board.

April 29th.—Van Goens takes leave, to start with fleet as soon as wind is favourable.

April 30th.—Western breeze and cloudy sky.



N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted.

May 1st.—Van Goens delayed by the weather.

May 2nd. (Sunday).—The same. During the night tigers kill six Dutch sheep in the stable, having worked a hole through the wall, and that in the presence of the two watchmen; wall about 2 feet thick and of sods, watchmen could not prevent it. At night the tigers were also in the fowl-house and killed the only three geese left, biting a certain person, who wished to defend himself, severely in the arm. These wild animals appear to become a trouble again in the rainy season.

May 3rd.—Dirty boisterous weather.

May 4th.—Bought 2 cows and 3 sheep. Van Goens again lands, being unable to leave, and takes a walk to the mountains where the minerals had been unearthed, of which, and of other matters he took careful notice, returning on board again at night—waiting for the breeze.

May 5th.—Vessels still detained. Van Goens orders the *Tulp* to try and get out in order to proceed to St. Helena with letters for the *Coning van Polen* and *Breda* to wait for him, also to do their best to catch the horses and take in the skins brought by the *Tulp*.

May 6th.—*Tulp* leaves the bay, but the wind being N.W., and on the 7th the same, it had to anchor outside.

May 8th.—The same.

May 9th (Sunday).—*Tulp* leaves. Van Goens leaves with the return fleet—the *Prins Wil'em*, and *Roode Vos* likewise take leave for Batavia.

May 10th.—All still in the bay. During the day they leave. Obtained a cow and 2 sheep from new natives at present in large numbers near us. Hard to deal with, influenced as they are by Herry's allies.

May 11th.—Fine weather.

May 12th.—The sailor Lourens Pietersz, of Maesterlant, dies.

May 13th, 14th and 15th.—Sowed some wheat, barley and oats.

May 16th. (Pentecost).—Obtained 7 sheep and 1 calf from a strange people.

May 17th.—The smack takes 17 sheep to Robben Island, so that there must now be 79; hope that the Saldanhars will bring enough to stock the island and enable us to subsist on the increase and refresh the ships besides.

May 18th.—Hard S. East, dry weather.

May 19th.—The same.

May 20th.—Fine clear weather.

May 21st.—Ditto.

May 22nd.—Rainy.

May 23rd.—Good weather.

May 24th.—The same; sowed about  $\frac{2}{3}$  morgen of ground with turnip seed; last year's wheat had been sown there, the moist weather best time for seeds.

1655.

May 25th to 29th.—The new natives gone again, having obtained no more than 5 or 6 cows and about 20 sheep from them, believe that they are influenced by Herry and his allies; don't tell them our opinion of them in order to keep on good terms, and make them feel quite secure, so that as soon as the interests of the Company require it, they and their cattle may be seized. Coming near our cattle so oft-n that the two troops get mixed up; done purposely no doubt to be able to steal our beasts, consequently a good watch is kept, and they become aware of our having no intention to take their cattle but to take care of our own. They consequently use our pasturage as well, which will be all the better when they are paid off.

May 30th. (Sunday).—Dark, rainy weather. At dusk some of Herry's friends arrived from the Salt River with about 300 cattle, hurriedly passing the fort saying that they had been pursued by some Saldanhars inland who were angry with them, and being afraid they had fled, having been robbed of all their sheep and many cattle. Some had also been taken by their enemies the Soaqua who were also the enemies of the Saldanhars, as Herry had been pretending. Requested to remain under our protection with their cattle between the Downs of the Lion's Rump, for which favour they would gladly fetch firewood for the cooks and be paid with rice, tobacco or arrack. Some of their party were still at the redoubt at Salt River with about as much cattle who would also come if they saw the enemy approaching. Commander visited them in the afternoon and proposed to them to give him their cattle when they might always live unmolested under the protection of the fort and be supported by the garrison. Would not part with their animals, but willing to fetch wood for rice, &c. Told them we would buy the cattle; was answered that they lived from the milk, but that there were others deeper inland from whom enough might be procured. Quite convinced that if we protect them, no other natives will come near us, and that their coming to us is a mere pretext to get on our pasture lands, and keep our cattle down in numbers, therefore no doubt telling others that we do not buy cattle, whilst they are not willing to part with any. Allowed them however to come under our protection, they undertaking to fetch fuel for a remuneration, a great relief to our men. This permission especially granted to have them at hand when it is necessary to seize them.

May 31st.—Sent our men to a location near the Salt River where there were about 600 head of cattle and as many sheep; were found to be the companions of the others and singing the same song. Got with difficulty 1 cow and 6 sheep from them. The men reported that the cattle were all grazing near the redoubt only herded by 3 boys and could be easily captured; this would not be advisable as the rogues would make the roads unsafe for the fishermen, carpenters, &c., who would easily be massacred. If their cattle be taken they, must be taken also, and removed. Can be easily got

within the fort and made as drunk as pigs, the more so as their confidence in us is unlimited.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted.

June 1st.—Had again a leopard in the fowl-house during the night through carelessness of the fowl-keeper, who had left the slide below the door open, so that 3 of the 5 geese given us by Mr. Goens to breed from, have been killed. To kill the leopard, or catch him, the Superintendent of the Hospital and the groom (who, with the horses and the sick, live under one roof, only separated from each other by partitions made of rushes) had entered the fowl-house, and when the former, who was a very bold man, had shot and slightly wounded the brute, it jumped upon him and struck some of its claws into his head, biting him at the same time so severely in the arm that he was obliged to let the animal go, which also slightly wounded the groom on the head, but not worth speaking of; very strange indeed, but the other, who had often had to do with leopards on such occasions, and wounded them, was severely bitten in the arm. A remarkable sight was seen in the cattle kraal where said hospital, fowl-house, &c., are located. Becoming aware of the presence of the leopard, the animals all collected in a body, with the horns all towards the door, and forming a crescent, so that the leopard had enough to do to keep clear of the horns when escaping, though in our opinion the animals sufficiently showed their terror by their bellowing. It has often been seen by us that leopards, lions and tigers could do no harm to the cattle, which have often formed a circle, with the calves behind them, and so protected that not one could be carried off, which has often been wonderful to witness. Obtained 8 sheep from the natives at Salt River.

June 2nd.—Rainy, windy weather. N.W.

June 3rd.—Boisterous and rainy. W.S.W.

June 4th.—Calmer, same wind, rainy.

June 5th.—Quite fine. Sent the smack with 17 sheep to Robben Island, with orders to bring back a young ram for the table. Also sent 4 pigs to see whether they would thrive better there, as will be seen from letter to Adriaan van de Paver, on the Island:—"Send you 17 sheep; send us a middle-sized ram for our table, and let us know how many sheep are available in case vessels call. Also collect shells, to be taken from the salt bay, as opportunity offers. Do not neglect this. Not necessary to catch any fish, except now and then a little for our table when you come with the canoe for provisions. Send you a bag of carrots. Let us know how your lime-burning advances. Send you also 4 pigs, to see whether they will thrive there; take care that there is always water for them at hand, also some seal-meat and penguins, from which a slush can be prepared with which to feed them. Not to run wild, but to be at home every evening, to be easily caught.—(Signed) RIEBEEK."

June 6th. (Sunday).—Smack returns with a lamb and following note:—"Have received the animals and vegetables sent. Grain



1655.

sprouting forth well, a finger long already, but the geese eat it off. Ground is good. Will take care of the swine. Only one sheep fit to kill, the others will be so in a month's time. Have not yet burnt lime, but everything ready. Thank you much for the carrots.—(Signed) PAYER.”

June 7th.—Rainy, N W.

June 8th.—Ditto. Heavy rains during the night. Embankments gave way nowhere; feared it because of the mighty rain.

June 9th.—Just as wet.

June 10th, 11th and 12th.—Hind curtain of the fort rained down about 5 roods, an annual inflection it seems, as the immense quantity of water falling here in the rainy season pours down so heavily that it threatens to wash away everything. Necessary, in course of time, to build a stone fort, which might be done gradually if we only had more horses, the conveyance of clay and fuel by human hands being very hard on human strength. Oxen we cannot obtain. Less danger in managing horses than oxen, which are apt to butt with their horns, not being accustomed to work. Hottentoots complain of a wild beast among their cattle. A sergeant and 3 or 4 soldiers sent to kill it. In the Downs, not far from the fort, we met the Hottentoots, covered about the head with branches and reeds like the deuce, standing in a circle with their assegais around a bush, in which the animal was, which did not dare to come out, whilst they were afraid of going nearer. Had hit him once in the leg. The sergeant seeing it, a large leopard, shot at and killed it, to the great astonishment of the Hottentoots. Brought into the fort, it was found that its right leg had been smashed very lately by a bullet, so that it was evidently the same animal which had so severely bitten the superintendent of the sick, and had made such sad havoc amongst our cattle and poultry. Last night there was a civet cat in the Commander's room, and, after much trouble, was caught and killed. So many of them here that it is hardly possible to protect pigeons, ducks or fowls against them.

June 13th. (Sunday).—Better weather.

June 14th.—Ditto. Sent the smack to Saldanha Bay with assistant Woutersen to see whether no cattle can be got. Provided with tobacco, copper, &c., and 14 days' provisions for 8 men. First to touch at Robben Island, on which to place 5 sheep obtained to-day, and to plant there some sweet potatoes, to see whether they will thrive better there than here, where they grow famously, weighing each 4 or 5 lbs., hence all exertions made to cultivate it. The Island shepherds to be employed for the purpose, to have food for the garrison here, to lessen the Company's expenses as much as possible. Woutersen to plant some also on Dassen Island, for supplying one day the seal-catchers. He is also to see whether there are any seals at this season.

June 15th.—Got a meagre old ox from Herry's friends, from whom we get no other quality, and that rarely. Must take it, as

our supply is running out and we wish to retain their confidence, otherwise the cattle which they bring us would be hardly worth looking at, though they have the finest in the country, about 300 in number, and about 200 sheep grazing between Lion's Rump and the Sand Downs, by our favour.

June 16th and 17th.—Fine weather.

June 18th.—Boisterous, rainy and windy.

June 19th.—Heavy showers, the back curtain of the fort entirely collapses; decided to rebuild it with laths interwoven with rushes two or three feet high; will not hold otherwise, as the weather is too severe on it. The work will be very heavy, as the wood is three miles away, and 7 or 800 poles will be required besides all the rushes, but it must be done. Sowed half a morgen of land with carrots this week, and ploughed another morgen for carrots and beet.

June 20th. (Sunday).—Dirty rainy weather, W.

June 21st.—Fine sunshine for the plough—a pity that we have no more horses, which would relieve a lot of men. Woutersen returns with the smack; could not reach Dassen Island because of the severe N.W. wind and heavy seas; dragged his anchor, and was compelled to sail to Robben Island, where, in consequence of the accident to the kedge, they were washed on shore, and had to return unsuccessfully.

June 22nd.—Fine.

June 23rd.—Ditto. Arrived beyond all expectations the interpreter Herry, with 50 armed men, strangers, and a lot of 40 fine cows, of which, through him, we obtained 26, after his request to see the Commander. This having been allowed, and having been well treated, he commenced to apologise for leaving in October, 1653, when all the cattle were stolen, stating that the theft had not been committed by him or with his sanction, but by the Cape men (called by us his allies, and at present living under our protection); that the boy had been murdered by the son of the fat old man now the captain of the gang; had left through fear that he would be hanged, as we might think that he was guilty, and to show his innocence and good feeling he had now returned with these real Saldanhars and their cattle to sell them to us, with the promise that he would obtain for us from them and from others as many animals as we wished; only wished to be forgiven and favourably received. Granted provisionally, and 25 lbs. wire, copper plate, tobacco, wine, pipes, a bag of rice, bread, &c., given him to make merry with his comrades. Quite at ease, he told us that he would show us our own cattle among those of the Caepmans, though they had eaten a good many, but if we wished to have service from the Saldanhars we were to destroy the Caepmans (called by us his allies, our cattle thieves, who would never sell us any), for where they were the others dared not come, being such rogues that what they have is stolen, which is self-evident, as they never wished to trade, &c. Proposed to execute the plan to-night, himself and

1655.

—

other Saldanhars to remain in the fort as hostages. The Caepmans had no sentries—at night their cattle were coupled together 2 and 2, and hence easily obtainable; also the men and their families, who should be sent over sea, so that the Saldanhars would not only be obliged, but would bring as much cattle as we wanted. Afraid in that case that we would sooner run out of copper than they of cattle. As long as these Cape men were here the others would not come, as the former had also spread the report that we intended to kill him and the Saldanhars. To test this, and well knowing our good disposition, he had come with these Saldanhars, assuring us that the others would be well pleased, &c. Assured him of our forgiveness and protection, allowing him as before to eat at the Commander's table, &c. Did not reveal any inclination to adopt his proposal to seize the persons and property of the Cape men, though we saw our cattle among them; had no intention of doing anybody any harm, though they annoyed us daily very much, but were willing to buy what we wanted on friendly terms. He answered that we would not be able to do any business with anybody unless they went, as they were only robbers, and no traders. Urged us to take steps to-night. Did not show him our minds, but gathered that he was not quite wrong, his statements agreeing very much with our suspicions, as we have observed that the rogues were very much annoying those who had come with Herry in order to trade with us, and with great importunity begged tobacco and copper from them plausibly as brokerage, and if we showed signs of dissatisfaction they gave us to understand that they had invited that nation and Herry, who would otherwise not have come, though we knew the contrary, as they had for a long time not been away from their camp or past the fort; upon which Herry, being alone with us, told us again that as long as these Cape men were about us the natives would not come; nor did he dare to oppose them openly, as they would kill him, so that often he had to dissimulate, as he had done generally before this. And when the Saldanhars objected to this imposition of brokerage they were robbed right and left, which made them dissatisfied and afraid. At night Adriaan van Paver arrived with the canoe from Robben Island; had yesterday seen a ship which had passed on. Two sheep had died on the island, but five lambs were born; total now 98.

June 24th.—The *Prins te Paard* arrives—greatly in want of water; at once supplied; also refreshments sent on board. Had left Batavia 1st April. Officers come on shore—state they had a prosperous voyage, but since 28th May had to struggle with heavy W.N.W. storms, and suffered much discomfort and injury to the ship; had consequently been short of water—for three weeks the crew had only five tankards a day, and all the time the cook had not prepared anything. Many had consequently become sick and been attacked with dropsy; hitherto fortunately, only two had died. Trust that the rest will soon recover, as the gardens are well provided, and, with Herry's assistance, we have obtained some



cattle, which will be serviceable now and for other arrivals. Officers had also 10 days ago sighted a ship to the East of the Cape going Eastward, supposed to be English or Portuguese. Herry brought two cows, so that we have in all obtained 28 head of cattle at reasonable prices and without much trouble. The natives left, Herry remaining with us near the Downs with his wives and children, and about 16 head of cattle, given him by the said natives, and which he liked to keep for himself, and which he begged might be depastured under our care; provisionally allowed, to see how he will conduct himself. Our cattle always guarded by soldiers, as Herry told us that the Capemen would steal them whenever they found an opportunity. Could not understand how we trusted them so much, and could not make up our minds to seize them and their cattle, again maintaining that so long as they were here, the other natives would not come, and thinking that as there was a ship here now they might all be easily coaxed on board and made drunk, whilst the rest could be easily caught, offering himself and family as hostages to prove his sincerity, &c. Consider it too premature; better to wait until the Capemen, attracted by our kind treatment, have come together near us, when it will be worth while as regards the large number of stock which they will then have together, the number at present not being above 4 or 500, whilst if all are together, the number would be about 15 or 16,000, from which a fine supply would be obtained, the ships provided, and the salted meat and pork for this garrison saved. Having seen during his absence that generally one of Herry's wives or children was among the Capemen, from which we gathered that they were his friends, and that they were together guilty of the cattle theft, we asked him whether he was sincere in what he had said, to which he answered "Yes!" What then did it mean that his wife and children had generally lived with the Capemen? Answer, that they had retained them by force that he might not betray them to us, or dare to come to us, or ally himself to us without them, which he would not have done if he had not succeeded in persuading the other natives to come with their cattle as a proof of his sincerity, which was also shown by his advice to us to seize the Cape men, which would be of great service to us. Told him that before his absence we had seen how intimate he was with them, and obliging. Answered that it was so, but more through fear than real attachment, as at that time he hardly knew in what relation he stood to us, and whether we would always stop here or leave, as was the case with the shipwrecked crews of the *Mauritius* and *Haerlem*, when he would have been obliged, as the Watermen still do, to hide from the Capemen; but now, seeing that we remained, he might more safely depend upon us than formerly; and to do us a real service he had given us the advice as stated. Asked us whether we had not previously observed that he had never dared to trust himself entirely among the Capemen, except in our company, and even then not without fear, as he knew they would have killed

1655.

him if it had not been for us. He was aware, especially at present, that we were always asking after him, and had made fair promises to get him back again, all of which he had heard from some Saldanhars who had been here with one or two cows. Had consequently resolved to return and ask forgiveness; but to go to the Capemen he never in his life would have ventured, as they are his mortal enemies, and together they had only been false friends. Must have observed at the time of the theft that he had gone in a different direction from the Capemen; that he had never been among them, only his wife and children for the reasons stated. In short, Herry has anew wheedled himself into the favour of the Dutch, especially by bringing the cattle and his promise of obtaining more from the natives. As his first effort was so successful we show him more kindness to encourage him. Says, when the rainy season is past, many natives will come with cattle, but he wished that we should first seize the Capemen and their cattle. It seems that he must have promised the Saldanhars to try and persuade us to this. Our unwillingness does therefore not please him, as according to him, this is the chief aim of the Saldanhars, so that we might regain our stolen cattle also; but this requires further consideration, and in the meanwhile he must be left in suspense to see how things will go.

June 25th.—Herry brought again 2 fine fat cattle and 3 sheep.

June 26th.—Same rainy weather. Herry brings 2 other beasts without trouble and cheaply obtained, so we have at present above 60 head, besides those killed for the *Prins te Paard*; also abundance of vegetables.

June 27th (Sunday).—Same weather.

June 28th.—Woutersen proceeds with the smack to Robben and Dassen Islande and Saldanha Bay, with the six sheep for the first named place where there should now be 105.

June 29th.—Strange natives arrive and squat near Herry's place; obtained 9 cattle and 2 sheep; would trade again to-morrow; too tired to-night; obtained some tobacco and smoked before sleep.

June 30th.—Obtained 26 cows and 4 sheep, for copper, tobacco, and pipes: Herry asking for a little copper for what he had done; received 6 lbs. wire and tobacco by way of brokerage. Has already obtained for us 67 cows and 13 or 14 sheep, and trafficked to our advantage.

N.B.—Wind and weather regularly given every day.

July 1st.—Fine weather.

July 2nd and 3rd.—Following Resolution adopted by the Council: Officers of the *Prins te Paard* request to be relieved of the following men as they were dirty babblers, drunkards and gamblers, causing continual dissatisfaction among the crew, to the great injury of the ship's discipline, &c. In order to proceed with safety, they request that the persons named as under might be left here, and some others sent on board: Names as follow: Barent Arentsz, of

Delfzeil, quarter-master; Claes Andriesz Buysman, of Rotterdam, boatman; Leendert Jorisz, of Armuyden, marine; Direk Jacobsz Lansmeer, of Munnekendam, boatman; Michiel Direxen of Leyden, boatman; Barent Barentsz, of Dort, sailor, found concealed in the vessel; considered the danger threatening the ship, and allowed the request; and in order to maintain proper discipline on board it was understood to keep the parties mentioned in irons on shore until the departure of the vessel. Heard charge of the merchant Davit Verdonek made against the boatswain, Gerrit Jansz van Hasselt, and the voluntary confession of the latter, that having been reprimanded for some fault, he had said that he had had enough of the merchant, and would have nothing to do with him further, &c., showing his regret for the same: it was resolved, because of the shortness of the time, and to avoid further proceedings, to condemn him to confiscate 4 months' wages to the Company; the officers to have the right, in case of his good behaviour, to mitigate this sentence as they may deem fit.

July 4th. (Sunday).—The officers of the *Prins* take their leave and our letters for home.

July 5th.—The *Prins* leaves with as much vegetables as its boats could get on board yesterday and to-day, also two cows for the voyage; left with a healthy crew.

July 6th.—Fine, warm weather.

July 7th.—Dark weather, rain.

July 8th.—Stormy and wet; *Tulp* returns, having left St. Helena on 11th June, bringing 3 pigs, some apple trees, and 2 horses caught there; the third being a stallion, was ordered by Mr. Van Goens to be let loose again for the two mares which could not be caught. Van Goens and fleet had left on 4th June, and had placed "3 ne'er-do-weels" on board to be confined in irons here, but they had escaped with the galiot's boat and were still on the Island; not been able to catch them. Had been becalmed for 10 days, otherwise would have arrived sooner; evident that navigation to the island is possible at all times and also speedily accomplished.

July 9th.—Smack returns from Saldanha Bay with Woutersen, had endured the whole of the storm between said bay and Robben Island; had met no natives, but had taken 4 sheep away from the islet there and placed them on Robben Island, so that there are now 114; pigs have increased to 19 since 5th June. Had found seals on Dassen and neighbouring islands, but small; should not be hunted during the rainy season, in order not to hinder their increase; had seen whales by thousands, just as daily in Table Bay. On the islet in said bay a French letter has been found as follows, from the officers of the French ship the *Beer* to La Forest de Royers, commander of the ship *St. Joris*. In Saldanha Bay 20th March, 1655. According to order I write: "Our voyage from Madagascar to Cape Agulhas was short, having had fair weather, passing it on 3rd March, and on the 4th we were off the Cape of Good Hope,



1655.

which we weathered the same day; saw three ships in Table Bay, which fired 5 shots to show us the roads; were then becalmed and enveloped in mist, which lasted until the 7th; on the morning of that day looked out for the roads, saw a ship approaching us; took us somewhat by surprise as we had but few cannons ready; sailed better than we did; she showed the Dutch flag, and fired a blank cartridge to know who we were; hauled up the mainsail and struck the topsails, removing our flag from sight; came to leeward and asked us if we wished to go to Table Bay; told her we were going to Saldanha Bay: parted from each other; both captains drank each other's health and each ship fired a gun; she was a flyboat of about 120 tons, mounting 4 guns. Arrived the same day in Saldanha Bay, and could only in consequence of the wind reach Duiker Island. On the 8th we arrived at the anchorage, and fulfilled your orders as well as we could; inspected  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the skins in the vessel, and found them as dry and pure as when they were taken in at Itolanhar; did not see the others; did not trust the weather; also laid the *ésquine* (China root) in the sun. Everything in the ship in good order. Ship repaired: leave on Monday; will write again at St. Helena. Dried our powder in the sun and put our cannon in position; will perish rather than surrender, unless to overwhelming force. Have prayed to God to protect you, praying that you may continue to be my benefactor whilst I will seize every opportunity to do you service and show you the respect I owe you, &c. Signed de Puigne le Masle. P.S.—Messrs. de Goascaer and Flavourit are quite well. Kiss your hands and those of your officers in which I join.

Address was:  
Monsieur de la Forest des  
Royers, commander in the  
King's Service on the  
Ship St. George,

and on the other side was written:  
I pray you who pass bye, if you  
are curious to know the contents,  
again to place it in the box, and  
you will oblige me—Signed De  
Puigne, lieutenant of the ship  
the *Boar*.

July 10th.—Calm, wet weather.

July 11th (Sunday).—The same, a little sunshine; many whales.

July 12th.—Fine, S.E. outside: Riebeeck and Verburg proceed in galiot to Robben and Dassen Islands to inspect them carefully, leaving the fort in charge of the chief mate, Simon Egbertsz, an old careful man employed as pilot in the bay and making boats, being at present busy with a sloop. Riebeeck found Robben Island beautifully green, and the sheep in very good condition; not much success apparently with the pigs: 5 young ones dead, grain also not very prosperous because neglected by the shepherds. Having made the necessary arrangements he sailed for Dassen Island.

July 13th.—Found it a very poor island, full of seals, mostly new born; hunting them to be delayed until November; now too difficult to dry the skins in this wet season and not to make the

animals too shy, &c. Having inquired what shelter was necessary for the men and the skins, returned to Table Bay, not being able to proceed to Saldanha Bay.

July 14th.—Found everything in order at the fort; obtained from the Capemen 1 ox, 1 calf and 6 sheep. Herry and 2 Hottentoots having attended the Commander, he requested to be allowed to go and live on Robben Island with his family and cattle thinking that the Capemen might also be inclined to go there with all their friends; this would be a fine thing and much better than conquering them in war. Island big enough to depasture thousands of cattle and sheep. Herry showed us herbs from which the cows would produce much milk; will make the attempt to coax the Capemen or others thither.

July 15th.—Last night an ox on which the yoke had been placed to draw the wagon, had become so unmanageable that it broke its neck; evident that labour will not prosper with oxen; so that horses are required to get the timber from the woods 3 miles away.

July 16th.—Rainy weather, W.

July 17th.—Fine sunshine. The galiot to be thoroughly overhauled and strengthened with wood from the forest; in the meanwhile to be cleaned at Saldanha Bay, and to take in shells at Dassen Island when returning, then to be repaired and despatched to Madagascar to keep alive the incipient trade according to Resolution. Sent 8 more sheep to Robben Island. Woutersen also to go to try and obtain cattle. Sybrandt Rinckes to take the place of Paver at Robben Island, who has neglected the sheep there. Rinckes a quiet nice fellow; Paver to be called to account for his conduct, galiot to leave with the first good wind.

July 18th. (Sunday).—Ship sighted off Lion's head; sent the boat to pilot it into the bay. It was the *Arondstar*, skipper Jacob Claasz: Bruyningh, and junior merchant Nicolaas Levindigh on board; from Texel 13th March with 137 men, one dead, no sick; had touched nowhere; had on 30th April met the *Brouwershaven* in  $5^{\circ} 40' N.$  and  $355^{\circ} 40' \text{ Longitude}$ ; she had 10 months ago left home, and already reached  $34\frac{1}{2}^{\circ} S.$  Latitude, where at 30, 60 and 80 fathoms they had sounded bottom, evidently the reef of Agulhas; had seen no land, and as the chief officers had died and consequently no good command existed on board she had returned, having touched at a certain river in Angola where she had received abundant supplies; had no sick and was in want of nothing, but determined to return home, notwithstanding the attempts made by the *Arondstar* to persuade her to turn back to India; would part with nothing of her valuables destined for India, so that the Company may suffer much loss by their stubbornness. Provided the *Arondstar* with greens and milk and ordered that she shall have  $\frac{1}{2}$  an ox every day for the crew. On the 17th she had also sighted two other ships in  $27^{\circ} S.$  Lat., supposed they were English, from which little benefit would be derived, and had therefore gone on; in

1655

31 $\frac{1}{2}$ ° she had sighted another ship, an Englishman, proceeding to Persia and purposing to touch at the Cape.

July 19th.—Fine weather.

July 20th.—Fine sunshine, S.S. East.

July 21st.—Capemen move from behind Lion Mountain to the S. East side of the fort ; sighted a ship off Robben Island.

July 22nd.—Saw ship, the *Leeuwin Van Delfft*, skipper Jan Lucasz Meeuwen and bookkeeper Adriaans Gravesaude in command, from Goeree the 21st March ; had touched at St. Vincent for ballast but only obtained water ; met various Englishmen there ; among them 3 bound for Persia and Coromandel ; had 190 men, one dead ; no sick ; consequently immediately provided with refreshments and meat.

July 23rd.—Fine weather.

July 24th.—*Arondstar's* officers take leave and our letters for Batavia.

July 25th. (Sunday).—N.W. breeze.

July 26th.—*Arondstar* leaves. Rain.

July 27.—*Tulp* returns, had seen no natives, could load no shells at Dassen Island ; sea too rough. Seals showing themselves ; in the dry season the hunt will be profitable.

July 28th.—The *Leeuwin* takes leave and our papers for Batavia.

July 29th.—*Leeuwin* does not succeed in leaving.

July 30th.—The same.

July 31st.—*Leeuwin* leaves. *Tulp* despatched to Dassen Island for shells.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted.

August 1st. (Sunday).—Cape men allowed to live near the fort to be protected from the Soaquas, who would rob them of their cattle. Allowed to feed their cattle behind the Lion Mountain, ours running in the Table Valley. This was granted to draw their companions also nearer, that they may be easily caught when it suits the Company.

August 2nd.—(New moon). Fine sunshine.

August 3rd.—The same.

August 4th.—Heavy rains, galiot returns with only two boat loads of shells ; sea too rough.

August 5th.—Same weather. 6th ditto.

August 7th.—Fine. Resolved to despatch the yacht, well repaired and manned with 25 men and with provisions for 5 months to Madagascar, Frederick Verburgh to be supercargo. First to touch at Mauritius to obtain a light craft there for thoroughly exploring the rivers and small bays of Madagascar, there being such a one for the purpose expressly built at Mauritius.

August 8th. (Sunday).—Fine calm weather. When on the ordinary parade in the afternoon and having only 35 or 36 persons under arms, Herry called us on one side and advised us to get more men from the ships as he would with his family no



longer be safe with us, as when the summer sets in many natives would come with cattle, and seeing our small garrison, would try to surprise it. Took notice of it and had more attention paid to the guards, the more so, as beforehand he had warned us in like manner with respect to the theft of the Company's cattle. If these natives knew how to improve the opportunity, they might easily overwhelm us as by day the men are so scattered and unarmed; so that if more natives come, soldiers must be expressly told off to keep watch. It is necessary that we should be strong enough to defend ourselves, but as long as we have no slaves, the men have to work and watch as best they can. Natives becoming more knowing, and therefore more men are required, say 40 or 50 soldiers for the fort, above those required for labour, for which slaves would otherwise be employed. Horses are also wanted, to carry fuel and timber and to plough, &c., about 6 or 8.

August 9th.—Cold, bleak weather.

August 10th.—Fine weather. Galiot ordered to leave for Madagascar. Receives instructions.

August 11th.—Heavy N.W.

August 12th.—Ditto. Catechist's wife delivered here for the second time of a son, and all the other women are preparing to follow suit, so that everything here turns out fruitful.

August 13th.—Galiot leaves with spars, &c., to be landed at Robben Island for sheep sheds. Wind not favourable—returns; articles for Robben Island re-landed, and to be sent on by another opportunity.

August 14th.—Galiot leaves.

August 15th. (Sunday).—Fine, sunshine.

August 16th.—Heavy S. Easter. Obtained 2 fine cows from strange Hottentots: price made by Herry, trade easy. Wish it was always so.

August 17th.—Sent the smack with the wood to Robben Island. The hunters report that the Capemen were hurriedly leaving, taking their course towards Saldanha Bay. They were followed by 20 others here, who daily fetched fuel for the cooks, but ran away as if they were hunted with fire and sword, throwing down their loads of wood. Only Herry and a few women and children remained. Herry had told them that he was angry with them and they must leave, as they would sell no cattle and only wished to fetch wood and fill their stomachs with rice, &c., which his own people could do very well without their assistance, &c. Whether they have treason on hand or are afraid of the Saldanharhs expected here according to Herry, in large numbers in summer, it is difficult to say. Have to be careful and send more men with the cattle, now numbering about 100. Herry, calling us outside, showed us the road taken by the Capemen, which agrees with the report of the hunters. He again pointed to the mountains eastward, and said that beyond them there were many natives with much cattle, and that he was desirous of going thither in 5 or 6 days' time, requesting

1655.

—

some copper to buy cattle for us, leaving his own behind as some security ; told him to tell us when he was ready, &c This flight of the Capemen is most inconvenient for the men, who have to work and keep watch, nobody excepted. Catechist, barber and Commander have to go about armed to see whether there is no conspiracy or secret gathering of the natives. All the dwellings in the fort are provided with firearms. The fort not to be easily taken, but the men being so scattered during the day, a great massacre might take place. The woodmen returning in the evening likewise reported the sudden departure of the Capemen.

August 18th.—Herry's troop very busy preparing their assegais, arrows, and bows. Boat returns from Robben Island ; 3 sheep dead, but 4 born. Brought back the 4 pigs because they destroyed all the penguins and their nests ; also did not thrive there ; all their young ones dead.

August 19th.—Bleak, cold weather.

August 20th.—The soldier, Andries Jansz of Wesel, coachman of the wood wagon, attacked with epilepsy when washing his linen at the river ; no assistance being near, he was drowned. Lost much in him, as he was well acquainted with agriculture, and took great care of the horses and other matters—not easily replaced.

August 21st.—Boisterous dirty weather.

August 22nd. (Sunday).—Clear, cold weather.

August 23rd.—Ship outside, flying a white flag behind, and a Jack before. Made us think she required assistance, sent the sloop to inquire.

August 24th.—Ship found to be the *N. Rotterdam*, skipper Pieter Gerritsz, and having as junior merchant Thomas Points on board, also a minister, Leonard Bonius : 17th May from Goeree. Touched nowhere ; 307 men on board ; 1 death and 1 fallen overboard, the rest fairly well. Commencing to suffer from scurvy, sent refreshments.

August 25th.—Same weather.

August 26th.—Heavy S. Easter.

August 27th.—Fine, calm weather.

August 28th.—The minister, Leonard Bonj, holds a confession sermon, and baptizes the child of the Catechist with the name of Johannes.

August 29th. (Sunday).—The minister celebrates the Lord's Supper.

August 30th.—Heavy S. Easter ; no communication with the vessel. Many of the crew who had attended the services left on shore and had to be fed, which often happens and causes large consumption of food, &c.

August 31st.—Stormy weather.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted every day.

September 1st.—Heavy wind in the morning, S.S. East.

September 2nd.—Officers of *N. Rotterdam* take leave and our letters for India.

September 3rd.—Ship leaves.

September 4th.—All the men sent to the forest for beams and planks to be carried to the road, and thence taken on by the wagon; they are intended for the stores and dwellings built so strongly of brick that no man need again look after them.

September 5th. (Sunday).—Herry again proposes to proceed inland with some soldiers to obtain cattle; the soldiers to take charge of the copper and tobacco to be carried by his oxen, especially to enable us to become acquainted with the distant natives and get them nearer, as well as some of their chiefs who were big captains or cadets as he said. Would not go without the soldiers, feared no harm for himself; would only accompany our men to teach them how to trade “and to serve as interpreter, to invite the natives and say to them these are Hollanders who have built houses at the Cape, never more to be broken down”: provided with copper, tobacco, beads, &c., to trade with them amicably, &c. Would leave all his people here to carry wood for the cooks for food, tobacco, and arrack; also Claes Das to act as interpreter during his absence. Would leave 3 of his cattle with us, and take the oxen with him to carry the goods; also some cows to provide milk for his family on the way. Proposed that he should leave his wives and children with us; told us their wives are always to accompany them, that no other men may approach them. Nor was it their custom to remain so long away from their wives. Many volunteers for this expedition.

September 6th.—Council decides to despatch 9 volunteers under Corporal Willem Muller with Herry, provided with copper, tobacco, pipes, beads, &c., and also provisions and ammunition; all to be carried by oxen.

September 7th.—Expedition leaves, provided with 250lbs. bread, 80lbs. pork, 3 cheeses, 1 cask arrack and 1 ditto brandy; Herry leaves 3 of his cattle at the fort, also Claes Das and other Hottentoots to fetch fuel. It seems as if Herry is sincerely trying to benefit the Company; time will show.

September 8th.—Drizzling rain; expedition encamped  $\frac{1}{4}$  mile from this.

September 9th.—Expedition proceeds.

September 10th.—Commenced clearing a large piece of land, already surrounded by canals 8 feet broad and planted with thorns; all the gardens surrounded in this manner. Thorns growing wild here; in a short time, when drawn together, they will be impenetrable even for wild animals. Gardens about 12 morgen large and surrounded by an outside canal and by a border three roods broad; and on the side likewise planted with thorn and young trees from the forest, which will afterwards serve as shelter for the plants, apple and orange trees, &c., planted on the borders of the gardens in rows and thriving well. Saplings brought from St. Helena; will get more. Voyage thither from 14 to 16 days and return 20, 25 or 26 days.



1655.

—

September 11th.—Men sent to the forest to carry out the beams to the wagon for the houses now being built; the light wooden dwellings brought from home are collapsing fast, the wood having been spoilt before it arrived here. Launched the *Robbejacht* of 16 or 17 tons, with 1 mast, &c., and provided with a fine cabin for the men, the whole made of Cape wood and intended to sail to the Islands; being made for oars also. Will last a long while as the worms do no mischief here. Will relieve the galiot. Woodmen report that Herry and his party were still in that neighbourhood, some of his Hottentoots having stolen some of their food; some distrust had likewise arisen, as Herry had requested Corporal Willem Muller to discharge the firearms at night and leave them unloaded the whole night. Had also been in the forest and made particular inquiry into everything, our strength, arms, &c. Decided to land 9 more soldiers to strengthen Herry's party, who were to return if Herry delayed any longer; they were also to see whether he wished to go alone with some copper and rather to return than be delayed, as their food might run out and they be starved on the way. Not to leave their guns unloaded, but to be on their guard. The 9 soldiers leave under Corporal Symon Huybrechtsz.

September 12th (Sunday).—The woodmen ask for a larger guard, as they are so scattered and always unarmed; the Hottentoots always trespassing. Soldiers sent to do nothing else than guard the men and things. Huybrechts returned and reported that the party had no scruple to proceed with Herry; were strong enough to look after themselves and require no more men; would like to have more provisions to stay away longer. Provisions sent with orders to Muller to inquire what may be obtained from the other natives, but if Herry delayed on the way and their provisions ran out, they were to return with the copper and let Herry go on alone.

September 13th.—The expedition leaves early with Herry, and in good spirits. Herry pleased and grateful for the bread; sent two Hottentoots each with a can begging for some arrack and wine, which were sent to him with orders to make haste; would be well rewarded on his return.

September 14th.—Fuel getting scarce. Riebeeck goes to the forest to inquire whether any were obtainable per wagon, found some about 2 miles away. To commence to-morrow. More horses required, which would save much labour. Oxen no success.

September 15th.—Dark rainy weather.

September 16th, 17th and 18th.—Rainy, W.S.W.

September 19th. (Sunday).—Rainy, S.S.E.

September 20th.—Fine calm sunshine.

September 21st.—Riebeeck visited Robben Island in the sloop *Robbejacht* to see whether cheese might not be obtained from the sheep there, taking with him an old man who had his whole life worked with sheep and making of cheese. Left Roeloff de Man in charge of the fort; sheep found in splendid order; the old man reported

that sheep cheese promised to be a success if a proper cellar and the necessary appliances could be obtained, also 4 or 5 young cows, to make the cheese only half of sheep's milk, which alone would be much too strong. Only killed 3 seals the whole month.

September 22nd.—Commander revisits the Island and finds it capable of providing for some cows; returns to Table Bay, finds everything as he had left it. Some of Herry's friends return to the fort, stating that the expedition had already proceeded so far that they can no longer see Table Mountain and were determined to go further to get as much cattle as possible. Corporal according to the Hottentoots, writing very much.

September 23rd.—N.W. on this side—S.E. on the other side of the bay.

September 24th.—Fine weather.

September 25th.—N.W. wind.

September 26th. (Sunday).—Same wind, showers. 27th, the same.

September 28th.—Dry windy weather, S.E.

September 29th.—Bleak cloudy weather.

September 30th.—The same.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted.

October 1st.—Wife of the chief surgeon, Mathys Witsma, delivered of a son. The cadet, Jan van Kempen, reprieved from being shot by sentence of court-martial; had a bullet fired over his head by the military, having become unworthy of serving in it any longer; also to be banished 3 years, with loss of wages and confiscation of whatever money is still due to him. Had been disobedient, and drawn his sword against his superior officer.

Resolution of Council, in consequence of a letter from the Council of 17, dated 16th April, and received per *N. Rotterdam*, "to do our best to rear cattle for the ships:"—The following points considered: Not enough obtained from the natives to meet our necessities; rearing cattle therefore urgent. Have at present above 80 animals, but, through carelessness of the herds, the calves all die, and consequently no milk or butter is obtained. No attempt to improve matters has been successful; the servants do as little as they can for their wages. Will try and farm the cattle to private parties, who would naturally look after their own profits, and so take care of the calves, which, dying, would stop the supply of milk. The latter, if sold by the farmers, would secure a more extensive refreshment, as many would prefer to buy what they want with their own money, as is seen in the case of those who have small gardens of their own, and are permitted to sell their produce to the passing ships. The common people are never well satisfied with what is sent on board, thinking that the best goes to the officers and the leavings fall to them. Have also observed that though whole casks of milk are sent on board for the men and the sick, everything is consumed in the cabins, so that even the mates get nothing. Our plan would meet this difficulty, which

1655.

would allow everyone to buy fresh and buttermilk. Considering all this, and the preservation of the calves born and bartered, whilst many cows are ready to bring forth, which in time will produce much butter, so that the Dutch article may one day be dispensed with; also that the farming system would cover the expense of the copper paid for the cattle, and an increased and good permanent refreshment will be secured, in addition to the garden produce sent daily on board: further, that by farming the cattle, especially married people will be induced to remain here, instead of longing to proceed to India, and a way opened to profit or competence for free families, to which the Company seems inclined:—It is resolved to offer on hire the Company's milch cows by way of experiment. Resolution published, but the objection raised by the married that 6 cows here do not give as much milk as one at home, and in the dry season give no milk whatever; that there is the danger of the calves dying when the cows dry up; that no dependence can therefore be placed on the cows, which, though the calves survive, would not produce milk half the time: they were answered that it would be most beneficial to themselves, and that being servants of the Company, they might add to their ordinary wages. Finally agreed that the gardener, Hendrik Hendriksz Boom, of Amsterdam, shall hire the cattle, whose wife at home had been employed with cows, and living outside the fortress, near the gardens, had a fair chance. The other married people wished first to see how the experiment would answer. Boom to pay for every cow 15 gulden per annum on the following conditions: Hire to commence to-day, 1st October. Ten to be the number. Cows to be taken as they calve afterwards. The calves to be taken care of by him for the Company, which remains proprietor. And though the cows yield no milk when the calves die, the farmer shall nevertheless pay the amount. The cows to be herded with the Company's cattle kept for the ships. To save present expense to the farmer, the cows shall be milked by the Company's herds, with the proviso that the Company shall have the right of annually making such alterations in the lease as may be deemed necessary. The farmer to supply the Commander's table, and as much as he may further require for the ships; butter at 10 stivers per lb., sweet milk at 4 stivers, and buttermilk at 2 stivers the tankard; the rest to be sold for whatever price he can get. Not to cut down the farmer's profits the Commander shall not take all the butter; the Company's servants and other Cape residents, however, are not to pay more than the Commander for milk, but 12 stivers for butter, and not to buy more than they require, that they may not buy up everything and sell again to the ships, which right the farmer only has, and which is forbidden to all others; offenders to have the articles confiscated with 3 months' wages. The Company's servants and freemen, moreover, to be fined as circumstances require. All the buttermilk to be taken by the Company when no ships are in the



Bay, for the men and the sick, and to be boiled with rice. What the farmer sells to the Company will go in diminution of his debt, the rest to be paid in current money. At present he is debited for 150 guildens when the year is ended, and, as the cows calve, he receives them on the same terms.

October 2nd.—Men sent to the forest for timber.

October 3rd (Sunday).—Died one of the gardeners, Adam Dyns.

October 4th.—S. Easter very strong. Commander went towards the forest behind the mountain to see whether the wind was as severe there, and also to examine the forests more closely and see whether no wood can be got nearer as the present place is very far, and difficult of access, high up behind Table Mountain, and requiring great labour to drag the wood towards the tent at the roadside. Could find no better. The S. Easter blowing very mildly, and hardly perceptible. Clouds heavy on the mountain, causing strong gusts in Table Valley and the Bay. Behind the mountain is the finest possible weather, with the finest temperature in the rich valley, with its beautiful streams; pity that labour is wanting to cultivate it, as grain would thrive well there, and many people could make a living. Lots of wood, stone and reeds, &c., for building, only people wanting, and if we get slaves will make an experiment. The first thing required will be a house for the protection of the hands, and this will be an expense.

October 5th.—Willem Muller and party return. Victuals had run out, and they had been unable to proceed further; had left the goods and one of the Company's oxen with Herry who had promised to return with a lot of cattle in two or three months' time; believe that he will do some good with the merchandise; would like to have had some asses to carry provisions and copper to be able to remain away longer—with oxen it does not prosper well. Corporal gives in his journal; had found an unhealthy spot where they had become quite lame and giddy; presumed that minerals might be in the neighbourhood, whence the unhealthiness emanated, for as soon as they had passed the place they became quite well again. Journal as follows:—Left 7th September, 1655, with my 9 men.

September 8th.—Repacked our copper in 11 parcels.

September 9th.—Went as far as the rondebosjen where we encamped; missed a bag of bread and our pork; stolen by the Hottentoots.

September 10th.—Killed a beast—never saw anything like it. Natives pulled it down and cut a hole in its side, living as it was, took out the entrails, dished out the blood and then skinned and cut it to pieces.

September 11th.—When the natives were packing the animals our chef went to see how they did it, and when we were ready to proceed, Herry approached and without reason threatened to beat our Corporal with a large stick. Looked to see how it would end. Herry then came to us and said go! go! right off, meaning "I

1655.

don't want you here." We then marched S. by E. and S.S.E.; at night found that the Hottentoots had stolen pipes and beads and some copper, the reason no doubt why they would not have us near them when loading.

September 12th.—Told Corporal Symon Huybrechtsz, who had arrived from the Fort this morning, that we intended to proceed and how we had been treated. Receive additional provisions from the fort, which were welcome, as the Hottentoots had stolen some of ours.

September 13th.—Went S.E., saw something wonderful. The Hottentoot women each took a green twig in the hand and went to lie down together on a big stone alongside of the road speaking words which we could not understand. Being asked what it meant, they said "Hette Hie," pointing upward as if they intended to say it is a sacrifice. Proceeded as far as the downs of False Bay, encamping at a fresh water river.

September 14th.—Oxen tired, did not go far. Went S.E. by S. and saw the small Lion mountain to the S.S.W. of us; remained in the downs and found a good deal of the copper gone; told Herry of it; asked us whether we knew who stole it, as he was prepared to get it back. As the parcels often fall from the animals it is difficult to keep an eye on the scattered troop.

September 15th.—Herry sent some of the men to the Hottentoot Lubbert.

September 16th, 17th.—Lubbert visits us, and on the 17th takes with him 8 head of cattle belonging to Herry, but when leaving, the men and women commenced to quarrel. Herry told us to "goo"; marched on till we got out of the downs, found ourselves in a fine valley more than 4 miles broad, course E.N.E.; crossed other downs. Came to another valley with water in it, turned to the right on the other side, encamped at an old kraal.

September 18th.—Stayed there as Herry would not go on.

September 19th.—Some of the Hottentoots left; we proceeded slowly in consequence of the water in which the pack-oxen sank up to their stomachs.

September 20th.—Took a S.S.E. direction; at noon two of the Hottentoots went in advance, and we left behind our grey ox which succumbed to the large load it had to carry. When we told Herry, he was unwilling to understand us, but when the ox had somewhat rested, Herry said that 3 men should proceed in advance to see what had become of the cattle; they waited for us on a high sand hill where we were ordered to unpack the ox by Herry who went to look himself, saying he would come with another ox; got tired of waiting, reloaded the ox and proceeded to a valley not far away from water, where Herry met us with an ox and divided the load between the two animals. Went with us until we reached Cabo Falso.

September 21st.—Two of our men found a young whale stranded on the beach; Hottentoots had a feast; found further on a large

rock with many mussels on it, not of the kind at the fort; when boiled, found them to be full of grains, difficult to eat; supposed the grains to be pearls; saved a good many. Went no further; 22nd. likewise.

September 23rd.—Went east till we reached the coast, came to a fresh river beyond which we found an old kraal where we camped.

September 24th.—Eight strange Hottentoots visit us, Herry at once gave each 6 armbands.

September 25th.—The natives still busy making arm-rings, they were of the beach-rangers who had some time ago sold us cattle at the fort.

September 26th and 27th.—They left us in the morning, taking all our Hottentoots excepting 2 to pack the oxen, took also 11 head of cattle of Herry leaving him 11. We went E.S.E. till we arrived under the mountain on stony ground; slept there.

September 28th.—Too bad weather to proceed. 29th ditto.

September 30th.—Went half way up the mountain when we were obliged to relieve the ox and carry the copper; on the top was a plain big enough for exercising a regiment of soldiers; reloaded the ox and proceeded east to a fine valley—misty—went S.S.E. till the evening, unhealthy climate; when sitting down we became so stiff that we could hardly rise and keep our legs.

October 1st.—Marched through the stones the same course, to a marsh rather deep; passed through it and ascended a high mountain; reached a fine valley on its side; again went up a mountain; below it crossed a fine river; course S.S. West till we camped.

October 2nd.—Two of ours went to look for the beach, as Herry had told us what had not been confirmed. Walked three miles, found only poor country. A little beyond they saw 2 Hottentoots whom they could not reach; perhaps the two friends of Herry. Our two continued onward until they saw the beach; too late to go to it as it was still about 2 miles away; coast appeared to stretch W.N.W. and E.S.E., as far as they could see; it seemed as if a bay was running into it tending N.N.E. Returned to us to see whether the Hottentoots were ours. Found them to be so. Resolved to return to the fort, having vainly followed Herry so far, and our provisions running out.

October 3rd.—Preparing to leave; Herry told us that if we returned, no cattle would any more be obtained at the fort, and he would not dare to show his face there again, or go on board to drink Spanish wine and fetch bread. Was prepared to take the copper with him and bring back lots of cattle. "Commander would then say that's proper. Herry come here, and eat Dutch cheese and butter and drink Spanish wine, and I will have a house, built for you, and to-morrow we go on board for wine and bread, but if you are determined to take the copper, give my knife to the Captain, but leave the white ox, as the Captain has other cattle for us at the Cape." We rather feared, not knowing what to do when he gave us the knife; decided at last to let him have the copper.



1655.

according to orders when we left. Parted amicably from him and took our grey ox with us, with his permission, as he could not get it to go with him. Returned to the foot of the mountain, which we had crossed the 30th September. The weakness in our joints departed; the cause we do not know.

October 4th.—Went straight for the point of the mountain between the great forest and the round bush (*het ronde bosken*); course W.N.W. Passed through a fine valley about 2 p.m.; arrived in the Downs and went on until night.

October 5th.—Marched to the flats, then went west until we came to the wagon-road leading to the fortress." Signed by Willem Muller and party.

October 6th (Riebeeck's journal continued).—Fine sunshine. S. East in the afternoon and during the night.

October 7th and 8th.—Sent the sloop *Penguin* to Robben Island with clay, to have a milk-cellar made there of brick, the bricks to be brought by the *Robbejacht*, on her way to Saldanha Bay to recommence the seal hunt.

October 9th.—Sloop returns from Robben Island; sheep there thriving well.

October 10th. (Sunday).—Rainy in the morning; breeze from N.W.

October 11th.—Boat returns to Robben Island with bricks, door frames, &c., also a carpenter and mason for the cellar. S. East sadly injured the barley. Grain to be reared on the other side of Table Mountain where these windfalls are not, and land is abundant for cultivation, even for a thousand families.

October 12th.—Obtained 3 fine sheep from a "new" people; paid liberally and treated them well, to make them bring on more. Boat returns from Robben Island.

October 13th.—Boat sent to Robben Island with bricks and the 3 sheep. Obligated by contrary wind and weather to return.

October 14th.—Boat leaves for Robben Island. Heavy S.E. during the night, greatly injuring the ripening barley and peas, &c.

October 15th (full moon).—Boat returns, and reports that about 3,000 bricks are still required, also more clay. Resolved to send the *Robbejacht* with the bricks and the boat with the clay, and to send thither the cadet, Willem Harmautz, who has all his life long managed sheep. Both boats leave before night, also taking the following articles:—Two milk buckets, 10 cheese-baskets, 4 tubs, 2 wooden cheese-casks, 1 mower (made of a reaping-hook), 2 harrows, 2 forks, 1 dung-fork, 1 milk-yoke and hooks, 2 spades, 2 shovels, 2 "kaven," 2 hoes, 1 axe, 8 brooms, 1 piece sail-cloth, 1 sieve,  $\frac{1}{4}$  piece guinea linen, some fine salt, 2 milk-jugs, some rennet, some spars for sheds for the lambs, carpenters' tools, &c.

October 16th.—Sloop returns. Barley sown on 15th May reaped, though not quite ripe: did not trust the windfalls from Table Mountain. Planted cabbages in the new gardens; the others

all planted with all sorts of greens. Asparagus abundant everywhere.

October 17th. (Sunday).—Dark grey sky ; rainy and wind.

October 18th.—Rain and wind.

October 19th.—About the same. A galiot anchored off the wreck of the *Haerlem*. *Robbejacht's* departure delayed in consequence.

October 20th.—The galiot *Nachtglas*, Skipper Jan Jacobsz, of Amsterdam, reaches the roads; 10th July, from Texel with the *Amersfoort*, *Salamander* and *Arnhem*, commanded by the Hon. Pieter Kemp — had parted from them in a storm; touched nowhere; had no sick. Fort well supplied with refreshments. The sloop with 23 men despatched to Saldanha Bay to catch seals.

October 21st.—Seal-catchers provided with 700 lbs. bread, 1 cask meat, 1 cask pork (for 3 months), 1 cask rice (570 lbs.), 20 stock-fish, 123 quarts of arrack, 1 anker brandy, 10 quarts oil, 15 quarts vinegar, some salt, 55 lbs. tobacco at 60 gl. per 100, 25lbs. fresh butter, 20 lbs. sugar, some plums, 10 candles, 1 lantern, pepper and nutmegs, 1 piece smoked meat, 25 lbs. powder and some matches, 2 hams, 2 tongues, 2 cheeses, cook's and butler's things, 1 tin dish, 2 wooden dishes, 1 skimmer, 1 tin and 4 wooden plates, 1 jug, 2 tin jugs, 1 tankard, 1 mutsje, 1 half-mutsje, 2 saucers, 1 cook's kettle, 1 iron pot, 1 pan, 2 lamps, twine, cotton,  $\frac{1}{2}$  a mainsail and spars for tents, a cable, rope, nails, 12 scrape-benches, 18 scrape-bench knives, 8 dozen flaying knives, at 8 stivers apiece, pegs, 6 wooden hammers, 200 clubs, 1 oil-boiler, 2 oil-spoons, 1 oil-trough, 1 whetstone, 4 bags for the pegs, 2 buckets, 1 slop-pail, 2 shovels, 2 wooden spoons, 2 picks and some empty casks. Separately for the *Robbejacht*:—Half an anker wine, 1 tin dish, 1 tin plate, 1 tin measure, 1 tin jug, 2 saucers, 25 lbs. powder, matches, 6 muskets, 2 tin spoons, 1 large tin with 8lbs. butter, 20 lbs. sugar, some plums, 1 trough, 6 candles. Sloops leave. *Arnhem* arrives (skipper Mangus); 60 sick on board. Sent refreshments off at once. Six deaths. Had been separated from Commander Kemp by the storm which also made the *Nachtglas* part company. Kemp daily expected, also the Honn. Herpers and Frisius, per *Salamander* and *West Vrieslant*.

October 22nd.—Fine sunshine. S.S.E.

October 23rd.—Men sent to the forest to carry out beams.

October 24th. (Sunday).—South-East prevents Rev. Abbima from coming on shore to preach.

October 25th.—Sloop returns from Robben Island with mason and carpenter, who had finished the milk-cellar. Milking sheep not successful; got very little from them, and the lambs were suffering. Sent sloop back with following letter to Sybraut Rinckes and Wilhelm Harmansz Hacker:—As the lambs suffer by drawing the milk from the sheep, and the rearing of cattle is the chief object of the Company, cheese-making is at once to be suspended, the lambs to have all their mother's milk. An attempt may be made

1655.

—

with the progeny of the Dutch and Cape sheep, but no lambs are to be risked, as the increase of stock is the principal object. Send you wood to enlarge the sheep-shed, also victuals for a month. The scabby sheep there are to be kept separate, and returned to us to see whether they can be cured; will in future be particular in buying. Christoffel Mulder to return with the sloop, as he can be spared now that the milking arrangements have collapsed, &c.—(Signed), J. van Riebeeck. The minister of the *Arnhem* lands and preaches, also baptizes a child of the chief surgeon, with the name of Broer, three weeks old.

October 26th.—Sloop returns from Robben Island, reporting that they would cure the scabby sheep, which number 144, among them many ewes ready to bring forth. Skipper, &c., of the *Arnhem* report that the bowsprit of the vessel was so damaged that they could not proceed with it to Batavia. Inspection to take place to-morrow

October 27th.—Commander goes on board, according to yesterday's Resolution of Council, to inspect the bowsprit, inspectors declaring that with cheeks and woodings it would hold to Batavia. It was decided to repair it in that manner, to save time and enable it to serve as a return ship from Batavia, the more so as Commander Kemp with the *Amersfoort* and *Salamander* (the *West Vrieslant* not putting in an appearance), will be obliged to delay some time in consequence of the sick on board. An English ship arrives, large vessel; no one lands to-day; don't know what it means. Had careful watch kept everywhere on the shore and at Salt River; might be a Portuguese under English colours to surprise us during the night. Having considered the matter, and bearing in mind the letters from home d.d. 18 Jan., that in spring the Portuguese would despatch to Goa 4 galleons, 2 caracks, and 2 pataches, having on board 3,000 men under a new Viceroy, Francisco Baretto de Meneres, who had conquered Recife de Pharnambuco, and that we should be on our guard; also being weak-handed, as 23 men are at Saldanha Bay, to be assisted with 12 more, and 14 or 15 are in the forest, and 3 on Robben Island in charge of the sheep, thus preventing us from warding off an attack by Europeans:—it was resolved to strengthen the garrison with 20 invalids of the *Arnhem*, as the Portuguese ships may be expected here every day, &c. The *Arnhem* and *Nachtglas* allowed to exchange their chief officers.

October 28th.—English ship sends a boat for water and another to Salt River to catch fish; no officer lands or asks the Commander's permission. Tacitly allowed. Understood from the boat's crew that the vessel was *De Liefde*, half of the crew Dutchmen or Netherlanders from the West Coast (of Sumatra), where pepper had been obtained; had touched at Mauritius and refreshed on the western side, without calling at the fortress or seeing any Dutchmen. Captain's name was Elias Gorden, who with 40 others had died at Indrapoura; had been succeeded by Robbert Tendal and the Merchant Tomas Nieuman; had been only 10 months away from England. Skipper



and merchant landed in the afternoon; told us that they had met on the West Coast the yacht *Schelvis*, with the Governor of Ceylon on board; had heard that our men had taken 3 rich Portuguese ships, but cannot say where; had seen much booty among the men; it is to be hoped that the Company has been benefited by it. Provided them with some vegetables, and the officers were well treated at the Commander's table, returning on board without a chance of looking about them.

October 29th (new moon).—The Englishmen take our letters for home.

October 30th.—The Dutch part of the Englishman's crew very unwilling. About 30 or 40 of them would have liked to remain here, and we might easily have hidden them inland, but as our Masters do not like to be in trouble with that nation, we did not dare to do so; otherwise there would have been a chance of hampering the Englishman to such an extent that he would not have been able to move his ship, and been obliged to sell the whole concern to the Company for a trifle.

October 31st. (Sunday).—Englishman leaves about noon.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted every day.

November 1st.—Wind and weather as yesterday.

November 2nd and 3rd. — Officers of *Arnhem* take their leave and our letters to Batavia.

November 4th.—Arrival of *Salamander* for the Chamber Delft, the Hon. Herpers and skipper Claes Jansz Walingh with merchant Zinderes Bogaert and Res: Leenaerts on board. Long becalmed off the Cape, and been provided with birds, eggs, and greens at Saldanha Bay and Dassen Island, which restored the crew to health; also obtained water there; had touched here for more; not one sick any longer; to improve their health sent them greens and a cow on board. The Hon. Herpers had sighted another ship near Saldanha Bay, supposed to be the *West Vriesland*.

November 5th and 6th.—Western breezes preventing the departure of the *Arnhem*. Leaves at night.

November 7th. (Sunday).—Ship arrives, supposed to be the *Amersfoort* with the Hon. Kemp. Hon. Herpers takes leave for Batavia, but wind too heavy to get on board.

November 8th.—Sent the sloop with refreshments to the *Amersfoort*, which met the Hon. Kemp on his way to shore, who stepped into the sloop and so landed. Had many sick on board, and was short of water; consequently sent a lot of vegetables on board. The *Salamander* leaves.

November 9th.—*Amersfoort* has on board skippers Hendrick Grotenhuys and Junior Merchant Sybrant Fries, also a minister, Josias Spiljardus. Another ship turns up and anchors outside, flying a Rotterdam flag, so that we suppose it to be the *Sloth van Honingen*.

November 10th.—The two ships anchor in the roads; the *Honingén* had left Goeree on the 20th July; touched nowhere,

1655.

and lost only one man on the voyage. Scurvy commencing; sent refreshments on board.

November 11th.—Obtained 3 sheep from Robben Island for the ships.

November 12th.—Council held on board the *Amersfoort* to consider the unmanageableness of that ship, and the weakness of the bowsprit. Improvements suggested to be carried out, without interfering with the shipment of water. Riebeeck communicates to the meeting the letters of the Masters of 6th October, 1654, in which those of the fort are ordered when opportunity offers, and a proper vessel is at hand for the purpose, to visit Tristao da Cunha to inquire what harbours it has, water and other conveniences for refreshing. Resolved to use the *Nachtglas* for the purpose, that a report might be sent home by the return fleet.

November 13th (full moon).—Good weather—changing.

November 14th. (Sunday).—Ditto.

November 15th.—Frost, wind and rain.

November 16th.—Kemp and Riebeeck go to the forest. *West Vrieslant* arrives with Hon. Frisius on board and skipper Pieter Cornelisz Puyt, also the Minister Johannes Amsingh and junior merchant, Isaack Welsingh. Had refreshed at Saldanha Bay; only 2 or 3 sick on board, and a few with scurvy—only lost 5 on the voyage; had left the *Vlie* on 10th June with 290 men under the flag and in the company of Hon. Kemp. *Robbejacht* returns from Saldanha Bay with 300 skins. Woutersen and men moved to Dassen Island. Letter from Woutersen. “Arrived at Saldanha Bay on the 22nd with both sloops, landed some of our tools &c. on the same day to pitch our tent; assisted by the chief mate, Symon Egbertsz. Seal killing not successful, the sloop in danger of being smashed on the rocks where the seals lie,—resolved to proceed to Dassen Island. Our provisions running short—memorandum enclosed of what we require—hope to succeed better there. At night the *Salamander* arrived from home for the Chamber Delft, Hon. Herpers on board—left on 1st Nov. when the *West Vrieslant* also arrived for the Chamber Hoorn, Hon. Frisius on board, which left us on the 15th, had some sick on board; gave them some greens and eggs. Lists enclosed of what has been distributed and still remains, also list of what was found short, with 300 skins, &c.” Signed J. Woutersen, Dassen Island, 15th Nov., 1655.

November 17th.—Sent the sloop to Robben Island for 8 sheep for the ships. The ship *Sloth van Honingen* prepares to leave for Batavia.

November 18th.—Said vessel leaves. At night the woodmen report that there were 4 encampments of Hottentoots with much cattle behind Table Mountain about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles away.

November 19th.—Sent a sergeant and some soldiers to the Hottentoots to see what people they were and if they wished to trade; also their positions—reported that the Hottentoots had told them that soon more natives would arrive with cattle of which they

intended to sell some. The Capemen and their cattle have likewise returned, locating themselves between the fort and the new arrivals; wished to be under our protection, but told to keep so far away that they would not interfere with our pasture grounds, &c. Hon. P. Kemp takes leave, leaving 30 sick behind.

November 20th.—Hon. Kemp not able to leave yet.

November 21st (Sunday).—Hon. Kemp leaves in the *Amersfoort* this morning. The Rev. Joannes Amsingh preached in the fort; he is a minister on board the *West Vrieslant*.

November 22nd.—The *Nachtglas* despatched to Tristao da Cunha to explore the island carefully, as regards its harbour, &c., and the soil for cultivation, &c., as contained in the instructions. The woodmen report that again large numbers of natives had arrived with much cattle—bought about 50 sheep, hope that it will prosper further; treated them liberally but kept good watch as their number is large. The *Nachtglas* leaves. The hunters told us that there were about a thousand huts about, and the country was as full of cattle as grass in the field—they had been turned away yesterday by the natives, and as some had run towards them with assegais they had fired with blank cartridge over their heads, upon which they all fell flat on the ground, enabling the hunters to make their escape. The natives do not like the hunters to kill the birds which they wish to keep for themselves.

November 23rd.—Two Hottentoots who could speak a little Dutch told us not to let the hunters go where the Saldanhars were squatting as they would be killed, because in firing yesterday they had hit some of the cattle—hunters declare that they could not possibly have hit any cattle; they were ordered to go out in another direction and instead of wild geese and ducks to shoot partridges, rock-rabbits and other game, but as the natives run about everywhere, little will be obtained, so that we will have to eat at table of the bartered sheep, for the entertainment of the ship's officers. Would have wished to economize the sheep to stock Robben Island thoroughly, in order to subsist on the increase without any more care, and the necessity of waiting for the time of barter, fasting in the meanwhile. To further the trade the natives are liberally treated and their cattle paid for at high prices. Obtained 7 sheep. The sloop leaves for Robben and Dassen Islands with 63 sheep and provisions for the seal killers on the latter island.

November 24th.—Risebeek and Frisius went on horseback with some armed soldiers to visit the natives. They found a little beyond the redoubt the country so full of cattle that continually cattle had to be driven out of their way by the natives—the latter as many as the cattle, crowding around the party and curious to see them; fully 5 or 6,000 in all, with about 4 or 500 huts placed in circles, in which during the night they keep their cattle—a large encampment with difficulty passed round in half an hour,—the Capemen are lying near with their huts and cattle; there was also another troop whose chief was at the fort the evening before our



1655.

cattle was stolen, and who is an ally of the Capemen and had been a party to the theft. As soon as it is settled to take revenge, our object will be to attack this faithless horde as well as the Capemen, so rich in cattle, and like the Capemen always unwilling to trade and suspected by us as the chief cause why the others do not come to trade—having to-day only obtained 2 old sheep with their lambs—also discovered that these strangers preferred to trade with us at their stations which for various reasons is not advisable; coming to the fort they would be safe, whilst our men might be killed among them for the sake of the copper, tobacco &c. Some new Hottentoots accompanying us to the fort were treated by us with a little arrack, bread and tobacco; asked them to bring cattle for which they would be paid in copper, tobacco &c., promised to do so.

The Hon. Frisius takes leave to proceed to Batavia; leaves no sick behind—all well; also takes with him some sick of other vessels who had recovered—50 still ill in hospital, but they will be ready to go with the next ship.

November 25th.—*West Vrieslant* leaves. Obtained 8 sheep and 3 cows—would have obtained more if it had not been for the Cape men who set themselves up as brokers and take a large quantity of copper and tobacco from the others, and so unmannerly and violently that the Saldanhars are disgusted and keep away.

November 26th.—Obtained 15 sheep and 1 cow from the natives.

November 27th (new moon).—Sergeant and some men sent out to count the huts and ascertain whether the natives would prefer to trade at the locations. Reported that at the Fresh River he had counted exactly 200 huts, but not discovered a wish to trade among the people, the Capemen and the band of the black chief (who had participated in the cattle lifting) being located in their midst; they had also lots of cattle and 40 or 50 huts about 2 miles below the forest. Obtained to-day only 8 sheep, notwithstanding our best endeavours.

November 28th. (Sunday).—Sloops returned from Dassen Island with about 430 seal skins on board, also 2 pigs, and a  $\frac{1}{2}$  aum of oil, —no letter from Woutersen—had had no communication with the shore in consequence of the strong wind; brought verbal news that the seals appeared but little, as they had not yet brought forth,—observed the same thing last year; time will secure us better information. Bartered only 8 sheep.

November 29th.—Obtained 13 fine cows and 7 sheep. Heard that Herry was approaching with cattle and sheep for the Company, would be here in about 10 days' time with other natives and their cattle, who are coming to trade.

November 30th.—Obtained 16 cows and 20 sheep—some of Herry's Hottentoots arrived asking for some tobacco for him, and bringing a knife with a brass handle to show that it came from him as it was known to us. Sent him the tobacco—will be here shortly with much cattle. Having inquired from Herry's people concern-

ing a Madagascar slave a long time missing and called Anthony, they told us that wild beasts had devoured him, but we believe that he has been murdered by the Capemen.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully noted every day.

December 1st.—Having understood from some Hottentoots that they had seen two ships near or at the False Bay, but could not tell us whether they had anchored there or had passed on, three smart soldiers were sent to reconnoitre and finding nothing to return along the coast to examine the Hout bay. Obtained 9 cows and 8 sheep.

December 2nd.—Rain N.W., obtained a cow and 12 sheep.

December 3rd.—Hottentoots depasturing their cattle near the fort; the country as far as the mountain between this and Salt River being so stocked that we calculated the number of cattle at 20,000—only obtained three cows and 7 sheep in spite of our best endeavours. Having asked our interpreter Claes Das why the natives would not sell cattle, notwithstanding their desire for copper and tobacco, he told us that they did not like to part with any, but that in a few days Herry would return with other people who would supply us abundantly, besides what Herry has obtained; those about here would leave as soon as it was fine weather because Herry was coming with other tribes. Again asked why these people would make way for the others, he said because Herry would come with people courted by us, whom they would not like to hinder but oblige as much as possible. Also asked whether those coming with Herry were the enemies of those here, he said no, but sometimes disputes arose when they took each other's cattle, and killed one another, but soon again made peace. It is evident that serious fights do take place, judging from the scars and wounds covering their naked bodies; it also appears that the Capemen have sometimes little and at other times much cattle which they say have been stolen from them and replaced by others taken from other tribes. The three soldiers return—had seen nothing.

December 4th.—Had a fine day's trade—bought 52 head of cattle and 21 sheep from the natives last arrived—promised to bring some more to-morrow. If they return with as much, our copper plate will run out; trust to get on with the wire also, which they do not like so well. Das told us that the natives intend bringing so much cattle that all our copper would be exhausted, to have a good laugh at the Commander. This it will not take a long time to effect as regards the copper plates. If the good news be true time only can show.

December 5th. (Sunday).—Natives approach the fort with thousands of cattle, had to close our kraal, otherwise a lot would of their own accord have gone into it; obliged to admonish them to keep somewhat away from the fort, which they did, selling us 15 head of cattle and 6 sheep. Herry is said to be very near, having some cattle for us and some for himself.



1655.

December 6th.—Landed the skins from the sloop to have it ready for taking the sheep to Robben Island; obtained 27 cows and 8 sheep, and sent the *Robbejacht* with 68 sheep to the Island. Woodmen report that the Cape troop of Hottentoots were moving away to False Bay, the Capemen remaining at the foot of the mountain where the forest is. Herry will be here with other natives in 2 or 3 days.

December 7th.—Sent the *Penguin* to Robben Island with 28 sheep, leaving still a small cargo behind to be sent on per *Robbejacht*, which returning, took 50 more. Bought 36 cattle and 11 sheep.

December 8th.—Sloops returned stating that 20 of the sheep had died, and that the number on the island was 326. Bought again 39 and 27 young and old cattle, also received 13 others bought by Herry, who would have brought more but some natives had stolen 4 bags of copper and all the tobacco; had urged the natives to come to the fort with their cattle, where they could always obtain sufficient copper; did not seem satisfied that all our copper plates had been used up, as he had depended upon them; the wire being not much in demand; would otherwise without difficulty obtain as much as we want. It is clear that if we had enough copper plate we would obtain 1,000 head of cattle even from those who had squatted here a while, and who daily come even without the help of Herry; but they would rather have plate copper than wire. Regarding the copper stolen from Herry we do not believe half his story, as he no doubt spent it in presents to court favour among the natives (the thirteen head of cattle will cost the Company a good deal) which would be advantageous, the more so as we observe that they are coming on very rapidly with their cattle. Therefore pretend to believe him and treat him kindly, much having been gained by having established a good understanding with these savages. Riebeeck's wife delivered of her second son at the Cape, and in the afternoon the wife of Frederick Verburg of her first, a daughter, the first girl born here, after they had been married 9 months, less one day. Sloop returns from Robben Island; sheep all right.

December 9th.—Herry having taken with him the 3 cattle left in our charge, proceeds to False Bay, saying that he would soon return with other natives and cattle, but that he wanted more copper; told him it might again be stolen, and that it would be better if he could urge the natives to come to the fort, which he promised to do; time will show with what success: but as this clever fellow goes away so hurriedly and the other natives trade with us, we are firmly persuaded, as the Cape and Saldanha men say, that he has been using the copper for himself and now is rich in cattle and will not inquire after us any more; time will show. If the natives continue bringing cattle, our thick wire will also run out, but for sheep we still have abundance of thin stuff, which, as it is not liked, will never again be required from India.

December 10th.—Same weather as yesterday.



December 11th.—Obtained 32 sheep for thin, and 1 cow for thick wire, but the desire to trade has departed, as we had no more copper plates for cattle; would otherwise obtain sufficient; hope to get some copper soon again. The *Robbejacht* sent to the island with 68 sheep, where there are now 394 in all.

December 12th. (Sunday).—Arrival of English ship, *Jan Anthamis* or *Jan Baptist* of 200 tons, Captain Thomas Poth, and merchant Nathaniel Davidts on board; 24th April, from London and going to Bantam; had touched at Cape Verde, which it left on the 24th August: had lost in the long voyage of 8 months to this 10 men, and still had about 40 sick on board; requested to have refreshments and water; kindly allowed to take a lot of vegetables on board; also gave them 2 cows and 3 or 4 sheep, and allowed 10 or 12 of their sick into our hospital; were very grateful, and dined with the Commander, who bade them welcome. Sloop returns, having brought sheep to Robben Island; one had died; a large shed required there; do not possess the material. Obtained 6 cows and ditto sheep. Natives tell us that Herry is not inclined to serve as interpreter, but when ships arrive he is ready to fill his bags with bread, rice and wine; his copper had not been stolen, but he had exchanged it for cattle and sheep, so that he also had become a great Captain and asked very little after us, which we will discover more every day, &c. A certain Hottentoo called by us Doman or Domine, because he was such a very simple-minded man, and Claes Das having been asked by us whether this was true, affirmed it, adding that it was he who had stolen the Company's cattle 2 years ago, and that his sons had murdered the Dutch boy, telling us also how the whole was managed. Denied that the Capemen had anything to do with it, showing with evidence in what way Herry had with his gang committed the crime, against the wish of the Cape and Saldanha men. Capemen though unwilling to part with their cattle wished to be friends of the whites, and mediators between us and the Saldanhars in trade; and if we wished to prove what they had said we were to seize Herry when he again came, when he would soon make a clean breast of it and send for his cattle, of which he has a large number, to regain his liberty. Being asked whether in case we did it, the Saldanha and Capemen would not run away thinking they might share the same fate, they said no, but on the contrary would be much obliged and more inclined to bring us more cattle, as no one feels kindly disposed towards Herry, because he is such a big talker, and was continually rendering false reports from one side to the other. We might inquire from the son of the big Captain of the Capemen, and we would soon find out the feelings against Herry. Sent 5 men to the southern point of False Bay, where the men who had gone with Herry had found some mussels; each had to bring a bag full for us to examine.

December 13th (full moon).—Obtained 20 cows and 69 sheep from the Saldanhars who came with much cattle thinking that

1655.

our ships had brought us copper plates; many would not hear of wire. Herry was also in the fort pretending that he had urged the natives now here to bring cattle; pretended we believed him. Sloop leaves for Robben Island with 77 sheep; number there now 471. English officers enjoy themselves on shore, dining with the Commander; promised them 6 tons of rice, begged hard for a few more cattle, told them civilly that we trusted to be able to satisfy them, &c.

December 14th.—Obtained 11 cows and 18 sheep.

December 15th.—*Robbejacht* had safely landed the sheep on the Island where everything was in good order. Obtained 9 cows and 10 sheep. Soldiers return, each with a bag full of pearl-mussels; found so few and such bad ones in them that the searching would not be worth the while, as the mussels have to be taken with great danger from the rocks against which heavy waves strike.

December 16th.—Only obtained sheep for wire; natives prefer waiting until ships arrive from home with copper plates. Death of the baby of Mrs. Verburgh.

December 17th.—Sloop to take 50 sheep to Robben Island, and then to proceed to Dassen Island with Commander's letter to Woutersen. Obtained only four sheep; natives promise to bring more. Woodmen report that the Hottentots had already crossed the mountains, and Herry likewise. One of the English merchants lands, and asks to be immediately supplied with some cattle for the crew, as in consequence of their long and painful voyage they would, unless supplied here, run short of provisions. Offered to pay what we asked. Told them civilly that we had given them from the gardens as much as they wanted every day, and also two head of cattle and four sheep, with which they were better supplied as a small crew *pro rata* than our ships with their large numbers of men. They replied that every day we obtained much cattle, but we answered that between now and March about 40 large ships were expected, which had to be provided for, and if each one only got six beasts, then 240 would be required, a number which we did not yet possess; that such a proportion of fresh provisions was little enough for the large number of men on board the Company's ships; and that we had given them meat in the same proportion in which our own crews received it, but to show our good feeling we would give them another animal and four sheep, with the request not to ask us for more; garden produce we would give them as much as they liked, as we were, thank God, abundantly supplied. Made them understand that what we gave them we took from our own ships, &c.

December 18th.—Obtained eight cows and three sheep; have now 332 cows and about 520 sheep on Robben Island. Ships will be plentifully supplied. If we only had more copper plate we might buy a thousand head, and also sheep if we had Dutch, instead of Indian wire. None to be sent any longer from Batavia.

December 19th (Sunday).—Beautifully mild weather.



December 20th and 21st.—Obtained 4 cows and 18 sheep, though the Saldanhars were already a good distance away. Trade still lively, and Company's cattle increasing in number, the sheep already amounting to about 550 and cattle to 350. Difficult to find trustworthy people to mind the pigs, fowls, ducks, and geese; they are rather unwilling to take care of pigs, &c.; would thrive well with free men when cared for.

December 22nd.—Fine weather for the brick kilns, with which we are busy; as well as for the sick left behind by the ships; would like to get them away as they are quite recovered. Obtained 18 sheep and 21 cows. All the Hottentoots, even our wood-carriers, have left as they said to attack with the Capemen and the black captain's people, some Saldanhars, with whom they had fallen out; said Saldanhars having entrusted to the Capemen and this black captain some of their cattle and sheep to be sold to us, but discovered that double the value had been obtained of what was delivered as the amount, and therefore determined themselves to come to the fort and trade. This the Capemen and the black captain endeavoured to prevent, and if an attack did take place, to rob them of some cattle. To have a finger in the pie our wood-carriers also joined the Capemen, in order to sell to us for copper whatever cattle they might obtain as their share, and which the Capemen also intend doing. It is, therefore, evident that the latter try to keep those from the far interior away from the fort, in order to secure the full profits for themselves, which is not at all a good thing, as it prevents us from finding out what other things may be bought from the natives besides cattle. It would therefore not be strange or contrary to expectation, if intercourse were impeded by these Capemen, when in course of time natives as far away as Monopotapa or Butna visited us by land, as many allege that they trade with those of Angola, whose gold is said to come from Monopotapa. Yea! those of Coffala and Angola are said to have intercourse; so that we may expect them this way also if the Capemen are not such hindrances. This must be looked into, that the inland natives may be able to come to us in safety. The Capemen are also to be treated kindly, who every day bring heavy charges against Herry, and urge us to detain him at the fort with all his cattle, his sons having murdered the Dutch boy, and the cattle having been stolen by them. He had also used our copper and tobacco to procure cattle for himself, telling us that these articles were stolen from him. Matter to be carefully sifted; in the meanwhile show a friendly face. Herry will soon be here with all his cattle, when matters must come to a climax. In the meantime it is not at all the thing that the Capemen should prevent the inland natives from coming to us. Being so injurious to the Company, these Capemen must one day be brought under discipline, and though they say that they had no hand in the theft of the cattle, which, though seen among their herds, they had merely taken from Herry; we still remember that at the time they left very hurriedly with him—no



1655.

doubt because equally guilty; for all which they deserve to be punished. But beforehand the subject is to be carefully inquired into, though we maintain that no good intercourse with the natives will ever be secured before these Capemen and Herry have been treated differently. In the meanwhile the Company is gaining a firm footing here and a thorough knowledge of the relations between this tribe and others for its future guidance, as we still hope to make the acquaintance of and open a trade with those of Monopotapa and Butna, &c.

December 23rd.—Fine weather.

December 24th.—Some of the Hottentoots return to the fort (? wood-carriers), but not at all as courageous as when they left, so that it is to be presumed that they have hurt their noses somewhat; but they have no wish to confess, saying that the Saldanhars were far away, and they had therefore returned. Obtained 12 sheep and three cows. Sloop returns with 1,900 seal skins and two firkins of oil, with news that the hunt was proceeding but slowly, as the seals were lying on the rocks, but did not come high on land. Woutersen is of opinion to suspend operations for a while, in order not to frighten the animals too soon, as had been done by those of the *Salamander* and *West Vrielandt*.

December 25th. (Christmas).—Heavy S. Easter.

December 26th.—Wind capsizes the large boat of the Englishman.

December 27th (new moon).—Helped the Englishman to recover his boat.

December 28th.—Officers of the English ship detained on shore by the wind; well satisfied with the refreshments obtained here and anxious to pay for what they had, the following is the account:—

|  |    |    |          |
|--|----|----|----------|
| 3 cows at 6 Reals each                       | .. | .. | Reals 18 |
| 10 sheep at 1 Real                           | .. | .. | .. 10    |
| 16 days' fruit from the gardens for each man | 2  |    |          |
| stivers per diem or 48 men at 2 Reals        | .. | .. | 32       |
| 1,290 lbs. rice for which they had begged so |    |    |          |
| hard at 2 Reals the hundredweight            | .. | .. | 26       |

|       |          |
|-------|----------|
| Reals | Total 86 |
|-------|----------|

It appears that the above is somewhat cheap, so that on a future occasion they will have to pay 10 Reals for a beast, 2 Reals for a sheep and 3 stivers daily for garden produce. Allowed them to pay what they liked in this case as we had offered them the whole as a present.

December 29th.—English ship leaves, intending to proceed direct to Bantam. Sloop takes 80 sheep to Robben Island where there ought now to be fully 600; thence the boat is to proceed to Dassen Island with a letter to Woutersen admonishing him to use all diligence in the catching of seals.

December 30th.—Fine weather.

December 31st.—Nice garden weather. Bought 2 cows and 45 sheep, brought by the Capemen and as they say taken from the Saldanhars. For that purpose they again left, also the wood-carriers, though we urged them to leave the Saldanhars alone and permit them to have free access to us. Instead of listening they asked for 6 or 8 strong soldiers with firearms to rob the Saldanhars, with their assistance, of their cattle—the Saldanhars having lately treacherously surprised them and taken a large number of their cattle for which they intended to have revenge. Capemen doing what they can to keep Saldanhamen away, or fight with them. Sloop returns having safely landed the sheep; had not been able to reach Dassen Island. Set fire to the first kiln of the season, 400,000 bricks; another of 250,000 being prepared; want of horses to fetch fuel much felt.

N.B.—Wind and weather carefully described every day.

1655.

—







UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

Los Angeles

This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

INTERLIBRARY LOANS

APR 21 1981

Due One week from receipt

~~Not~~ renewable

DISCHARGE-URL

APR 23 1981

DT  
843  
C17p  
v.5

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



A 000 596 797 1



Univ  
So  
I